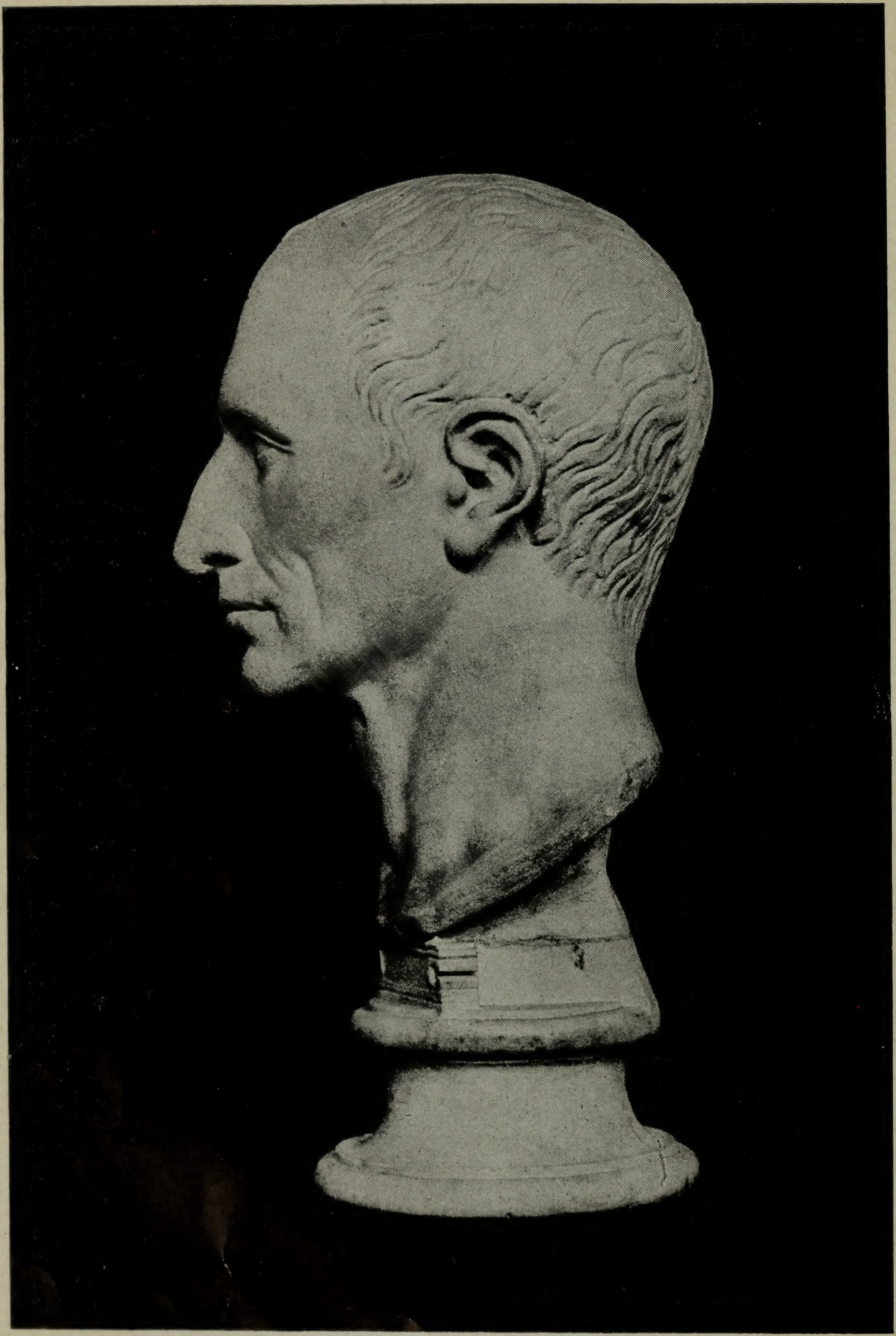
J.M. Tanner Oct. 9,-13.


GAUL
in CAESAR'S time
Taken with some changes from
H. Meusel.
Roman miles
MANZ-CHICAGO
Greenwich
BRITANNIA
Cantium
OCEANUS
BELGIUM
CELTICA
AQUITANIA
GERMANIA
Hercynia Silva
Arduenna Silva
HELVETII
GALLIA CISALPINA
ILLYRICUM
HADRIATICUM MARE
MARE NOSTRUM
HISPANIA
ITALIA
ROMA
Lutetia
Massilia
Narbo
Tolosa
Genava
Vesontio
Bibracte
Alesia
Avaricum
Gergovia
Vienna
Mediolanium
Aquileia
Ravenna
Verona
Placentia
Cremona
Genua
Florentia
Ancona
Danuvius
Rhenus
Rhodanus
Sequana
Liger
Garumna
Padus
Mosa
Matrona
Axona
Marcomanni
Sugambri
Sedusii
Tulingi
Harudes
Latobrigi
Treveri
Mediomatrici
Leuci
Lingones
Senones
Haedui
Sequani
Bituriges
Arverni
Allobroges
Santoni
Pictones
Namnetes
Veneti
Lemovices
Petrocorii
Nitiobroges
Tectosages
Helvii
Vocontii
Salluvii
Ubii
Suebi
Menapii
Morini
Nervii
Atrebates
Bellovaci
Remi
Eburones
Condrusi
Treveri



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY
AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

CHICAGO—NEW YORK
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

P. F. PETTIBONE & Co.
Printers and Binders
Chicago

PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

The Study of Caesar's Narrative. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that

a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

System in Grammar References. An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two

sets of references being given close together, that they may reenforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point may be clinched by review. And these references are made not only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class begins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I, these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions. Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are postponed to Book I, 30–54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed references; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

Exclusion of Non-essentials. Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped, much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar are his indirect discourse, and unfortunately the majority of the speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-

counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil's path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30–54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1–29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner's. In the present edition Meusel's readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the

preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

INTRODUCTION

I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story 1
of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient 2
times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," **Prōvincia** (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.

Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 **Effect on Gaul.** But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 **Effect on Caesar.** In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

II. Life of Caesar

Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year[1] 102, B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna. 5

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to 6

[1] Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.

pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7 **Weakness of Opposite Party.** But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8 **Revival of Caesar's Party.** When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

9 **Development of Caesar's Powers.** During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test

of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

Caesar's First Military Command. But in spite of his ability 10
and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

Caesar's Consulship. Caesar now wanted the consulship, the 11
highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-

pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12 **Caesar's Command in Gaul.** In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. **2** and **3**), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. **10**), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

13 **Outbreak of Civil War.** It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.

14 **Weakness of the Constitutional Government.** But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party

had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest 15
fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was 16
from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.

He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

17 **Assassination of Caesar.** Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.

III. Chronological Table

B.C.	Caesar's Age.	
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. Marius defeats the Teutoni. 13
101	1	Marius defeats the Cimbri.
87	15	Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
83	19	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	22	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
76	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.
74	28	Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.
70	32	Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.
68	34	Caesar is Quaestor.
65	37	Caesar is Curule Aedile.
63	39	Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.
62	40	Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.
61	41	Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.
60	42	Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate" is formed.
59	43	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.
58	44	Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.
56	46	Caesar's campaign in Brittany.
55	47	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.
53	49	The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
50	52	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.
49	53	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."
47	55	Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.
46	56	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.
45	57	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.
44	58	Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.

IV. Caesar as General

19 The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

20 **Characteristics as General.** The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21 **Power over his Men.** Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw

to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendency over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. Caesar as Author

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no 22
less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. 23
Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose

he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

24 **Caesar's Other Writings.** In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. The Gauls

25 **First Appearance of the Gauls in History.** Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26 **First Decline of Gallic Power.** But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls **Prōvincia** (see **2**).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri. 27

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers. 28

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul 29

was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 **Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions.** This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 **Gallic Civilization.** The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls

were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. Caesar's Army

THE LEGIONS

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When **32**
the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of **33**
6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

century [**centum**, hundred]	= 100 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple	= 200 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort	= 600 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion	= 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

34 **Clothing**. *a*. A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.

b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.

c. Shoes or sandals.

d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35 **Armor**. *a*. A helmet of leather (**galea**) or metal (**cassis**).

b. A leather coat (**lōrīca**), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.

c. A curved wooden shield (**scūtum**), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a foot-ball shin-guard, but made of metal.

36 **Arms**. *a*. A heavy wooden javelin (**pīlum**, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (**gladius**, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (**vāgīna**) hung from a belt (**balteus**) which passed over the left

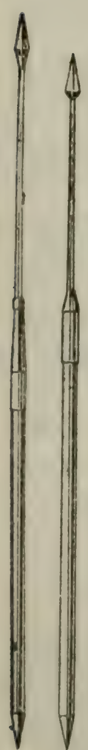


Fig. 1
Pila

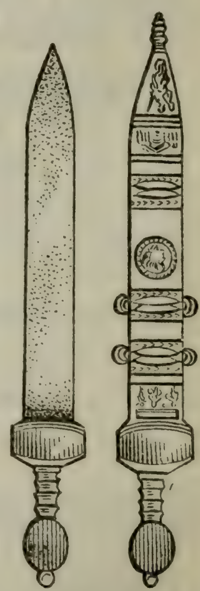


Fig. 2
Gladius and Vagina

shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

Individual Baggage. Besides his personal belongings each 37
soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (**sarcina**) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be **impedītī**. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then **expedītī**.

OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

Lēgātus. All governors of provinces were given several 38
lēgātī, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

Quaestor. The quaestors were financial officers, elected 39
yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

Praefectus Fabrum. The chief of engineers had charge of 40
such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of

ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 **Tribūnus.** No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 **Centuriō.** The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the **prīmipīlus**. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (**centuriōnēs prīmōrum ōrdinum**, or **prīmī ōrdinēs**), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 **Aquila.** Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (**aquila**), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a

PLATE I



1. *funditor*
2. *levis armaturae milites*
3. *legionarii*
4. *vexillum*
5. *signiferi*
6. *aquilifer*
7. *tubicen*
8. *bucinator*

ROMAN SOLDIERS

man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the **aquilifer** (Plate I, 6).

Signum. Each cohort had its own standard (**signum**), 44
carried by a **signifer** (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are **signa īnferre**, **signa referre**, etc.

Musical Instruments. There were no bands, and the only 45
use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the **tuba**, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a **tubicen**, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

The heavy baggage (**impedīmenta**) consisted of tents, pro- 46
visions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (**iūmenta**). These were driven or led by the drivers (**mūliōnēs**) and camp servants (**cālōnēs**), who were probably slaves.

AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

Infantry. The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), 47
which Caesar usually calls **auxilia**, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (**funditōrēs**) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (**sagittāriī**) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting. but made them

useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (**praefectī**). Their standard was a banner (**vexillum,** Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

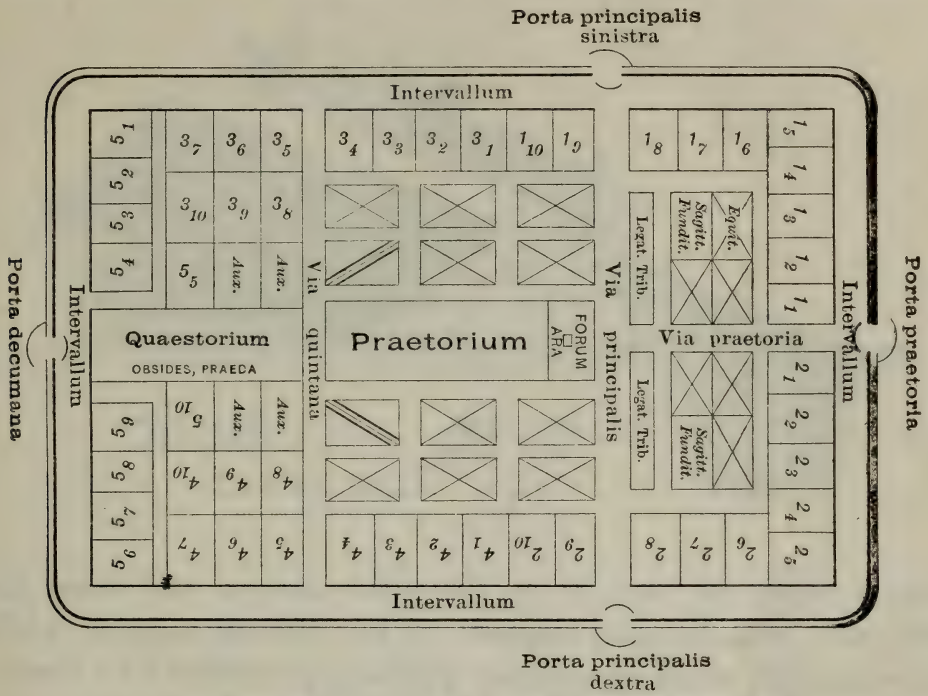
48 **Cavalry**. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were **praefectī**, and their standards were **vexilla** (cf. **47**).

THE CAMP

49 A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (**castra**) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.

50 **Location and Form of Camp.** Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.

Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench **51**
(fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven



1_2 *First Legion*
Second Cohort

This camp is for five legions with cavalry and auxiliary troops

FIG. 3. PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP (Rüstow)

deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall **(vāllum)**. This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer

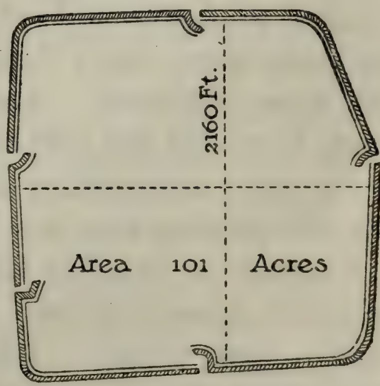
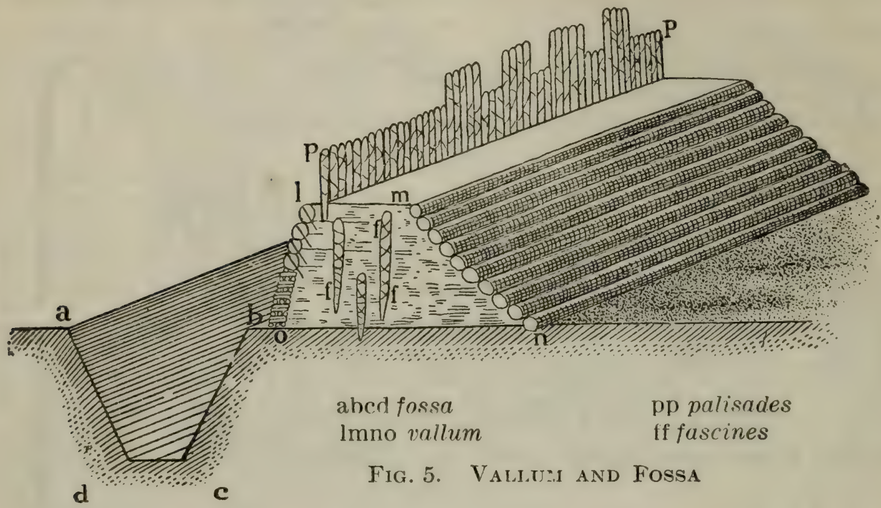


FIG. 4. CAMP ON THE AXONA

edge of the top stood a row of palisades (**vāllī**), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the



abcd *fossa* pp *palisades*
lmno *vallum* ff *fascines*

Fig. 5. Vallum and Fossa

enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (**turrēs**) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52 **Gates of Camp.** Usually there was one gate (**porta**) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.

Plate II



1. *imperator* 2. *legatus* 3. *centurio* 4. *lictor*
5. *Gallic warrior* 6. *Gallic standard bearer* 7. *Gallic chief*

Roman Officers and Gauls

THE MARCH

Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest. 53

Length of March. The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (**magna itinera, maxima itinera**), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops. 54

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from 55

a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 **Line of Battle.** The line of battle was commonly triple (**triplex aciēs**), though sometimes only double (**duplex aciēs**). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 **Orbis.** When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (**orbis**), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs

would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

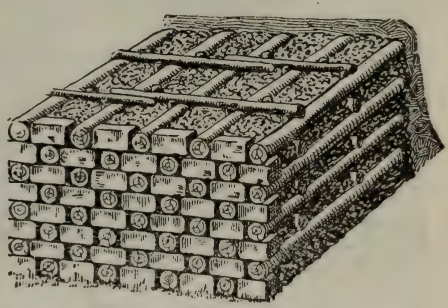


FIG. 6. SECTION OF GALLIC WALL

59 **Blockade (obsidiō).** A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

60 **Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentīna).** If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a **testūdō** (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (**crātēs**, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (**scālae**, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

61 **Formal Siege (oppugnātiō).** The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (**turris**). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across

it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was

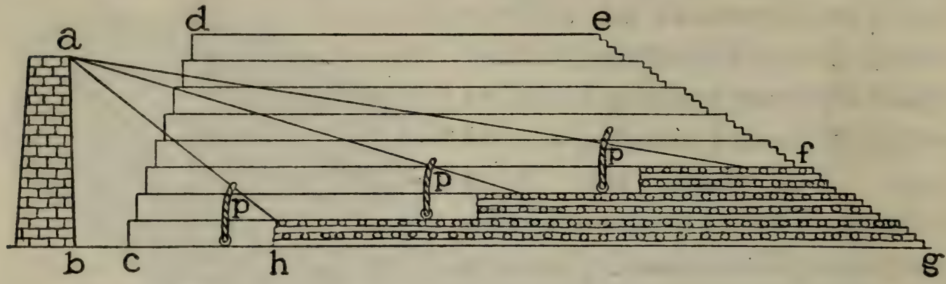


FIG. 7. SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

a b, *the enemy's wall.* f g h, *part already constructed.* c d e f h, *part to be constructed.* a b c d, *part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment.* p p p, *lines of* plutei *protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the* plutei.

low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

62 **Means of Protecting the Besiegers.** In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall: hence they made use of several forms of protection.

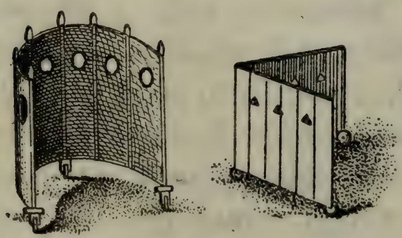


FIG. 8

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

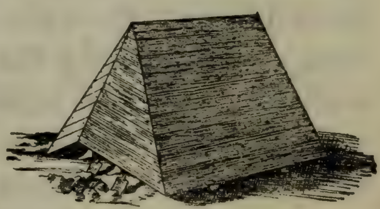


FIG. 9

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the

Plate III



1. turris *2. testudo arietaria* *3. testudo* *4. onager* *5 ballista*

shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The **testūdō arietāria** (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (**ariēs**), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The **vīnea** (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the **musculī**, **testūdinēs**, or **pluteī**.

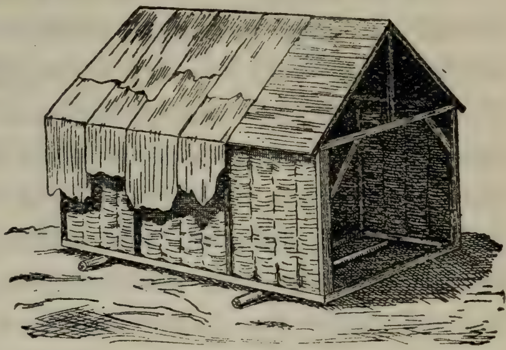


Fig. 10

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the 63
purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name **tormenta** is derived from **torqueō**, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

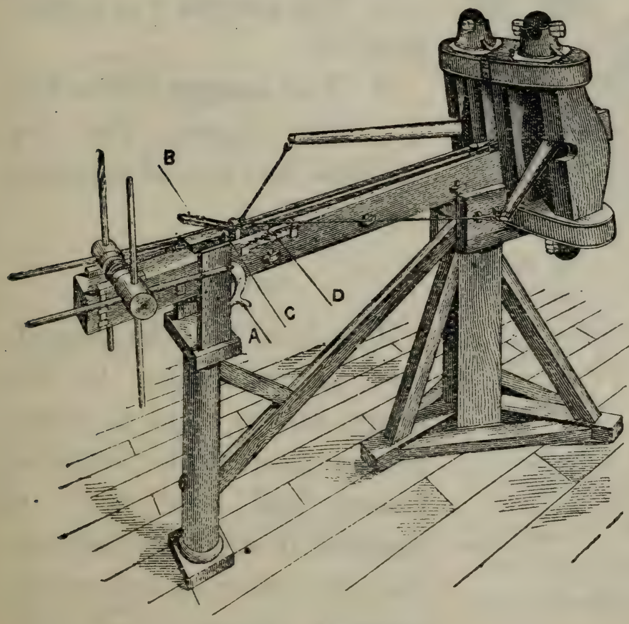


Fig. 11. Catapulta

a. The **ballista**

(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

b. The catapult (**catapulta**) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (C) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (C) was withdrawn and the rear end of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.



FIG. 12

c. The **scorpiō** was a small catapult.

d. The **onager** (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

64 The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-

vidual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called **nāvēs longae**, in distinction from the transports (**nāvēs onerāriae**), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (**rōstra**), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.

H. Meusel. (Berlin, 1894.) The critical edition is the best text edition of the Gallic War. No explanatory notes.

H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:

C. E. Moberly. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1878.)

A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.) Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar's Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar.* (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar.* (G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

J. A. Froude. *Caesar: a Sketch.* Interesting, but grossly partisan and inaccurate.

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.* (Macmillan

& Co., London, 1899.) The best discussion, in any language, of the military and geographical problems.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar.* (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen.* (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch's Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar.* (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:

Duruy. *History of Rome.*

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic.* This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar's campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire.*

Mommsen. *History of Rome.* The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

Miscellaneous

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army.* (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico.* (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg.* (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae.* (Gotha.)

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, **2**, 11 = Book III, chapter **2**, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I–IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbial.
card. = cardinal.
cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = *exemplī grātiā*, for example.
encl. = enclitic.
etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
fig. = figure, figuratively.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = *id est*, that is.
imp. = imperative.
impers. = impersonal.
impf. = imperfect.
incept = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.
inf. = infinitive.
int. = introduction.
interrog = interrogative.
intr. = intransitive.
irr. = irregular.
l., ll. = line, lines.
lit. = literally.
m. = masculine.
neg. = negative.
n., neut. = neuter.
n. (in grammatical references) = note.
nom. = nominative.
num. = numeral.
ord. = ordinal.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
pers. = personal.
pf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
plupf. = pluperfect.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
reflex. = reflexive.
rel. = relative.
sc. = *scīlicet*, supply.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subjunctive.
sup. = superlative.
tr. = transitive.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of

the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. **30** we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. **31** we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In **II, 34** we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile, II, 439–453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.



Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29



C. IULI CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

1. Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (găl'ĭ-a), *better*, Gaul, *including either* (1) *Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or* (2) *only Celtica. See map.* ∗

sum, esse, fuī (App 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate*, be the mark *or* sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor*, have. ∗

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl. as noun*, all possessions *or* goods. ∗

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *tr.* divide, separate; **dīvīsus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. ∗

in, *prep. with acc. and abl. With acc.* (1) *of motion, from one place into or towards another place*, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon: (2) *of time*, till, into; for; on, at: (3) *other uses*, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs,** from day to day; **in fugam conicere,** put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere,** meet with Caesar; **summum in cruciātum venīre,** be severely punished. *With abl.* (1) *of rest or motion within a place*, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) *of time*, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) *other uses*, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī,** over the Arar; **in eō,** in his case; **in ancorīs,** at anchor; **in opere esse,** be engaged in the work. ∗

pars, partis, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. ∗

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium** (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. ∗

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.* (*and see* **quis**), who, which, what; *often implying an antecedent*, he who, those who; *with force of dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem,** wherefore; **quem ad modum,** in what manner, how, as; **quō,** *with comparatives*, the; **quō . . . eō,** the . . . the. ∗

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole *or* only one. ∗

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. Gallia: in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

omnis, "as a whole," shows that *Gallia* here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

dīvīsa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

quārum ūnam, "one of which (parts)." **ūnam:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. The grammar references should al-

∗ The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.

incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna

---

2. **incolō, -colere, -coluī,** ——, *tr. and intr.* [**colō**, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bĕl'jē). *or* Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alīus** (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; *in pl.*, some . . . others. *

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (ăk"wĭ-tā'nī), *possibly* Aquitanians, *inhabiting southwestern Gaul.* *

tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**ter**, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.* **ipsīus** (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (*as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive* **sē**, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; *as adj.*, very; *in gen.*, his, her, its, *or* their own. *

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language. 3.

3. **Celtae, -ārum,** *m.*, the Celtae (sĕl'tē), *better*, the Celts. 1.

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [**nōs**, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. *

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, *inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc.* *

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hīc, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), *used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than* **is**; this, this man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* **hōc**, on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); **hīc . . . ille**, the latter . . . the former. *See* App. 170, *a.* *

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* [**īnstituō**, set up, establish], a fixed course *or* principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

4. **lēx, lēgis,** *f.*, law, statute, enactment. 4.

inter, *prep. with acc.* (*sometimes following its noun*), (1) *of place*, among, between; (2) *of time*, during, within, for: (3) *in other relations*, among, between, in; in among *or* between; to; over; along with: (4) *with reflex. pron.*, *of reciprocal action* (App. 166), with, to, *or* from each other *or* one another, *as*, **inter sē differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, *as*, co-

---

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I, **1-29**, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. **Belgae:** it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

aliam, tertiam: sc. *partem incolunt.*

quī = *iī quī:* a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, "in their own language." **linguā:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. **Celtae, Gallī:** case? App. 95, *a*: G.-L. 205; 206: A. 283; 284: B. 167; 168, 2, *b*: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus, "in language, institutions, and laws." Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. **Garumna flūmen:** sc. *dīvidit.* **flūmen:** case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2, *a*: H. 393.

flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

---

hortātī inter sē, encouraging one another. *

suī, sibi, sē, *or* **sēsē**, *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; **inter sē**, *see* **inter** *and* App. 166. *

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.* [**ferō**, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. 1.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before* **tē**, *and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl.*, *originally denoting separation;* (1) *of place, persons, time, etc.*, from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) *denoting position, in some phrases*, at, in, on, on the side of; **ā tergō**, in the rear: (3) *with expressions of measure*, away, off; **ab mīlibus passuum duōbus**, two miles away: (4) *with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes*, by: (5) *variously translated in other relations*, from, by, in respect to, after. *

Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (gạ-rŭm'nạ), *or* Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* 3.

5. **flūmen, -inis,** *n.* [**fluō**, flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the *river* Matrona (măt'rō-nạ), *now* the Marne. 1.

et, *conj.*, and; also, too, even; **et . . . et**, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the *river* Sequana (sĕk'wạ-nạ), *better*, Seine. 1.

6. **fortis, -e,** *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. *

proptereā, *adv.* [**propter**, because of], on this account; **proptereā quod**, because. *

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of* **quī**, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, insomuch as; because; **quod sī**, but if; **proptereā quod**, because. *

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.

atque, ac (**ac** *only before consonants*, **atque** *before vowels and consonants*), *conj.*, *usually adds something especially important, while* **et** *usually associates objects of equal importance;* and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison or difference*, than, as, from. *

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**hūmānus**, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.

7. **prōvincia, -ae,** *f.*, office *of governor of a province;* province, *a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially* the Province, *the southern part of France.* *

longē, *adv.* [**longus**, long], far, far away, distant; **longē lātēque**, far and wide. *

absum, abesse, āfuī, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent *or* distant, be wanting *or* free from. *

minimē, *adv.* [**minimus**, least], least,

---

5. **Matrona . . . dīvidit:** the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, *b*: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, *b*: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

hōrum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 372: A. 346, *a*, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

7. **prōvinciae:** see Int. 2, 26.

quod absunt: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

minimē saepe, "very seldom."

tōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

---

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.

-que, *conj.* (*always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects*), and; **que . . . que**, *or* **que . . . et**, both . . . and. *

ad, *prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward;* (1) *denoting motion*, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of: (2) *denoting position*, at, by, near: (3) *denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive*, to, for: (4) *with numerals*, up to, about: (5) *of time*, up to, until; at, on: (6) *variously translated in other relations*, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. *

is, ea, id *gen.* **eius** (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context*, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō**, a, *or* the, place where; **ea quae**, (the) things which; **eō**, *with comp.*, the; **eō magis**, all the more; **eō . . . quō**, *with comparatives*, the . . . the. *

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [**mercor**, trade], merchant, trader. *

8. **saepe**, *adv.*, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō**, often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius**, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. *

commeō, 1, *intr.* [**meō**, go], go back and forth; *with* **ad**, resort to, visit. 1.

effēminō, 1, *tr.* [**ex** + **fēmina**, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animī causā**, for amusement; **in animō habēre**, intend. *

9. **pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, ——**, *intr.* [**teneō**, hold], hold *or* reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; **eōdem pertinēre**, tend to the same purpose *or* result, amount to the same thing. *

importō, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**portō**, carry], carry *or* bring in, import. 3.

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; *with acc.* (App. 122, *b*), next to. *

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jĕr-mā'nī), *better*, Germans. *

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over; *in compounds*, **trāns** *or* **trā**, across, over, through. *

10. **Rhēnus, -ī**, *m.* (ABCfgh), the *river* Rhenus (rē'nŭs), *better*, the Rhine. *

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. *

continenter, *adv.* [**continēns**, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. 3.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. *

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on,

---

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. **quae . . . pertinent:** notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

ad effēminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. **proximī Germānīs**, "next to the Germans": case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

10. **quibuscum:** use and position of *cum?* App. 140; 60, *b*: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, *b*; 150, *d*: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus

---

perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. *

11. dē, *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from;* (1) *of place,* from, down from, away from, out of: (2) *of time,* just after, about: (3) *variously translated in other relations,* about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; **causam dīcere,** to plead a case; **causā,** *following a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hĕl-vē'shyī), Helvetian; *as noun,* one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, *possibly* Helvetians. *

quoque, *conj., following the word emphasized,* also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**relinquō,** leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun,* remainder, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir,** man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cotīdiē,** daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -lī, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [**tendō,** stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. *

13. cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum,** not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum prīmum,** as soon as. *See* App. 238-242. *

aut, *conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. *

suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject* (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, *a*) [**suī,** himself, herself, etc.], of *or* belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua,** *n. pl. as noun,* one's property; **suī,** *m. pl. as noun,* their men (*friends or countrymen*). *

fīnis, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border, end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. *

---

11. quā dē causā, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētiī: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters.

virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. proeliīs, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. suīs fīnibus: the reflexives *suī* and *suus* regularly refer to the subject:

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; perti-

---

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dīcere,** plead a case; **iūs dīcere,** administer justice. *

15. initium, -tī, *n.* [**ineō,** go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge *of a country*, borders. *

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose, select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*); reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a beginning*); **collem capere,** take position on a hill; **fugam capere,** take to flight. *

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the *river* Rhodanus (rŏd'a-nŭs), *better*, Rhone. *

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; **sē continēre,** *with abl.*, remain in, on, *or* within. *

16. Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, *with* **mare,** the ocean. *

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad+tangō,** touch], touch *or* border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. *

etiam, *conj.*, and also, also, even, yet. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, **Sēquanī** (Cfg), the Sequani (sĕk' wa-nī). *

vergō, -ere, ——, ——, *intr.*, look *or* lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [**septem,** seven **+triōnēs,** plough oxen], *the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī** (*as noun*), the rear; **ad extrēmum,** at last, at the end; as a last resort. *

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl,** the rising sun, sunrise; the east. *

---

suīs therefore refers to the Helvetii. For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 400; 401: B 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1; and notice that the preposition *ab* is often used in the same sense, as in *ab Aquītānīs*, l. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

14. eōrum refers back to the Gauls as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have just been mentioned.

quam is the object, **Gallōs** the subject of *obtinēre:* App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The infinitive clause, **quam . . . obtinēre**, is the subject of *dictum est:* App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642. The whole may be freely translated, "which, as has been said, the Gauls occupy."

15. ā flūmine, "at the river." There are many phrases in which we feel "at" or "on" to be the appropriate preposition, but in which the Romans seem to have thought of a starting-point and consequently used *ab* or *ex*, which literally mean "from."

16. ab Sēquanīs, "in the direction of" or "on the side of." Cf. the preceding note.

18. extrēmīs fīnibus: i. e. those farthest from the Roman province.

nent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupi-

---

19. īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, **īnferior,** lower; inferior; **ab īnferiōre parte,** below, down stream; *sup.*, **īnfimus** *or* **īmus,** lowest, last; *with* **collis,** the base of; **ad īnfimum, ab īnfimō,** at the bottom. *

spectō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **speciō,** see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem,** toward the setting sun *or* west; **ad orientem sōlem,** toward the rising sun *or* east. *

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (ăk″wĭ-tā′nĭ-a), *southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.* *

21. Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pȳrēnaeī montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pĭr″ē-nē′ī), *better*, Pyrenees Mountains. 1.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. *

22. Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hĭs-pā′nĭ-a), *better*, Spain. 2.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**occidō,** fall, set], falling down, setting; *with* **sōlis,** sunset; the west. 4.

1. apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. *

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō,** know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. *

dīves, dīvitis, *adj.*, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **dītissimus.** 1.

2. Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ôr-jĕt′ō-rĭks), *a chief of the Helvetii.* *

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mär′kŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mär′kŭs va-lē′rĭ-ŭs mĕ-sā′la), *consul*, 61 B.C. 2.

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mär′kŭs pū′pĭ-ŭs pī′sō kăl-pēr″nĭ-ā′nŭs), *consul with Messala*, 61 B.C. 2.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* *

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx,** king], kingly *or* royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus,** eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. 3.

---

19. in septentriōnēs . . . sōlem: i. e., toward the northeast.

22. ad Hispāniam, "near Spain"; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occāsum . . . septentriōnēs: i. e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.

1. nōbilissimus: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

2. M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus, "In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, *a*; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

rēgnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut de fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae

---

3. indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. 4.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**coniūrō,** swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. 3.

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**nōbilis,** well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. 3.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr. and intr.: tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with* **ut,** bring about, cause: *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally*, result, happen, come to pass. *

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**cīvis,** citizen], citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city. *

4. persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], *advise prevailingly;* convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; **sibi persuādērī,** be convinced. *

ut *and* **utī,** *adv. and conj.*, (1) *as interrog. adv.*, how? (2) *as rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; insomuch as; as if: (3) *as conj.* (a) *with ind.*, when, after; (b) *with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not. I, 2.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. *

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go from *or* out, depart from, leave. 2.

5. perfacilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis,** easy], very easy. 2.

---

3. coniūrātiōnem: the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.

cīvitātī: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*b*): H. 426, 2. The list of verbs given in this rule should be committed to memory.

4. ut exīrent: mode? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, (*a*): H. 563, 1; 565.

cōpiīs here includes the women and children.

5. perfacile esse . . . potīrī is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *persuāsit*. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, **1-29.** The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, *a*: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, *perfacile est . . . potīrī*, "it is very easy to get control." The *est* has become *esse*, but the English equivalent is "(saying) that it was very easy to get control."

cum . . . praestārent, "since they excelled all in valor." **virtūte:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480. **omnibus:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376: H. 429. **praestārent:** mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [**stō**, stand], stand *or* place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, **praestat,** it is better *or* more advisable. *

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. *

6. **imperium, -rī,** *n.* [**imperō,** command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis,** powerful], become master of, get control *or* possession of, obtain, capture. *

facile, *adv.* [**facilis,** easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius;** *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). *

undique, *adv.* [**unde,** whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. **locus, -ī,** *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō,** as hostages. *

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (*only before consonants*), **ex** (*before vowels and some consonants*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of;* (1) *of place*, out of, from, away from; *denoting position, in some phrases*, on; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side: (2) *of time*, from, after, since; **ex itinere,** immediately after the march: (3) *variously translated in other relations*, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ē regiōne,** opposite. *

8. **lātus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive. 4.

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land; district, territory. *

9. **alter, -era, -erum,** *gen.* **alterius** (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī,** the one party . . . the other. *

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) *mountains.* 3.

tōtīus . . . potīrī: i. e., the Helvetii were to do what the Haedui and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. **imperiō:** case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

6. **id . . . persuāsit,** lit. "he persuaded this (*id*) to them more easily on this account (*hōc*)" = "he persuaded them to this course the more easily." **hōc:** case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

iīs: cf. *cīvitātī*, 1. 3.

quod continentur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. See the map for the details that follow.

7. **locī:** case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

nātūrā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

8. **ā Germānīs:** case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, *a*: H. 461. We have learned in **1,** 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. **alterā ex parte:** "on a second side." Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.

Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

---

10. lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 3.

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without* **lacus**), *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-măn'ŭs), *better*, Lake Leman, *or* the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, reī, *f.*, *of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context;* thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiāris,** property; **rēs frūmentāria,** supplies; **rēs mīlitāris,** warfare; **novae rēs,** revolution; **rēs pūblica,** state; **rēs āctae,** deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem,** *see* **quī** *and* **quis.** *

minus, *adv. comp.* [**parvus,** little], less; not at all, too little; **quō minus,** *see* **quōminus.** *

lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** wide], widely, extensively; **longē lātēque,** far and wide. 4.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagus,** roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fīnis,** limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. *

13. īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **in equum īnferre,** mount on a horse; **causā illātā,** making an excuse; **signa īnferre,** advance the standards, attack. *

possum, posse, potuī, ——, (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis,** able+**sum,** be], be able, can; to have power *or* influence, have strength, be strong; *with* **quam** *and sup.*, as possible, e.g. **quam plūrimās possunt,** as many as possible; **multum posse, plūs posse,** *and* **plūrimum posse,** *see* **multum.** *

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, *as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1, *intr.* [**bellum,** war], make *or* carry on war, wage war. 3.

14. cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō,** desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); **magnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **magnīs itineribus** by forced marches. *Comp.*, **maior;** *sup.*, **maximus.** *

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō,** grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. 3.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad+faciō,** do], do to, treat, affect; **magnō dolōre afficere,** to annoy greatly. 3.

prō, *prep. with abl.* [cf. **prae,** before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in

---

10. tertiā: sc. *ex parte.* The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. hīs . . . fīēbat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."

12. ut vagārentur: mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

minus, "less" than they desired.

fīnitimīs: for case cf. *omnibus*, 1.5.

13. quā ex parte, "and on this ground": use of relative? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, "being men who were desirous of fighting." **bellandī:** construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *b*: H.-B. 611; 612, I: H. 624; 626.

14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."

hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. **Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī**

---

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; *in compounds* (*written* **prō, pro,** *and* **prōd**), for, before, forward, forth. *

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**multus,** much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. *

autem, *conj.*, but (*a weak adversative*); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. *

15. glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**fortis,** brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; **in angustō,** in a critical condition. *

16. habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (*with* **ōrātiōnem**); **in animō habēre,** intend; **ratiōnem habēre,** have regard for; take care *or* see that (*followed by an* **ut** *clause*); **cōnsilium habēre,** form a plan; **in numerō hostium habēre,** consider as enemies; **aliter sē habēre,** be otherwise *or* different; *for* **habēre** *with pf. pass. part., e.g.* **vectīgālia redēmpta habēre,** *see* App. 286, *b.* *

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**arbiter,** umpire], decide; think, believe. *

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**longus,** long], length, extent; long duration. 1.

mīlle, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thousand; *pl. as noun*, **mīlia, -ium,** *n.*, thousands (*usually followed by genitive*); **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces, miles. *

passus, -ūs, *m.* [**pandō,** extend], a pace, *the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches* (*five Roman feet*); **mīlle passūs** *or* **passuum,** a *Roman* mile, *4851 feet.* *

17. ducentī, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two+**centum,** hundred], two hundred. *

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. 2.

lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lātus,** wide], width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. 4.

octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**octō,** eight], eighty. 3.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw to, bring to; induce, influence. *

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* [**auctor,** producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. *

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. *

---

15. sē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs fīnēs, "(too) narrow limits." **fīnēs:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the reports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. **29** the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

16. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-

---

2. **cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). ✻

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.* [*cf.* **prōficiō,** advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. ✻

comparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō,** prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. ✻

3. **iūmentum, -ī,** *n.* [**iungō,** join, yoke], yoke *or* draft animal, beast of burden. 2.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. ✻

quam, (1) *adv.*, (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; *with sup. and with or without* **posse,** as . . . as possible, very; **quam diū,** as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*, than; **prius . . . quam,** before; **post . . . quam, posteā . . . quam,** after. ✻

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **magnus,** great. App. 42], greatest, largest. ✻

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; **in numerō,** *with gen.*, among, as. ✻

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** buy], buy, buy up. 1.

4. **sēmentis, -is,** *f.* [**sēmen,** seed], sowing. 1.

iter, itineris, *n.* [**eō,** go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter,** march, travel; **magnīs itineribus,** by forced marches. ✻

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. ✻

5. **suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum,** *intr.* [**sub+petō,** seek, obtain], be near *or* at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. 2.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [**amīcus,** friend], friendship. ✻

cōnfirmō, 1, *tr.* [**firmō,** strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. ✻

6. **cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

---

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.

2. **ad proficīscendum:** construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, coëmere, facere, cōnfirmāre all depend on *cōnstituērunt;* "they decided to get ready . . ., to buy . . ., to sow . . ., and to establish . . ."

3. **iūmentōrum:** especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, "as great a number as possible" or "as many . . . as possible."

4. **ut cōpia suppeteret,** "in order that a supply might be at hand": mode? App. 225, *a*, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

5. **cum . . . cōnfirmāre:** although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximīs cīvitātibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. **ad . . . cōnficiendās,** lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study

runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus

---

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (*leather*). *

biennium, -nī, *n.* [**bis,** twice+**annus,** year], two years. 1.

satis, *adv. and indecl. adj. and noun;* (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. *

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *

7. **annus, -ī,** *m.*, year. *

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficīscor,** set out], a setting out, start, departure. 3.

8. **dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** *tr.* [**legō,** choose], pick out, select, choose. *

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lēgō,** delegate], embassy, legation; commission. *

9. **suscipiō,-cipere,-cēpī,-ceptum,** *tr.* [**su(b)s+capiō,** take], take *or* lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. *

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kăs′tĭ-kŭs). 1.

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kăt″ạ-măn″tạ-lē′dĭs). 1.

10. **fīlius, -lī,** *m.*, son. 4.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae,** father *or* head of a family. *

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.*, many; *with abl. denoting time when*, late; *as noun*, many *persons or things; comp.* **plūs, plūris,** more; *as noun*, more; *pl.*, more, several, many; *sup.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um,** most; *pl.*, very many. *

11. **senātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**senex,** old], *a body of old men;* senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* *

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, the mass,

---

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōnficiendās* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But *cōnficiendās* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, *a* (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium . . . dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." *Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. **2,** 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. **cōnfirmant:** tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. **sibi suscipit,** "he took on himself." For case cf. *omnibus*, **2,** 5.

9. **Casticō:** case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, I, footnote 3, *b*: H. 426, 2.

10. **fīliō, Sēquanō:** case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, *a*: H. 393, 1.

11. **annōs:** case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

obtinuerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be

erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam

---

the crowd, *as opposed to individuals;* a people *or* nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Rōma,** Rome], Roman; *as noun,* a Roman. *

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**amō,** love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *as noun, m.,* a friend, an ally. *

12. occupō, 1, *tr.* [**ob+capiō,** take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. *

ante, (1) *adv.,* before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.,* before, in advance of. *

13. item, *adv.,* in like manner, so, also, just so. *

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.,* Dumnorix (dŭm′nō-riks), *a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* *

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hĕd′ū-ī); Haeduan; *as noun,* a Haeduan; *pl.,* the Haedui, *possibly* Haeduans, *one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes.* *

frāter, -tris, *m.,* brother. *

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.,* Diviciacus (dĭv′′ĭ-shĭ-ā′kŭs), *a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans.* *

14. tempus, -oris, *n.,* a division *or* section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; **omnī tempore,** always; **in reliquum tempus,** for the future; **ūnō tempore,** at the same time, at once. *

prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.* [**prīnceps,** chief], chief place *or* position; chief authority, leadership. 4.

magis, *adv., comp.* [**magnus,** great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.* **maximē,** especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. *

plēbs, plēbis, *or* **plēbēs, -ēī,** *f.,* populace, common people. 3.

15. acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accipiō,** accept], acceptable, beloved *by* (*with dative*). 1.

īdem, eadem, idem (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [**is,** this, that], the same; this very; **īdem atque,** the same as. *

cōnor, 1, *intr.,* attempt, endeavor, try. *

fīlia, -ae, *f.,* daughter. 4.

---

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.

ā senātū: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

amīcus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret, "to seize." This clause is the object of *persuādet* in l. 10: mode? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. *ut suppeteret,* l. 4, which is not used as an object.

13. Dumnorīgī: younger than Diviciacus, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui.

Haeduō: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29.

quī: i.e. Dumnorix.

14. tempore: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

prīncipātum, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.

plēbī: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

15. ut idem cōnārētur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

eī: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: Nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent: sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum

---

16. **mātrimōnium, -nī,** *n.* [**māter,** mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; **in mātrimōnium dare,** to give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to marry (*said of the man*). 2.

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **dare manūs,** yield; **dare negōtium,** *with dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of* **dō** *are derived from an obsolete verb,* **dō,** put). 4.

ille, illa, illud, *gen.* **illīus,** *dat.* **illī** (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf.* **hīc**), that, that man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it; **hīc . . . ille,** the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, *a*. 4.

probō, 1, *tr.* [**probus,** good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnor,** try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. **perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *tr.* [**faciō,** make, do], make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. *

18. **nōn** (App. 188, *a*), *adv.*, not; no. *

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quīn, *conj.* [**quī,** who *or* how+**ne,** *negative*], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance,* but that, that, from, to; **quīn etiam,** nay even, moreover. *

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **multus,** much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs,** more; **plūs posse,** be more able *or* powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrimum,** most, very; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful; be very powerful *or* influential. *

19. **exercitus, -ūs,** *m.* [**exerceō,** train], *a trained or disciplined body of men,* an army. *

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [**concilium,** assembly], bring together; gain *or* win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**ōrō,** speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], faith, con-

---

16. **perfacile . . . perficere,** lit. "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [*factū*, the supine]" = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking." **esse**: cf. **2**, 5.

17. **propterea quod obtentūrus esset,** lit. "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like *propterea quod absunt* in **1**, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. **2**, 5) is that all subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. **nōn . . . quīn,** "(he proved that) there was no doubt that."

19. **sē illīs conciliātūrum** (sc. *esse*), "that he would win for them." *Esse* is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illīs: i.e. for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. **hāc ōrātiōne,** "by this argument."

inter sē, "to one another."

dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē

---

fidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere,** convince, give a pledge; **fidem sequī,** surrender. *

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.* [**iūs,** right+**iūrō,** swear], an oath. *

21. **per,** *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts *or* influence of; **per sē,** of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. *

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum,** be able], powerful, influential. 4.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

22. **spērō,** 1, *tr.* [**spēs,** hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

1. **indicium, -cī,** *n.* [**indicō,** disclose], disclosure, information; **per indicium,** through informers. 1.

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], report, declare, disclose. *

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. *

2. **vinculum, -ī,** *n.* [**vinciō,** bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**co+agō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. *

3. **damnō,** 1, *tr.* [**damnum,** damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow *in point of time; with* **poena,** be inflicted; **fidem sequī,** seek the protection. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit, ——, *intr. impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; *when translated as personal verb*, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 4.

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. 2.

diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*, day; time; **in diēs,** from day to day; **diem ex diē,** day after day. *

---

21. **rēgnō occupātō potīrī posse spērant,** "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of." **rēgnō occupātō:** case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. **Galliae:** case? App. 111: G.-L. 407, n. 2, *d*: A. 410, *a*: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, I, 3.

Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. **ea rēs,** "this conspiracy."

Helvētiīs: case? App. 114, *c*: G.-L. 345: A. 372; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

mōribus: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

2. **ex vinculīs,** "in chains." Cf. note on **1,** 15.

3. **damnātum . . . cremārētur,** lit. "it was necessary for the punishment to

cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs

---

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dīcō**, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [**iūdex**, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iūdicium facere,** express an opinion; **iūdiciō,** by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. 2.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, *m., f.* [**clueō**, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes**, money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, *adv.* [*old dative of* **īdem**], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead *or* bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 188, *b*), (1) *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that, lest: (2) *adv.*, not; **nē . . quidem** (*enclosing the emphatic word*), not even. *

8. ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō**, seize], wrest *or* take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; **quam ob rem,** wherefore, why. *

incitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō**, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **cursū incitātō,** at full speed. *

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; *by metonymy*, battle, war. *

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

---

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him." **damnātum:** use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, *b*: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. **ut cremārētur** is a substantive clause in apposition with *poenam;* it is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of result.

diē: gender? App. 30, *a*: G.-L. 61: A. 97, *a*: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

diē . . . dictiōnis, "on the day set for the pleading of the case." **causae:** case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2. **dictiōnis:** possessive genitive, limiting *diē*.

5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. per eōs, "by their help."

nē . . . dīceret, "to avoid pleading his case": mode? App. 225, *b*: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

8. cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātūs cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

---

10. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [**magister,** master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. *

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [**mors,** death], die. 2.

neque (**nec**) (App. 188, *a*), *conj.* [**ne-+que**], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. *

11. suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**suspicor,** suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. *

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. 4.

12. cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**scīscō,** resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. 2.

1. post, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) *as prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** *or* **post sē,** in the rear. *

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless. 3.

2. ubi, *adv.* (1) *of place*, in which place, where; (2) *of time*, when, whenever; as soon as; **ubi prīmum,** as soon as. *

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; **neque iam** *or* **iam nōn,** no longer; **ubi iam,** as soon as. *

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; **parātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. *

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. *

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two+**decem,** ten], twelve. 2.

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. *

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2.

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *as noun*, person, individual. 3.

5. aedificium, -cī, *n.* [**aedificō,** build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēn-

---

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as', or "when."

quīn . . . cōnscīverit, "that he committed suicide."

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

ut exeant, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with *id.*

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise."

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, "were": indirect discourse.

oppida, vīcōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on **1,** 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, "about."

5. sēcum: position of *cum*? App. 52, *a*: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*: H. 175, 7.

portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī

---

sum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candeō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. *

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. 1.

6. **portō**, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. 3.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**com(b)+ūrō**, burn], burn up. 1.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. *

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**redeō**, return], return. 1.

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. *

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; **sublātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. *

7. **perīculum, -ī**, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. *

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 3.

8. **molō, -ere, -uī, -itum**, *tr.*, grind. 1.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cibus**, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; **molita cibāria**, meal, flour. 2.

quisque, quidque, *and* **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [**ex+ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away; raise; spread *or* publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. *

9. **Rauracī, -ōrum**, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw′ra-sī). 2.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lĭn′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* 4.

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Latobrigi (lăt″ō-brī′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* 3.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus**, *pf. part. often translated* with. *

---

6. **portātūrī erant**, lit. "they were about to take" = "they intended to take."

ut essent is a purpose clause.

domum reditiōnis, "of returning home." **domum**: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.

7. **ad . . . subeunda**: construction? App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628.

trium mēnsium cibāria, "supplies for three months." **mēnsium**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimates that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

9. **utī . . . proficīscantur**, lit. "that having used the same plan, their towns . . . having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt . . ., to burn . . ., and to set out." **cōnsiliō**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre

---

10. cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; **commūnī cōnsiliō,** by, *or* in accordance with, general action; **pūblicō cōnsiliō,** by action of the state; **cōnsilium capere** *or* **inīre,** form *or* adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habēre,** think, consider. *

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**ūrō,** burn], burn up. 1.

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus,** one], (1) *of place,* together, along with, in one place; (2) *of time,* together, along with, at the same time, also. *

11. Boiī, -iōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō′yī), *a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.* *

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (*a country between the Danube and the Alps*), Norican. 2.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go across *or* over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; *of time,* pass by. *

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.* (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē′ya), *a town in Noricum, now* Neumarkt. 1.

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [**ob+pugnō,** fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. *

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**re-+capiō,** take], take *or* get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender *or* submission; admit of, allow; *with* **sē,** withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. *

13. socius, -cī, *m.* [*cf.* **sequor,** follow], companion; confederate, ally. *

ascīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**ad+scīscō,** approve], approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). 2.

1. omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis,** all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. *

duo, duae, duo (App. 49), *card. num. adj.*, two. *

---

11. Bōiōs is the object of **ascīscunt:** App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

12. receptōs . . . ascīscunt, lit. "the Boii, received to themselves [*ad sē*], they admit to themselves [*sibi*] as allies" = "they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boii, who had," etc.

13. sibi: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

As explained in the notes on **1,** 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on **I, 1-29.** At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Direct object
Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.

1. erant, "there were."

quibus itineribus, "by which." Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

quibus . . . possent, "by which they

possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum

---

2. **difficilis, -e,** *adj.* [**facilis,** easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.

3. **vix,** *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* **quī**], by which way *or* road; in which place, where. *

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; **in annōs singulōs,** annually. *

4. **impendeō, -pendēre, ——, ——,** *intr.* [**in+pendeō,** hang], overhang, impend. 2.

5. **perpaucī, -ae, -a,** *adj.* [**paucī,** few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun,* very few. 4.

6. **multō,** *adv.* [*abl. of* **multus,** much], by far, much. 4.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [**faciō,** do], easy. 4.

expedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **expediō,** set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun,* a light armed soldier. *

7. **Allobrogēs, -um,** *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ă-lŏb′rō-jēz), *a powerful Gallic people in the Province.* *

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. 3.

pācō, 1, *tr.* [**pāx,** peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. *

8. **fluō, fluere, flūxī, ——,** *intr.*, flow, run. 2.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. *

---

could leave home," is a clause of characteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, *a*: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*: H. 591, 1.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

2. **ūnum** (*iter*) and **alterum** (*iter*) are appositives of *itinera duo*; App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, *a*: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, I, *a*: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l' Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.

3. **vix:** notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on *quae pertinent,* 1, 8.

4. **dūcerentur,** "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from *possent* in that here the subjunctive mode has the potential meaning "could": App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l' Écluse: see map, p. 70.

ut possent: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, *a*: H. 570.

5. **prohibēre:** sc. *eōs.*

6. **multō:** case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. **nūper pācātī erant:** in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. **nōn nūllīs locīs,** "at several points." Why is the preposition *in* not used? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

vadō trānsītur, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."

extrēmum: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.

Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Aprīl., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

---

9. **Genava, -ae,** *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn′ạ-vạ), *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva. 3.

10. **pōns, pontis,** *m.*, bridge. *

11. **nōndum,** *adv.* [**nōn,** not+**dum**], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with* **animō**) friendly; *as noun,* **bonum, -ī,** profit, advantage; **bona, -ōrum,** goods, property, estate; **bonī, -ōrum,** the good, good men *or* citizens. *Comp.*, **melior;** *sup.*, **optimus** (App. 42). *

12. **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum,** *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *

exīstimō, 1, *tr.* [**aestimō**], estimate, reckon, think, consider. *

vel, *conj. and adv.* (1) *as conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or; (2) *as adv.*, even. *

vīs, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **vīrēs,** strength, force; **vim facere,** use violence. *

13. **eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum** (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. *

14. **rīpa, -ae,** *f.*, bank (*of a stream*). *

15. **conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-**

---

9. **est** might more naturally have stood before *Genava.*

10. **Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrōs exīstimābant,** "they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges." **persuāsūrōs** (*esse*) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: cf. note on *perfacile esse,* **2,** 5. In direct discourse their thought was *persuādēbimus,* "we shall persuade."

11. **quod vidērentur** is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonō animō, "of a friendly disposition" or "well disposed." Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. **vel coāctūrōs** (*esse*), "or should compel them": in the same construction as *persuāsūrōs.*

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs.*

13. **omnibus rēbus comparātīs,** "when they had made everything ready."

14. **quā diē:** cf. note on *quibus itineribus,* 1. 1.

quā diē omnēs conveniant, "on which they should all assemble." Mode? App. 225, *a,* 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. **a. d. V. Kal. Aprīl.** = *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs* = *diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlēs.* The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest

---

tum, *tr. and intr.* [**veniō**, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; *impersonal,* be convenient, suitable, necessary. *

quīntus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five], fifth. 3.

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae, -ārum,** *f.*, the Calends, *the first day of the Roman month.* 1.

Aprīl., *abbr. for* **Aprīlis, -e,** *adj.*, of April, April. 2.

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius,** Lucius (lū′-shyŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū′shyŭs kăl-pĕr′nĭ-ŭs pī′sō), *Caesar's father-in-law, consul* 58 B.C. 2.

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus** (aw′lŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1.

16. **Gabīnius, -nī,** *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (aw′lŭs gạ-bĭn′ĭ-ŭs), *consul with Lucius Piso*, 58 B.C. 1.

1. Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā′yŭs jū′lĭ-ŭs sē′zạr), *conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries.* *

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntius,** messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. *

2. mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. 2.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; *especially,* the city, *Rome.* 2.

3. ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.* [**ultrā,** beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. *

4. perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property,* fall, revert. *

---

first of April, instead of the fifth. **L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus:** cf. note on **2,** 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Apposition
Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

cum nūntiātum esset: mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

id, "this fact," is explained by its appositive, the clause, *eōs . . . cōnārī,* "that they were planning, etc." **eōs:** case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. **cōnārī:** construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. ab urbe, "from [near] the city," instead of *ex urbe,* because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

quam maximīs potest itineribus, lit. "by (as great) day's journeys as the greatest he can" = "by as long day's journeys as possible." *quam maximīs itineribus* would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. **itineribus:** case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. ulteriōrem = *trānsalpīnam,* "beyond the Alps" from Rome.

4. ad Genavam: use of preposition? App. 131, *a*: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 428, *a*: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

prōvinciae imperat, "he levied upon the province."

mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

---

5. mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to* **equitēs**); **mīlitēs imperāre,** levy soldiers *upon.* ✻

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+**parō,** procure], demand from, enjoin *or* levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. ✻

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**legō,** choose], a legion. ✻

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**re-**+**scindō,** cleave], cut away *or* down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, *m.* [**veniō,** come], coming, arrival, approach. ✻

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **crētus,** *pf. part. of* **cernō**], decided; certain, sure, fixed; **certiōrem facere,** to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (**ut** *or* **nē** *and subj.*); **certior fierī,** be informed. ✻

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [**lēgō,** delegate], *one with delegated powers;* ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. ✻

8. mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. ✻

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammeius (nă-mē′-yŭs). 1.

9. Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vĕr″ū-klē′shyŭs), *an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar.* 1.

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj.* [**prīmus,** first+**capiō,** take], *taking the first place;* chief, most prominent, first; *as noun*, chief *or* principal person, leader, **chief.** ✻

10. sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. ✻

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; *as noun*, any one, anybody. ✻

maleficium, -cī, *n.* [**malum,** evil+**faciō,** do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

11. nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllīus,** *adj.* [**ne-**+**ūllus,** any], not any, no; *as noun*, no one, none; **nōn nūllus,** some; *as noun*, some, some persons. ✻

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. ✻

---

5. mīlitum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiōrēs factī sunt, lit. "were made more certain" = "were informed." **certiōrēs:** case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dīcerent, "who were to say" = "to say": a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, "that they had in mind" or "intended." **sibi:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. **3,** 17.

rogāre (sc. *sē*), "that they asked." The speakers said to Caesar *rogāmus*, "we ask."

ut sibi liceat, "that it be permitted them" or "that they be allowed." For mode see App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar's.

voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam

12. **voluntās, -tātis,** *f.* [**volō**, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. *

licet, licēre, licuit *and* **licitum est,** *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; **licet mihi, I** may; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. *

memoria, -ae, *f.* [**memor,** mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; **memoriā tenēre,** remember; **patrum memoriā,** in the time of our fathers. *

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre,** remain; **memoriā tenēre,** remember. *

13. **Cassius, -sī,** *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū′shyŭs kăsh′yŭs lŏn-gī′-nŭs), *consul* 107 B.C., *slain in battle by the Tigurini.* 3.

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ob+caedō,** cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. *

14. **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,** *tr.*, beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. *

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to: (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot *or* base of: (b) *of time*, during, within: *in compounds*, **sub** *or* **subs**, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. *

iugum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō,** join], yoke; ridge, crest. *

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. *

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. *

15. **inimīcus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**in-+amīcus,** friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, *to be distinguished from* **hostis,** a public enemy. 3.

facultās, -tātis, *f.* [*old adj.*, **facul =facilis,** easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. *

12. **voluntāte** is an ablative of accordance.

tenēbat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

13. **occīsum, pulsum, missum** are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on *memoriā tenēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of *tenēbat;* "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.

ab Helvētiīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. **sub iugum,** "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (*esse*), "that permission ought to be granted."

15. **hominēs temperātūrōs** (*esse*), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought *nōn temperābunt*, "they will not refrain."

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."

itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

---

16. temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain *or* control one's self, refrain; **temperātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. 2.

iniūria, -ae, *f.* [**in-**+**iūs,** right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. tamen, *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length *of space;* period *or* length *of time, hence* time, opportunity. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go *or* come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. *

18. respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**spondeō,** promise], reply, answer. *

19. dēlīberō, 1, *tr.* [**lībra,** balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* [**sub**+**emō,** take], take away, take; assume; *with* **supplicium,** inflict; *with* **labor,** spend. *

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether *or* if; whether; **quod sī,** but if, now if. *

quis, quid, [*and* **quī, quae, quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem,** why? **quem ad modum,** how? (2) *indef. pron.*, *especially after* **sī, nisi, nē, num,** any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, velle, voluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet,** what did he intend *or* mean? *

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, *pl.*, the Ides: *the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months.* 1.

20. revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr.*, *used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses*, *and* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum,** *intr.*, *used in the tenses*

---

16. itineris faciendī: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.

17. dum mīlitēs convenīrent, "until the soldiers should arrive."

18. diem, "time."

sē sūmptūrum, "that he should take."

ad dēlīberandum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

19. sī quid vellent, "if they wanted anything." Why *quid?* App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

20. reverterentur, "they should come again." This is a principal clause in indirect discourse, but the subjunctive is used instead of the infinitive because an imperative was used in the direct form. Caesar said *sī quid vultis, revertiminī,* "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. **2,** 5 and **3,** 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives
Agreement of adjectives
Partitive genitive
Subject of infinitive
Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause
Causal clauses with quod, etc.
Infinitive in indirect discourse
Gerund
Gerundive

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre

---

formed on the present stem [**re-+vertō**, turn], turn back, come back, return. ∗

1. intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.

3. īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow into, empty into. ∗

4. ūndēvīgintī (**XIX**), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**ūnus**, one+**dē**, from+**vīgintī**, twenty], nineteen. 2.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall. ∗

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus**, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). ∗

5. pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, *11.65 inches in length;* **pedibus**, on foot; **pedem referre**, retreat. ∗

sēdecim (**XVI**), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, sixteen. 2.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* **fodiō**, dig], trench, ditch. ∗

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead through *or* along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor; military work *or* works, fortifications, defenses; a work *of engineering or architecture;* **nātūrā et opere**, by nature and art; **opera**, crafts. ∗

praesidium, -dī, *n.* [**praesideō**, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. ∗

6. dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō**, place], place apart *or* about; distribute, arrange, station. 2.

castellum, -ī, *n.* [**castrum**, fort], fortress, redoubt. ∗

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [**mūniō**, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. 1.

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of* **quī**, who,

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.

1. legiōne mīlitibusque: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218, 10: H.-B. 423, *a*: H. 476.

2. ā lacū . . . ad montem: see map, p. 70.

4. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

mīlia passuum XIX = about 17½ English miles. This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l'Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesar's plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar constructed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon's view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.

in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, lit. "of sixteen feet into height" = "sixteen feet high." **pedum:** App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The "section of Caesar's wall," set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the *mūrus*. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. dispōnit, "stationed at several points." Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī

which], in order that, so that, that. *

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invītō**, against his will. *

8. **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum,** *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venīre**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, *as* **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. *

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1.

9. **exemplum, -ī,** *n.*, example, precedent. 2.

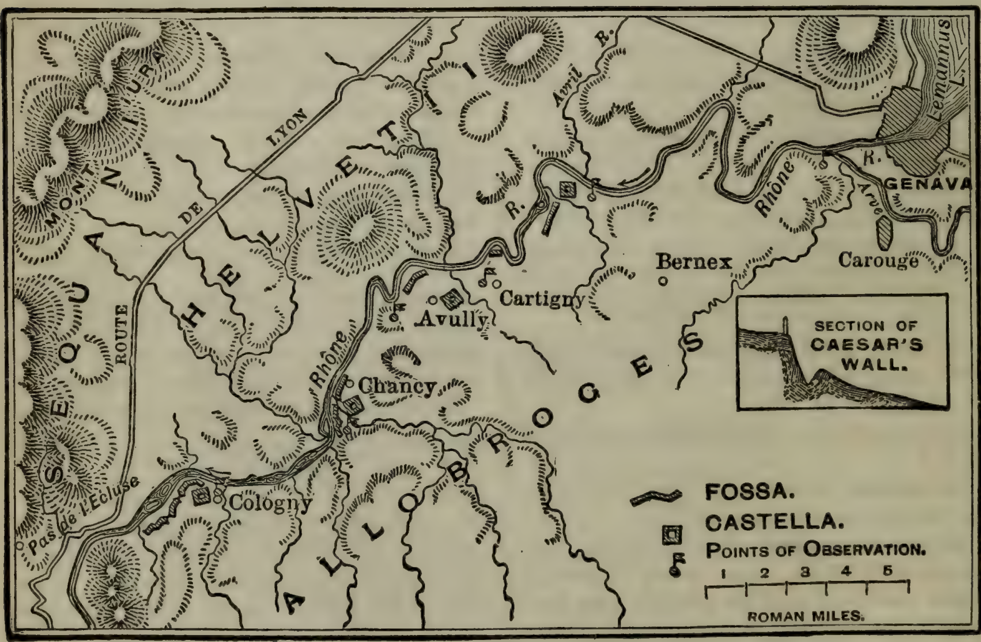
10. **ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum,** *tr.* [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. *

tioned detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

G.-L. 409: A. 419, *a*; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. **negat sē posse,** "he said that he could not."

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, *a*:



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

quō facilius posset: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, *a*, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, 2, *a*: B. 282, *a*: H.-B. 502, 2, *b*: H. 568, 7.

sī cōnārentur, "if they should try."

sē invītō: construction? App. 150: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

10. **sī . . . cōnentur,** "if they should try to use force."

prohibitūrum (sc. *se . . . esse*), "that he would stop them."

eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs

---

11. dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl *or* cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria,** transport. *

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *tr.*, join *or* unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. 2.

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [**plūs,** more], several, many; a great many. *

12. parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus,** *as noun*, less; *sup.*, **minimus, -a, -um,** least, very small. *

13. numquam, *adv.* [**ne-+umquam,** ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam,** sometimes. 3.

interdiū, *adv.* [**diēs,** day], during the day, by day. 1.

noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** night], by night. 4.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [**rumpō,** break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. 1.

14. mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. *

concursus, -ūs, *m.* [**concurrō,** run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. 2.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, *a weapon for fighting at a distance*, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [**re-+pellō,** beat, drive], beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. 4.

15. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnor,** try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.

1. relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lic-

---

11. eā spē dēiectī, lit. "cast down from this expectation" = "disappointed in this expectation." **spē:** case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2; footnote: H. 464.

nāvibus iūnctīs, "by joining together boats," and thus making a pontoon bridge.

12. aliī: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, *nāvibus . . . factīs*. The meaning is that most of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, but others by fords.

13. sī possent, "(to see) whether they could." For this use of *sī*, see App. 264, *b*: G.-L. 460, 1, *b*; 467: A. 576, *a*: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, *a*: H. 649, II, 3.

14. concursū: cf. note on **dispōnit, 1. 6.**

repulsī, "were repulsed and."

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Accusative of extent of space
Ablative of separation
Ablative of means
Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. ūna via, "only the way." This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in **6,** 2.

quā, "and by this." Case? App. 144:

invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs

---

tum, *tr.* [**re-+linquō**, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. *

2. **propter**, *prep. with acc.* [**prope**, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. *

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [**angustus**, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. **spontis,** *gen.*, and **sponte**, *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, **spōns**), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. 2.

4. **dēprecātor,** *m.* [**dēprecor**, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [**in+patrō**, accomplish], obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); **impetrāre ā** (**ab**), gain permission from, persuade. *

5. **grātia, -ae,** *f.* [**grātus**, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; **grātiās agere**, thank; **grātiam habēre,** to feel grateful; **grātiam referre,** to return a favor; **hanc grātiam referre,** to return a favor in this way; **grātiam inīre,** to gain favor; **grātiā** *following a gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. *

largītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**largior**, bribe], bribery. 1.

8. **novus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus, -a, -um,** latest, last; *as noun or with* **agmen,** those in the rear, the rear. *

studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, be eager *or* zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. *

beneficium, -cī, *n.* [**bene**, well+**faciō**, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

9. **obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī,**

G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītīs, "if the Sequani should refuse." Ablative absolute.

2. **cum possent:** mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, "by their own efforts" or "by themselves." The phrase usually means "of their own accord."

3. **Dumnorīgem:** this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in **3**, **13** as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

4. **ut impetrārent** is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātōre, lit. "he being mediator" = "by his mediation."

5. **grātiā:** case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. **Helvētiīs:** case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

8. **rēbus:** case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, lit. "to hold bound by his kindness" = "to keep under obligations."

impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae

---

-strictum, *tr.* [**stringō,** tie], bind, hold *under obligations,* pledge. 2.

itaque, *conj.* [**ita,** so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [**obsideō,** blockade], *one that is guarded,* hostage; pledge, security. *

1. renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**nūntius,** message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. *

2. Santonī, -ōrum, *or* **Santonēs, -um,** *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni (săn′tō-nī), *or* Santones (săn′tō-nēz). 3.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tŏl″ō-sā′tēz), *the people of Tolosa.* 1.

4. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**inter**+**legō,** choose, select], select *or* distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. *

---

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's narrative we find that states were obliged to bind themselves to carry out their agreements by giving hostages. The hostages were usually the children of the most influential men of the state, and were liable to enslavement or death if the state failed to fulfill its agreement.

11. Sēquanī, Helvētiī: sc. *obsidēs dent;* i.e. the Sequani bound themselves not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses are substantive volitive clauses, objects of the implied phrase "bind themselves."

THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative with special verbs
Dative with adjectives

Chap. **10.** Caesar brings more troops from Italy.

1. Caesarī: case? App. 114, *c*: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

renūntiātur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and scouts to report the movements of the Helvetii.

Helvētiīs: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

esse is the subject of *renūntiātur.*

2. facere is the subject of *esse.*

3. nōn longē: the distance is really about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would be more dangerous in the territory of the Santones than in their own country, because they would no longer be hemmed in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason to fear that either the Helvetii or the Gauls whom they should drive from their homes would raid the Province; and since it was his duty to protect the Province he was justified in forcing the Helvetii to remain at home. He does not choose to add, however, that this movement of the Helvetii gave him an excellent opportunity to interfere in the affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in with his plans for the conquest of the country.

4. id sī fieret, "if this should be carried out," is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, depending on *futūrum:* mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's thought was, "if this shall be carried out [future indicative], it will, etc."

magnō . . . futūrum, "that it would be (attended) with great danger to the province." **prōvinciae** is a genitive.

futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem

---

5. bellicōsus,-a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* full of war, warlike. 3.

6. patēns, -entis, *adj.* [**pateō,** be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.

frūmentārius, -a,-um, *adj.* [**frūmentum,** grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; *of places,* fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria,** supply of grain, provisions. *

7. T. *abbr. for* **Titus** (tī′ tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī′ tŭs ā′ shyŭs lā″bĭ-ē′ nŭs), *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda* 45 B.C. *

8. praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, *sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula.* *

9. ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. *

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], *write together in a list;* levy, enroll, enlist; write. *

circum, *prep. with acc.* [**circus,** a circle], around, about, near. 2.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (ăk″wĭ-lē′-ya), *a city of Cisalpine Gaul.* 1.

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [**hiems,** winter], pass the winter, winter. *

10. hīberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc.* **castra,** camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth; draw (*a sword*). *

---

5. ut habēret is the subject of *futūrum:* mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

inimīcōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locīs is probably a dative depending on *fīnitimōs,* though it may be an ablative of place.

6. habēret: sc. *prōvincia.*

7. mūnītiōnī: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, *a*, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

lēgātum: see Int. 38.

8. Ītaliam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.

itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

9. cōnscrībit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.

10. hībernīs: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

quā proximum iter erat, "where there was the shortest route." He chose the pass of Mount Genèvre, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their

Galliam per Alpēs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant

---

11. **Alpēs, -ium,** *f. pl.* (Cghi), the Alpes (ăl′pēz), *better*, the Alps. *

quīnque (V), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, five. 4.

12. **Ceutronēs, -um,** *m.* (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū′trō-nēz). 1.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yŏs′ē-lī). 1.

Caturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kăt″ū-rī′jēz). 1.

superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus,** high. App. 44], (1) *of place*, upper, higher, superior; (2) *of time*, previous, earlier, former. *

14. **Ocelum, -ī,** *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ŏs′ē-lŭm). 1.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** (=**Cisalpīna**), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps.* *

15. **Vocontiī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kŏn′shyī). 1.

16. **septimus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.* [**septem,** seven], seventh. *

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *

17. **Segusiāvī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sĕg″ū-shĭ-ā′vī). 1.

extrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

18. **prīmus, -a, -um,** *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank *or* ranks; leaders, chiefs; **in prīmīs,** especially. *

2. **trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**trāns**+**dūcō,** lead], lead across,

---

country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reinforcements.

11. **legiōnibus:** case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. **complūribus . . . proeliīs:** English order, *hīs pulsīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proeliīs* (ablative of means).

15. **prōvinciae:** case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

17. **in Segusiāvōs:** i.e. into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. He encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Possessive genitive
Indirect object
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative of place from which
Ablative of accompaniment
Historical present
Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. **iam,** "by this time."

angustiās: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. **pervēnerant:** i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from

eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum,

---

lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. *

3. populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4.

4. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**fendō,** strike], keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect. *

5. auxilium, -lī, *n.* [**augeō,** increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. *

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita,** in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita,** not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut,** just . . . as; so . . . that. *

mereō, *and* **mereor,** 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (**odium**); serve *as a soldier* (*i.e. earn pay*). 3.

6. paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. *

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnspiciō,** look at], sight, view; presence. *

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [**vāstus,** waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

līberī, -ōrum, *m.*, [**līber,** free], *the free members of the household* (*as opposed to slaves*); children. *

7. servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus,** a slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead away, draw *or* carry off, withdraw. 1.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [**pugnō,** fight], take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [**dē+habeō,** have], *have, or keep from some one;* owe; *with inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. *

8. Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ăm-băr′ī), *clients of the Haedui.* 2.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; *with* **tempus,** critical; *as noun*, kinsman, friend. *

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *as noun*, kinsman, relative. 3.

---

that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been at least fifty miles in length, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. cum possent: causal.

suaque, "and their property."

4. rogātum: form and use? App. 295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 340, 1, *a*: H.-B. 618, *a*: H. 632, 1; 633.

5. omnī tempore, "on every occasion."

meritōs esse depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in *rogātum.* About sixty years before, the Haedui had been called "brothers" of the Roman people, and ever since that time their relations with Rome had been friendly; but we do not know that they had ever been of assistance to Rome.

6. ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint, "that their lands ought not to have been devastated." **dēbuerint:** mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostrī = *Rōmānī.* It agrees with *exercitūs.*

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et

---

9. dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [**populor,** lay waste], lay waste, ravage. 2.

10. hostis, -is, *m., f.*, (*public*) enemy *or* foe *in distinction from* **inimīcus,** *a personal enemy; pl.*, the enemy. *

11. possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō,** possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. 4.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam conicere** *or* **dare,** put to flight. *

12. dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [**mōnstrō,** show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. *

praeter, *prep. with acc.* [**prae,** before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. *

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. 1.

nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil,** somewhat. *

13. exspectō, 1, *tr.* [**spectō,** look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. *

14. statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [**status,** position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. *

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [**fors,** chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. *

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.* [**sūmō,** take], *take together or all at once;* devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.

1. Arar, Araris (*acc.* **-im**), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā′rar), *the modern* Saone. 4.

---

9. sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs, "that their lands had been laid waste and that they," etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs, quī . . . habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north of the river and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquī, "that to them there was nothing of a remainder" = "that they had nothing left." **sibi:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. **reliquī** is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, *a*: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 2, *a*: H.-B. 346, *a*: H. 440, 5, note.

13. quibus: use of relative? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn exspectandum (sc. *esse*) **sibi,** "that it was not to be waited by him" = "that he must not wait." **exspectandum:** construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237. **sibi:** case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenīrent, "until they should arrive."

THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative of possessor
Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. **12.** Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rearguard of the Helvetii.

1. flūmen est Arar, "there is a river (named) the Arar."

Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

---

2. **incrēdibilis, -e,** *adj.* [**in-** + **crēdibilis,** credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4.

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**lēnis,** smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1.

3. **oculus, -ī,** *m.*, eye. 3.

uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* **utrīus** (App. 32), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one *or* which *of two;* (2) *as rel.*, the one who, *of two*, whichever. 1.

iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdex,** a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. *

4. **linter, -tris,** *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō,** search out], explorer, scout, spy. *

6. **quārtus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.* [**quattuor,** four], fourth. *

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3.

7. **vigilia, -ae,** *f.* [**vigil,** awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, *one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time.* *

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra, castrōrum,** fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** *or* **pōnere,** pitch camp; **castra movēre,** break up camp. *

---

2. **incrēdibilī lēnitāte,** "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative.

ut possit: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. **in . . . fluat,** "in which direction it flows": mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

4. **ratibus, lintribus:** ablatives of means.

iūnctīs modifies only *lintribus.*

trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. **trēs . . . trādūxisse,** "that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb *trādūxisse* governs two objects,—*partēs* depending on the meaning of the simple verb *dūcō*, *flūmen* depending on the meaning of the preposition *trāns:* App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, *b*: B. 175, 2, *a*, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.

6. **citrā**: i.e. on the east.

7. **dē tertiā vigiliā,** "just after (the beginning of) the third watch"="just after midnight."

legiōnibus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.

ierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō

---

9. impedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **impediō,** hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered *or* burdened by baggage; occupied *or* engaged in; at a disadvantage; *of places,* difficult of passage. *

inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.* [**in-**+**opīnāns,** expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2.

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**ad**+**gradior,** step], advance to *or* against; attack. 4.

10. concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

mandō, 1, *tr.* [**manus,** hand+**dō,** give], *give into one's hands;* entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. *

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun,* **Tigurīnī** (Cg), the Tigurini (tĭg″ū-rī′nī). 2.

12. nam, *conj.*, for. *

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. *

14. interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. sīve *and* **seu,** *conj.* [**sī,** if+**ve,** or], or if, if; or; whether; **sīve . . . sīve,** either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. *

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cadō,** fall], *what befalls;* accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū,** by chance. *

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, **diī**; *dat. pl.*, **dīs**), *m.*, god, deity. 4.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**mortālis,** mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. īnsignis, -e, *adj.* [**signō,** mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun,* mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. *

---

10. mandārunt = *mandāvērunt:* form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—"ran into and hid."

13. cum exīsset: mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1. **exīsset** =*exiīsset.*

memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. Cassium, sub iugum: cf. **7,** 13, 14.

16. quae pars . . . ea, "that part which." Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound *īnferō* governs the indirect object.

Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad

---

17. persolvō,-solvere,-solvī,-solūtum, *tr.* [**solvō**, pay], pay in full; suffer (*punishment*). 1.

18. sōlum, *adv.* [**sōlus,** alone], only, merely. *

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**populus,** people], of the state *or* people, common, public; *n. as noun,* public, public view; **rēs pūblica,** common weal, state. *

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet (*a stronger adversative than* **autem** *or* **at**). *

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.

19. socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. 1.

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. 2.

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū′shyŭs kăl-pĕr′nĭ-ŭs pī′sō), *killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini,* 107 B.C. 1.

2. cōnsequor,-sequī,-secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. *

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūra,** care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, *b*), have, order. 4.

3. repentīnus, -a,-um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. *

4. vīgintī (XX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, twenty. *

aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger,** ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, **aegrius;** *sup.*, **aegerrimē** (App. 40). 3.

---

17. prīnceps persolvit, "was the first to pay."

19. Note the accumulation of appositives, — **Pīsōnis** with *socerī,* **Pīsōnem** with *avum,* **lēgātum** with *Pīsōnem.*

socerī: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in **6,** 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58.

20. quō Cassium: the same verb *interfēcerant* belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of time
Result clause
Narrative cum clause

Chap. **13.** The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.

1. ut would usually stand before *reliquās.*

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, "he had a bridge made": construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

in Ararī, "over the Arar."

4. cum intellegerent, "since they saw," or better "seeing." The object of *intellegerent* is *illum fēcisse.* **id** is the object of *fēcisse.* **ut transīrent,** "(namely) the crossing of the river," is in apposition with *id:* mode? App. 229, *a*: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 4.

5. lēgātōs, "envoys."

eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae

---

6. Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (dĭv′ĭ-kō), *an Helvetian chieftain.* 2.

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, *see* **Cassius.** 1.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead (**causam** *or* **rem**); **quod agitur,** the matter in hand; **rēs agitur,** something is at stake. *

sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. 1.

10. persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.

persevērō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1.

reminīscor, -ī, *intr.* [**mēns,** mind], call to mind, remember. 1.

11. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with* **mīlitēs,** veteran. *

incommodum, -ī, *n.* [**incommodus,**

---

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

sī . . . faceret. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that *faceret* stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.

9. Helvētiōs is the subject of *itūrōs* and *futūrōs.*

eōs is the subject of **esse.**

ubi cōnstituisset, "where he should have decided"="where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore *cōnstituisset* must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. persevērāret stands for a future, like *faceret*, l. 8.

reminīscerētur, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."

incommodī: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.

virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent

---

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **priustinus,** *from* **prior,** former], former, original; previous, preceding. 4.

12. **imprōvīsō,** *adv.* [**imprōvīsus,** unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. 1.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.* [**orior,** arise], rise against, assail, attack. *

13. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** (App. 81), *tr. and intr.; tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** *or* **molestē ferre,** be annoyed *or* angry at; *pass.* (*sometimes*) rush: *intr. almost* = *verb* to be. *

14. **magnopere,** *adv.* [**magnus,** great + **opus,** work], *with great labor;* especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. *

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribus,** a tribe *or* division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. 2.

15. **dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,** *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

maior, maius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **magnus,** great], greater (*in degree, size, time, etc.*); older, elder; *as noun,* **maiōrēs nātū,** elders, old men; **maiōrēs,** ancestors. *

16. **discō, discere, didicī, ——,** *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. 1.

dolus, -ī, *m.*, craft, trick, treachery. 2.

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [**sedeō,** sit], a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade, treachery; artifice, crafty device. *

17. **nītor, nītī, nīxus sum,** *intr.*, rest *or* rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. 1.

quārē, *adv.* [**quī,** which + **rēs,** thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. *

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle. *

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], take a stand *or* position, keep one's position, stand, form (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend *or* rest on. *

350, *c*: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

12. **quod adortus esset,** "as to the fact that he had attacked."

14. **nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret,** lit., "he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess" = "he should not overrate his own prowess." For mode cf. *reminīscerētur*, l. 10.

15. **ipsōs, sē:** i.e. the Helvetii.

16. **ut contenderent:** a result clause.

magis quam, "rather than."

dolō: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. The meaning of the last sentence is, "Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat."

cōnstitissent stands for a perfect in-

ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod

---

18. **interneciō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**necō,** destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. 2.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** *with gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine,** on his *or* their own account, personally. ✻

19. **prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** *tr.* [**dō,** give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriā prōditum,** told in tradition, handed down. 2.

1. **dubitātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**dubitō,** doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. 1.

2. **commemorō, 1,** *tr.* [**memorō,** call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. ✻

3. **graviter,** *adv.* [**gravis,** heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; **graviter ferre,** take to heart, be annoyed *or* vexed (*at*); **graviter premere,** press hard. ✻

meritum, -ī, *n.* [**mereor,** deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. 2.

4. **accidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——,** *intr.* [**ad+cadō,** fall], fall to *or* upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit,** it happens. ✻

aliquis, -quid, *and* **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *indef. pron.* [**quis,** who. App. 62, *a*], some one, something; any one, anything, any. ✻

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō,** know], conscious; aware. 1.

5. **caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum,** *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; **obsidibus cavēre,** exchange hostages as security. 1.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], entrap; deceive. 1.

---

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

THIRD REFERENCE:
Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. **14.** Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. **hīs:** i.e. the envoys.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause *quod . . . tenēret.*

minus dubitātiōnis, "less hesitation." **dubitātiōnis:** partitive genitive.

2. **eās rēs:** i.e. the defeat of Cassius.

3. **eō . . . quō:** case? App. 148, *a*: G.-L. 403: A. 414, *a*: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

4. **quī sī,** "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural.

iniūriae, "of wrong doing": case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.

5. **nōn fuisse difficile,** "it would not have been difficult."

eō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause *quod . . . putāret.*

dēceptum: sc. *populum Rōmānum . . . esse.*

neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem

---

6. **timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——,** *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; **nihil timēre**, have no fear. *

7. **contumēlia, -ae,** *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *intr.* [**oblīviō**, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. **num,** *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. **temptō,** 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. **vexō,** 1, *tr.* [*intensive of* **vehō**, carry], carry *or* drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], lay down *or* aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.

11. **victōria, -ae,** *f.* [**victor**, victor], victory. *

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. *

īnsolenter, *adv.* [**īnsolēns**, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [**glōria**, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.

12. **diū,** *adv.*, for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.*, **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, **diūtissimē**, for the longest time. *

impūne, *adv.* [**in-+poena**, punishment], without punishment. 1.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [**mīror**, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

---

6. **commissum** (sc. *quicquam . . . esse*), "that anything had been done."

ā sē, "by them"; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, "because of which they should be afraid." For mode see App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. **timendum,** lit. "that it must be feared"="that they need fear": construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

quod sī, "but if."

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, *b*: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

8. **vellet:** the subject is still *populus Rōmānus.*

num posse, "they could not, could they," or simply "could they." This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II: G.-L. 651, R. 1: A. 586: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, *a*: H. 642, 2.

iniūriārum depends on *memoriam:* App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, "the fact that." These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniūriārum.* In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō=*populō Rōmānō.*

11. **quod . . . admīrārentur** are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *pertinēre.*

victōriā: i.e. the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. **sē intulisse,** "that they [the Helvetii] had inflicted."

eōdem pertinēre, "tended to the same result."

pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;

---

13. **cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum,** *intr.* [**suēscō,** become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, *a*), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. *

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; **sed enim,** but in fact, however. *

14. **commūtātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**commūtō,** change], a changing, change. 2.

doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. 2.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1.

15. **secundus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**sequor,** follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; **secundō flūmine,** down the river. *

interdum, *adv.* [**dum,** while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], long. 1.

16. **impūnitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**in-+poena,** punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1.

17. **polliceor,** 2, *tr. and intr.* [**prō+liceor,** bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. *

19. **satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,** *intr.* [**satis,** enough+**faciō,** make], make *or* do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. **īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** *tr. and intr.* [**statuō,** set up],

---

13. **cōnsuēsse**=*cōnsuēvisse.*

quō: for use see **8,** 6.

14. **doleant:** so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and pluperfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit.* But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This usage, called *repraesentatio,* is due to the same desire for vividness which leads to the use of the historical present for a past tense. It is usually better to translate as if the regular past tenses were used, just as it is better to translate the historical present indicative by a past.

15. **secundiōrēs rēs,** "a considerable degree of prosperity"; **diūturniōrem,** "quite long." The comparative may often be rendered by such words as "too," "rather," "quite," all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. **concēdere** depends on *cōnsuēsse.*

cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. **ab iīs:** case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: sc. *sē . . . esse.*

18. **sī Haeduīs:** sc. *satisfaciant.*

ipsīs: i.e. the Haedui.

19. **sēsē:** i.e. Caesar.

eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō

---

set up *or* put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **īnstitūtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above.* ✻

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad**+**capiō,** take], take *or* receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. ✻

22. testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. 2.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [**respondeō,** answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. discedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with* **ab** *or* **ex**). ✻

1. posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post,** after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** *or* **postumus,** last. ✻

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; *with* **castra,** move camp *from one place to another*, *or* break camp. ✻

2. equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō,** ride; **equus,** horse], cavalry, horsemen. ✻

4. praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send before *or* in advance. ✻

5. cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus,** desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [**agō,** move], *a moving body;* a marching column; army; **in agmine,** on the march; **prīmum agmen,** the van; **novissimum** *or* **extrēmum agmen,** the rear. ✻

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up *or* after, follow close upon, pursue. ✻

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius,** other], of *or* belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum,** debt; **aliēnissimī,** entire strangers. 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Objective genitive
Ablative of agent
Ablative of cause
Ablative of degree of difference
Adversative cum clause

Chap. **15.** The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. castra movent, "march on." The map facing p. 42 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger (Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Int. 48.

3. quem coāctum habēbat, "which he had collected," almost=*quem coēgerat:* App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

4. quī videant: a purpose clause. **quī** is plural, agreeing with the collective noun *equitātum.*

quās . . . faciant, "in what direction the enemy were marching." **faciant:** mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

5. cupidius: cf. note on **14,** 15.

locō: case? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

---

6. **paucī, -ae, -a,** *adj.* (*used rarely in sing.*), few; *as noun*, few *persons or things.* *

7. **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,** *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3.

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five+**centum,** hundred], five hundred. 3.

8. **eques, -itis,** *m.* [**equus,** horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. *Then* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). *Also,* a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). *

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **tam,** so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; **quantō . . . tantō,** *with comparatives, see* **quantō.** *

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2.

audācter, *adv.* [**audāx,** bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, **audācius**; *sup.*, **audācissimē.** *

9. **subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——,** *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.

10. **lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and *a*), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coeptus,** *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. *

11. **praesentia, -ae,** *f.* [**praesēns; praesum,** be present], presence; the present moment; **in praesentiā,** for the present; then. 1.

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [**rapiō,** seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pābulor,** forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**populor,** ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.

12. **circiter,** *adv.* [**circus,** circle], about, near. *

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**quīnque,** five+**decem,** ten], fifteen. *

---

6. **paucī dē nostrīs,** "a few of our men." The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

9. **novissimō . . . lacessere,** "to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard." Both **agmine** and **proeliō** are ablatives of means.

10. **satis habēbat . . . prohibēre,** "considered it sufficient . . . to keep." Caesar had never before commanded so large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. **ita utī,** "in such a way that," introduces a result clause.

prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis

---

14. amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius,** *comp. as noun*, more, a greater number, a greater distance. *

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five], five each, five at a time, five. 1.

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. 1.

15. intersum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be *or* lie between, intervene; be present *at*, take part *in; impers.*, **interest,** it concerns, it is important; there is a difference *or* an interval; **magnī interest,** it is of great importance. 3.

1. interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. *

cotīdiē, *adv.* [**quot,** how many+**diēs,** day], daily, every day. *

2. pūblicē, *adv.* [**pūblicus,** public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. 2.

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. 1.

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frīgora,** cold seasons. 1.

3. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with* **castra,** pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, *in addition to above meanings.* *

modo, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *with measure or limit;* only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time*, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also. *

4. mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. 3.

pābulum, -ī, *n.* [*cf.* **pāscō,** feed], fodder, provender. 2.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at

---

14. prīmum: sc. *agmen.*

amplius is the subject of *interesset.*

quīnīs aut sēnīs, "five or six [each day]."

mīlibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of place

Chap. **16-20.** Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. **16.** The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.

1. interim: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.

Haeduōs frūmentum: for the two objects see App. 125, *a*: G.-L. 339, *a*: A. 396: B. 178, 1, *a*: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.

quod essent pollicitī, "which [as he said] they had promised." This subordinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called "implied indirect discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, *a*: H. 649, 1.

2. flāgitāre=*flāgitābat.* Note that its subject is a nominative. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. sub septentriōnibus, lit. "under the northern stars" = "toward the north."

4. frūmenta: the plural means grain standing in the fields.

mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.

pābulī: for the cavalry horses and

magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem

---

least, truly; on the other hand; **nē . . . quidem,** not even. *

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], bring *or* carry up; convey. 1.

7. āvertō,-vertere,-vertī,-versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], turn away from *or* away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. *

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**ne-+volō,** wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* **nōlī** *or* **nōlīte,** *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. *

8. cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bring. App. 81], bring *or* get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake one's self, take refuge. *

comportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry together, collect, bring. *

adsum, adesse, affuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be near *or* present, be at hand, appear. 3.

9. īnstō,-stāre,-stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand upon *or* near, be at hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call together, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus (lĭs′kŭs), *a chief magistrate of the Haedui.* 4.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **supe-**

---

pack animals. The cattle of the Helvetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō ūtī: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p. 42.

8. diem: accusative of duration of time.

dūcere, "put him off," is an historical infinitive.

cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse (sc. *frūmentum*) are the objects of the historical infinitive *dīcere.*

9. ubi intellēxit: mode? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

sē diūtius dūcī, "that he was being put off too long."

quō diē, "on which." Cf. **6,** 1.

10. frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, lit. "for him to measure out grain was right"="he had to distribute grain." This was done twice a month. **oportēret:** subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Its subject is *frūmentum mētīrī.*

convocātīs prīncipibus, "summoning," etc. Remember that the ablative absolute must not be translated literally.

12. Dīviciācō et Liscō: in apposition with *prīncipibus.*

summō . . . praeerat, "held the highest office."

quem vergobretum: for the two objects see App. 126: G.-L. 340; A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, *a*: H. 410, 1.

vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod

---

rus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. *

praesum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; **praesēns,** *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. *

13. **vergobretus, -ī,** *m.*, vergobret (vĕr′gō-brĕt), *the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.* 1.

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. 1.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], yearly. 1.

vīta, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], life; manner of living, living. 4.

14. **nex, necis,** *f.*, violent death, death, execution. 1.

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere,** grant permission, give a chance. *

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+causa,** cause, case], *bring a case or charge against;* blame, censure, accuse. 2.

15. **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum,** *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. 2.

16. **propinquus,-a,-um,** *adj.* [**prope,** near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. *

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [**levō,** lift], lift from beneath, lift *or* raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. 3.

17. **praesertim,** *adv.*, particularly, especially. *

prex, precis, *f.* (*in sing. only in dat., acc., and abl.*) [**precor,** pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. 2.

18. **dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. 1.

19. **queror, querī, questus sum,** *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. *

1. **tum,** *adv.*, then, at this *or* that time; then, secondly; then, also, **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also. *

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. 3.

---

14. **in suōs,** "over his fellow-citizens."

quod nōn sublevētur, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. l. 1, and see App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 649, I.

15. **posset:** sc. *frūmentum.*

16. **tempore** may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; **hostibus** is an ablative absolute.

17. With *praesertim*, *cum* is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, "in great part."

18. **quod sit dēstitūtus:** cf. l. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of the way (*route*)

Ablative with ūtor, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.

1. Supply *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the object of *prōpōnit.*

anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra

---

2. **anteā,** *adv.* [**ante,** before+**eā,** this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* 2.

taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; **tacitus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. 3.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place *or* put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. *

3. **valeō,** 2, *intr.*, be strong *or* vigorous, have weight, influence, *or* strength; **plūrimum valēre,** be very powerful. *

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. **sēditiōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**sēditiō,** sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**probus,** good], unprincipled. 1.

5. **dēterreō,** 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten away *or* off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

7. **perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *tr.* [**ferō,** bear], bear *or* carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. *

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [**dubius,** doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. *

8. **superō,** 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super,** over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre,** survive. *

9. **lībertās, -tātis,** *f.* [**līber,** free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

---

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. **valeat:** for tense see note on **14,** 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, *a*: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. **improbā,** "reckless."

5. **dēterrēre nē cōnferant,** "were preventing . . . from bringing."

6. **praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī,** "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' *sēditiōsa ōrātiō.* The subject of *praestāre* is *perferre.*

sī (sc. *Haeduī*) **iam obtinēre nōn possint,** "if they could no longer hold." The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. **neque** (sc. *sē*) **dubitāre,** "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. **quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī,** "that they would wrest from the Haedui." **Haeduīs:** dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, *d*: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. **sint ēreptūrī:** form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, *a*: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mode? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

superāverint, "should conquer," is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

ūnā: the adverb.

cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā,

---

11. coërceō, 2, *tr.* [**arceō,** shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **necessārius,** necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

12. quantus,-a,-um, *adj.* [*cf.* **quam,** how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum,** *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum,** *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō . . . tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. *

2. dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō,** mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **iaciō,** throw], throw *or* hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer,** swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, **celerius;** *sup.*, **celerrimē** (App. 40). *

concilium, -lī, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. *

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send in different directions, send away *or* off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

4. retineō, 2, *tr.* [**re-+teneō,** hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *tr. and intr.*, seek *or* look for; inquire, ask, ask *or* inquire about. *

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. *

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [**conveniō,** come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. līberē, *adv.* [**līber,** free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [**sēcernō,** separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *tr.* [**re-+pariō,** procure], pro-

---

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of *quae* and as one of the subjects of *ēnūntiārī.*

11. sē: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coāctus, "under compulsion."

quantō . . . fēcerit is an indirect question, the object of *intellegere.*

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

2. plūribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex sōlō, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. **16,** 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, *a*: G.-L. 339, *a*, R. 1: A. 396, *a*: B. 178, 1, *a*: H.-B. 393, *c*: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vēra, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by

magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. ¶ Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud

---

cure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. *

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n. as noun*, the truth; **vērī similis,** likely, probable. 4.

audācia, -ae, *f.* [**audāx,** bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.

7. **līberālitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**līber,** free], *freedom in giving, etc.;* generosity. 2.

8. **portōrium, -rī,** *n.*, toll, tariff *on imports or exports.* 2.

9. **vectīgal, -ālis,** *n.* [**vectīgālis,** tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. 2.

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. 2.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**red-+emō,** buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3.

10. **liceor,** 2, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*). 2.

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, against him *or* them; on the other hand; **contrā atque,** contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. *

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem,** *m. and f.* [**ne-+homō,** man], no man, no one, nobody. *

11. **familiāris, -e,** *adj.* [**familia,** household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; **rēs familiāris,** personal property, estate. 4.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.

largior, 4, *tr.* [**largus,** large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. 1.

12. **sūmptus, -ūs,** *m.* [**sūmō,** spend], expense. 1.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. 3.

13. **alō, alere, aluī, altum,** *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

---

the indirect discourse which follows.

ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, "that Dumnorix was the very man" or "that it was, in fact, Dumnorix." By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in **4,** 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.

summā audāciā, "(a man) of the utmost recklessness." For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. **rērum:** case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēmpta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. **parvō pretiō:** thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēmpta habēre: differs how from *redēmisse?* App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

10. **illō licente,** "when he bid."

12. **comparāsse:** form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. **domī:** case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

---

14. largiter, *adv.* [**largus,** large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse,** to have great influence. 1.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], power, authority, influence. 2.

15. māter, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae,** matrons. 3.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bĭt″ū-rī′jēz). 1.

illīc, *adv.* [**ille,** that], in that place, there. 1.

16. collocō, 1, *tr.* [**con**+**locō,** place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre,** to give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2.

17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil one's self *for the marriage ceremony*, marry. 1.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. 1.

18. cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *tr. and intr.*, long *or* be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. *

affīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2.

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf. with meaning of pres.*, hate, detest. 2.

20. dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [**minuō,** lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1.

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ante,** before], former, old, ancient. 2.

21. honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. 3.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**re-**+**statuō,** set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.

24. dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [**spērō,** hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus,** *as part., from transitive meaning*, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. *

---

14. causā: see vocabulary.

16. collocāsse: sc. *nūptum.*

ipsum: i.e. Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. **3,** 15.

sorōrem ex mātre, "sister on his mother's side"; i.e. his half-sister.

17. nūptum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, *b*: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

in cīvitātēs: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with verbs meaning to favor.

19. nōmine: ablative of cause.

20. dēminūta: sc. *sit.*

21. sī quid: why *quid?* App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

summam in spem venīre, "he entertained the highest hopes."

22. imperiō, "under the sovereignty": case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 474, 1.

Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum

---

25. **equester,-tris,-tre,** *adj.* [eques, horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **advertō,** turn to], turned to *or* against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; **adversō flūmine,** up the river; **in adversum ōs,** full in the face. *

29. **perterreō,** 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. **cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum,** *tr.* [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, *I have learned*, I know (App. 193, I, *a*). *

2. **accēdō,-cēdere,-cessī, -cessum,** *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; **accēdēbat,** it was added. *

4. **iniussū,** *abl. of* **iniussus, -ūs,** *m.* [iubeō, order], without command *or* order. 1

5. **īnsciēns,-entis,** *adj.* [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

---

25. **quod . . . esset factum,** "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc.="as to the . . . engagement which," etc. See **15,** 5-7.

paucīs ante diēbus, lit. "before by a few days"="a few days before." **diēbus** is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb *ante.*

27. **auxiliō Caesarī,** "as an aid to Caesar." For the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Contracted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. **cum certissimae rēs accēderent,** "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following *quod* clauses, which are in apposition with *rēs.* For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. **quod trādūxisset:** kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. **quod . . . cūrāsset,** lit. "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them"="that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." **eōs**=*Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.*

dandōs: construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. **suō**=*Caesaris.*

5. **ipsīs:** i.e. Caesar and the Haedui.

accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō

---

7. **animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,** *tr. and intr.* [**animus,** mind+**ad+vertō,** turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in,** punish. *

8. **repugnō,** 1, *intr.* [**re-+pugnō,** fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2.

9. **studium, -dī,** *n.* [**studeō,** be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. *

10. **ēgregius, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**ē+grex,** herd], *out of the common herd;* excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. 2.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [**iūstus,** just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 2.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [**temperō,** control one's self], prudence, self-control. 1.

11. **supplicium, -cī,** *n.* [**sub+plicō,** bend], *a bending over to receive punishment;* punishment, death. 4.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**ob+fendō,** strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animum offendere,** hurt the feelings, offend. 1.

12. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *

priusquam *or* **prius . . . quam,** *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. *

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person *or* thing. *

13. **vocō,** 1, *tr.* [**vōx,** voice], call, summon; invite. 3.

interpres, -etis, *m.*, *f.*, interpreter; mediator. 1.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**re-+moveō,** move], move back *or* away, remove, withdraw; **remōtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. 4.

14. **Valerius, -rī,** *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yŭs va-lē'rĭ-ŭs trụ-sĭl'ŭs), *a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar.* *

---

6. **causae:** partitive genitive with *satis,* which is used as a noun.

quārē animadverteret, "why he should punish." For mode see App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

8. **ūnum,** "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause *quod cognōverat.*

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on **1,** 3.

10. **cognōverat,** lit. "had learned" = "knew."

11. **nē offenderet,** "that he should offend." Meaning of *nē,* and mode? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e. Dumnorix.

12. **priusquam . . . cōnārētur,** "before he ventured on anything."

13. **per . . . colloquitur:** English order, *colloquitur cum eō per*, etc.

14. **prīncipem:** not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

15. **cui . . . habēbat,** "in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters." **cui:** case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, *a*, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*.

colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset,

---

16. **colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum,** *intr.* [**con-**+**loquor**, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. *

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul . . . simul,** both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque,** as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**moneō**, remind+**faciō**, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. **sēparātim,** *adv.* [**sēparō**, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. **petō, -ere, -īvī** *or* **-iī, -ītum,** *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to *or* toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. *

hortor, 1, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

19. **offēnsiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**offendō**, hurt], offense. 1.

1. **lacrima, -ae,** *f.*, tear. 2.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [**plectō**, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. **obsecrō,** 1, *tr.* [**sacer**, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). *

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. *

5. **adulēscentia, -ae,** *f.* [**adulēs-**

---

16. **quae sint dicta, quae dīxerit:** indirect questions.

ipsō: i.e. Diviciacus.

18. **ut . . . statuat,** "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciacus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

THIRD REFERENCE:
Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. **complexus:** probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. **nē quid:** why *quid?* App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

gravius, "too severe."

scīre: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in *obsecrāre.* The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. **nec quemquam,** "and that no one."

eō: i.e. Dumnorix.

capere, "felt."

4. **ipse:** i.e. Diviciacus. It is the subject of *posset*, to be supplied from the next clause.

domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

5. **minimum posset,** "had very little influence." Supply *cum* from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit

---

cēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1.

6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), swell. 1.

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. 1.

7. minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [**minus,** less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (**contrōversiās**); **minuente aestū,** the tide ebbing. 3.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* [*cf.* **nex,** death], ruin, destruction. 2.

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [**amō,** love], love. 1.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter,** brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exīstimō,** estimate], judgment, opinion. 1.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.

12. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; **verba facere,** plead. 3.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. 4.

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [**dexter,** right; *sc.* **manus**], the right hand. 1.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1.

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.* [**sōlor,** comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.

14. ōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ōs,** mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.

---

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said *per mē*, "by my help."

opibus: ablative with *ūterētur*.

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus.

9. quod sī, lit. "as to which, if": *quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *sī* it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc.

accidisset stands for an original future perfect.

ipse: i.e. Diviciacus.

eum, "such."

10. eum: i.e. Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futūrum (sc. *esse*) **utī . . . āverterentur,** lit. "it would be that . . . would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. **utī āverterentur** is a substantive clause of result.

12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative.

13. rogat (sc. *ut*) **faciat,** "he asked him to make." In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis

---

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnō,** give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.

17. reprehendō,-prehendere,-prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**re-+prehendō** (=**prēndō**), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. 1.

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. 3.

19. vītō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.

praetereō,-īre,-iī,-itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by, omit; **praeteritus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. 1.

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2.

21. loquor,loquī,locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sīdō,** sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, eight. *

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, *or* nature? 2.

---

15. utī condōnet: a result clause.

voluntātī, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of *condōnet.*

17. quae reprehendat: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

20. Dumnorīgī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Use of the indefinite quis
Dative of reference
Construction with verbs of asking, etc.
Indirect question

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.

Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.

1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.

2. mīlia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of *cognōscerent.*

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

---

3. **circuitus, -ūs,** *m.* [**circumeō,** go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4.

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ascendō,** climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2.

5. **praetor, -ōris,** *m.*, praetor; commander. 1.

6. **dux, ducis,** *m.* [**dūcō,** lead], leader, guide, commander. *

7. **ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** *tr. and intr.* [**ad**+**scandō,** climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. **P.,** *abbr. for* **Pūblius,** *a Roman praenomen.* 2.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs kŏn-sĭd'ĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's officers.* 3.

10. **mīlitāris, -e,** *adj.* [**mīles,** soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; **rēs mīlitāris,** military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. *

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **experior,** try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyŭs sŭl'a), *the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from* 138 B.C. *to* 78 B.C. 1.

11. **posteā,** *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mär'kŭs lĭ-sĭn'ĭ-ŭs krăs'ŭs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.* 2.

---

3. **in circuitū,** "in going around [behind] it."

quī cognōscerent mīsit, "he sent (men) to learn."

4. **facilem esse:** sc. *ascēnsum.*

dē tertiā vigiliā: see on **12, 7.**

5. **lēgātum prō praetōre,** "lieutenant with the powers of a general"; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labienus was Caesar's most competent and most trusted officer.

cum iīs ducibus, "with those men as guides."

7. **quid . . . sit,** lit., "what is of his plan"="what his plan was"; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar should attack them at the same moment. **cōnsilī** is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A. M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. **P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat:** Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.

reī mīlitāris, "in military matters": case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1.

10. **Sullae:** cf. Int. 6.

11. **in M. Crassī,** "in (that) of Marcus

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā

---

1. **lūx, lūcis,** *f.*, light, daylight; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak. 3.

3. **captīvus, -ī,** *m.* [**capiō,** take], captive, prisoner. 4.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [**pariō,** procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

4. **equus, -ī,** *m.*, horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). 3.

5. **accurrō, -currere, -currī** *or* **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**ad+currō,** run], run *or* hasten to. 2.

6. **Gallicus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**Gallia,** Gaul], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. **collis, -is,** *m.*, hill. *

8. **subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw; *with* **nāvēs,** haul up, beach. 3.

aciēs, -ēī (*old gen.*, **aciē**), *f.*, sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; **prīma,** the van; **media,** the center; **novissima,** the rear. *

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [**struō,** build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up *in battle array;* equip, furnish. *

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

Crassus." In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

Third Reference:
Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.

1. **summus mōns,** "the top of the mountain." For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. **ipse:** i.e. Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. **ut,** "as."

4. **Labiēnī,** "that of Labienus." See on **21,** 11.

cognitus esset: the force of *cum* still continues.

equō admissō, "at full gallop."

7. **īnsignibus:** the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

8. **aciem īnstruit:** Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut . . . praeceptum, lit. "as it had been directed to him" = "as he had been directed." Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. **eī:** case? App. 116, *c*: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

---

9. **nisi**, *conj.* [ne-+sī, if], if not, except, unless. *

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. *

11. **impetus, -ūs**, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *

12. **abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, *intr.* [**teneō**, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. **timor, -ōris**, *m.* [**timeō**, fear], fear, alarm, dread. *

15. **intervāllum, -ī**, *n.* [**vāllus**, palisade], *the space between two palisades;* interval (*of space or time*); distance. *

1. **postrīdiē**, *adv.* [**posterus**, following+**diēs**, day], on the day following the next day; **postrīdiē eius diēī**, on the next *or* following day. *

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [**bis**, twice+**diēs**, day], space *or* period of two days, two days. 2.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 77], be over *or* above; be left, remain, survive. *

2. **Bibracte, -is**, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brăk'tē), *the chief town of the Haedui.* 2.

---

9. **nē committeret:** a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of *erat praeceptum.*

nisi vīsae essent: mode? App. 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, *b*: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B. 536, *a*: H. 649, I. The pluperfect stands for an original future perfect.

ipsīus=*Caesaris.*

10. **ut fieret:** a purpose clause.

11. **proeliō:** ablative of separation.

12. **multō diē,** "late in the day."

14. **timōre perterritum,** "panic-stricken." This was probably due in part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army.

quod . . . renūntiāvisse, "had reported to him what he had not seen as if seen." **vīsō** is a participle used as a noun.

15. **quō . . . intervāllō**=*eō intervāllō quō sequī cōnsuērat.* For case see App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3. According to **15, 14,** the distance was five or six miles.

Third Reference:
Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the Helvetii in a great battle and forces the survivors to return home.

Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward Bibracte to secure grain, and is followed by the Helvetii.

2. **cum . . . oportēret,** "(before the time) when he would have to distribute grain to the army." See on **16,** 10. The peculiar *cum* clause is best explained by H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun.

oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

---

3. **cōpiōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**cōpia,** plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1.

4. **duodēvīgintī (XVIII),** *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two+**dē,** from+**vīgintī,** twenty], eighteen. 4.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [**speciō,** look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.

6. **fugitīvus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**fugiō,** flee], fleeing; *as noun,* runaway slave. 1.

Aemilius, -lī, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mil′i-ŭs). 1.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**decem,** ten], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten.* 1.

9. **prīdiē,** *adv.* [**diēs,** day], on the day before. 3.

10. **interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut *or* cut off, separate, hinder; *with* **itinera,** block. *

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [**fīdō,** trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfīsus,** *pf. part. with present meaning,* relying on. *

11. **commūtō,** 1, *tr.* [**mūtō,** change], change *or* alter completely, change, exchange. 2.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [**vertō,** turn], turn

---

4. **mīlibus:** ablative of comparison. **reī . . . prōspiciendum,** "that he must look out for supplies." Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. **prōspiciendum:** construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

5. **itaque . . . contendit:** he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *a*: H.-B. 450: H. 418.

8. **exīstimārent, commīsissent, cōnfīderent:** mode? App. 244; 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, *b*: A. 592, 3: B. 286, 1; 323: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, "all the more because." **eō** is an ablative of cause.

9. **quod . . . commīsissent:** the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. **sīve eō,** "or for this reason."

interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. **commūtātō cōnsiliō:** if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium

completely, turn *or* wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere,** face about. *

1. postquam, *conj.* [**post,** afterwards +**quam,** than], **after,** as soon as. 4.

2. sustineō, 2, *tr. and intr.* [**su(b)s**+ **teneō,** hold], hold up from below; hold



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. **24-25,** 10.

a, *Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.*
b, *Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.*
c, *Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle* (**24,** 9).
d, *Roman fortification* (**24,** 8).
e, *The Helvetii.*
f, *The Romans.*

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, "on the rear." See on **1,** 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Accusative of place to which
Implied indirect discourse
Passive periphrastic conjugation

Chap. **24.** Caesar prepares for battle and the Helvetii advance.

1. animadvertit: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. quī . . . sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

---

up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. *

3. medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utrīusque,** a place midway between the two. *

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [**trēs,** three + **plicō,** fold], three-fold, triple. 4.

4. veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vetus,** old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. 1.

5. proximē, *adv.* [**proximus,** last], last; lately. 4.

6. compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [*obsolete*, **pleō,** fill], fill up *or* completely; complete; cover. *

7. sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*of individual soldiers, which they carried*). 3.

8. mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnītus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. *

9. impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**impediō,** hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*). *

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **cōnferciō,** crowd together], dense, thick, compact. 4.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**re-** + **iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* drive back, repel; cast down *or* off; drive off *or* out. 4.

11. phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub** + **cēdō,** go], go *or* come under;

---

3. in colle mediō, "half-way up the hill." For the meaning of the adjective see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

4. legiōnum quattuor veterānārum: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. **7,** 5), and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. **10,** 9).

5. quās . . . cōnscrīpserat: cf. **10,** 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. auxilia: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

collocārī, complērī, cōnferrī, mūnīrī: all depend on *iussit.*

7. sarcinās: see Int. 37.

eum: sc. *locum.*

iīs . . . cōnstiterant: i.e. the two new legions.

8. mūnīrī: the location of the battlefield was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made on one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semicircular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 104. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

9. in ūnum locum: marked *c* on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. phalange: in the phalanx for-

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset,

---

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

1. **prīmum,** *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum prīmum,** *or* **ubi prīmum,** as soon as; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible, very soon. *

deinde, *adv.* [**dē**+**inde,** thence], thereupon, then, next. *

2. **aequō,** 1, *tr.* [**aequus,** equal], make even *or* equal, equalize. 1.

3. **cohortor,** 1, *tr.* [**co**+**hortor,** encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *

4. **pīlum, -ī,** *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**frangō,** break], break *or* burst through. 1.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. **gladius, -dī,** *m.* sword. *

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō,** bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). 1.

6. **pugna, -ae,** *f.* [**pugnō,** fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae,** method of fighting. *

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* (2½×4 *ft.*), *made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim.* *

7. **ictus, -ūs,** *m.*, stroke, blow. 1.

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.*

---

mation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. **suō:** sc. *equō remōtō.*

omnium: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. **aequātō perīculō,** "by making the danger equal."

3. **cohortātus suōs:** Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. **pīlīs:** see Int. 36, *a.*

5. **gladiīs:** see Int. 36, *b.*

Gallīs impedīmentō: for the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

6. **quod . . . poterant** is the subject of *erat.* For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

plūribus . . . colligātīs: remember that the shields overlapped.

7. **cum īnflexisset:** mode? App. 242, *b*: G.-L. 567, n.: A. 542; 518, *c*: B. 288, 3, *a*: H.-B. 540: H. 601, 4.

neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus

[fīgō, fix], thrust *or* pierce through, transfix. 1.

colligō, 1, *tr.* [**con+ligō,** bind], bind *or* fasten together. 1.

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. 1.

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [**flectō,** bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. 2.

8. **ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum,** *tr.* [**vellō,** pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand; **sub sinistrā,** on the left. 4.

commodē, *adv.* [**commodus,** convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; **satis commodē,** to much advantage, very easily. *

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers.*, *as* **pugnātur,** it is fought, i.e. they fight. *

9. **bracchium, -chī,** *n.*, the arm, forearm. 1.

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [**optō,** wish], wish before; prefer. 1.

10. **manus, -ūs,** *f.*, the hand; **in manibus,** near at hand; **manū,** by hand, by art; **ferrea manus,** a grappling-hook; **dare manūs,** yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. *

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. *

tandem, *adj.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as* **quid tandem,** what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. *

11. **dēfessus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **dēfetīscor,** grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [**re-+ferō,** bear. App. 81], bear, carry, *or* bring back, report; **pedem referre,** go back, retreat; **grātiam referre,** show one's gratitude, make a requital. *

subsum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. 2.

12. **eō,** *adv.* [*old dative of* **is**], thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.). *

---

8. **ēvellere:** supply *pīla* as the object.

sinistrā: the shield was held with the left hand.

9. **multī** is put before *ut* for emphasis.

iactātō bracchiō, "after throwing their arms about," in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.

10. **corpore:** case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. **mōns . . . spatiō,** lit. "a mountain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile"="there was a mountain about a mile away." **passuum:** case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. **spatiō:** ablative of degree of difference.

12. **eō:** the adverb.

captō monte, "when they had reached the mountain."

13. **quī . . . claudēbant:** they had formed the van of the Helvetian army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-

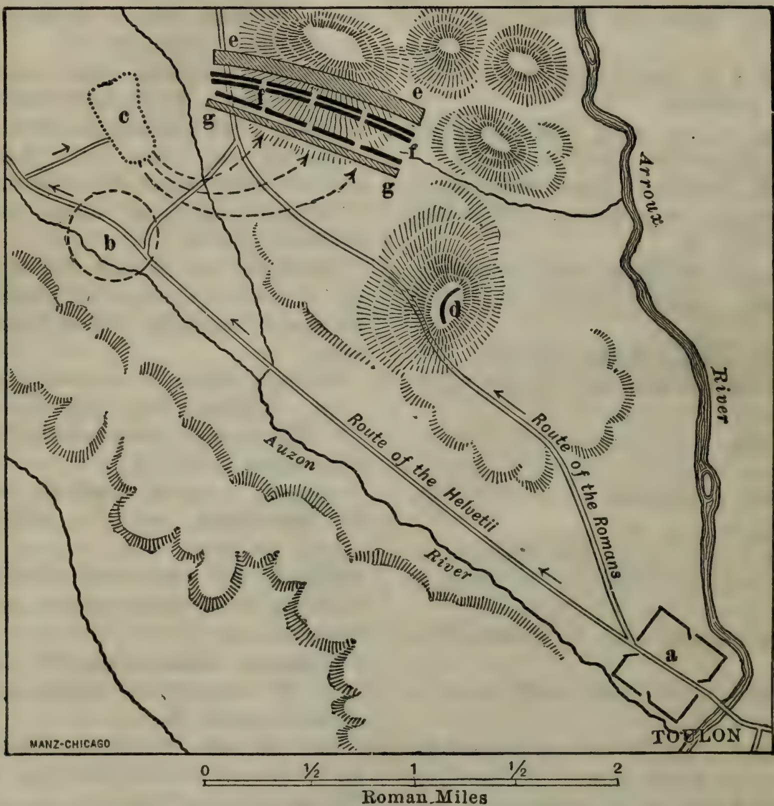
circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre,

14. claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere,** close the line, bring up the rear. 4.

15. latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* *

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **aperiō**], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō,** on the unprotected flank. *

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō,** come], come *or* get



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. **25**, 10, through Chap. **26**.

a, *Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.*
b, *Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.*
c, *Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle* (**24**, 9).
d, *Roman fortification* (**24**, 8).
e, *The Helvetii.*
f, *The Romans.*
g, *The Boii and Tulingi.*

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e. they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and

et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

---

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. **cōnspicor, 1,** *tr.* [**speciō**, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. **rūrsus,** *adv.* [for **reversus,** *from* **revertō**, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [**red-+integrō**, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. **signum, -ī,** *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; **ab signīs discēdere,** withdraw from the ranks; **signa īnferre,** advance to the attack; **signa conversa īnferre,** face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre,** advance *on the march;* direct the attack; **signa convertere,** face *or* wheel about; **ad signa convenīre,** join the army. *

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis**, twice+**partior**, divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum,** *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way *or* desire. *

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō**, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere. -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**re-+sistō**, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. *

1. **anceps, ancipitis,** *adj.* [**ambō**, both+**caput**, head], two headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double. 1.

ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer**, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē** (App. 40). *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (*circumvenīre*) to the more advantageous position. **circumvenīre** depends on *coepērunt*, to be supplied from l. 17.

18. **conversa . . . intulērunt,** lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. **signa:** see Int. 44.

prīma et secunda aciēs; tertia (sc. *aciēs*): in apposition with *Rōmānī.*

19. **victīs ac submōtīs**=*Helvētiīs.* **venientēs**=*Bōiōs et Tulingōs.*

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive
Ablative of manner
Substantive quod clause

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. **ancipitī:** i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. **alterī . . . alterī,** "the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boii and Tulingi]."

3. **ut coeperant:** see 25, 12.

4. **nam:** this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."

hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam

---

5. hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* *

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening; **sub vesperum,** towards evening. 3.

6. nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **media nox,** middle of the night, midnight; **multā nocte,** late at night. *

7. vāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus,** palisade], wall *or* rampart *of earth set with palisades;* entrenchments, earthworks. *

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw against *or* in the way; place in front *or* opposite, present; expose; **obiectus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, lying in the way *or* opposite, in the way. 2.

8. coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together *logically,* conjecture; **in fugam conicere,** put to flight. *

9. raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon *with four wheels.* 2.

matara, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic* javelin. 1.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a javelin *or* dart *used by the Gauls.* 1.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 3.

10. vulnerō, 1, *tr.* [**vulnus,** a wound], wound. *

13. trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj. indecl.* [**trēs,** three], thirty. *

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, "as a rampart."

ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing." The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

mīlia CXXX superfuērunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, *a*: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, *b*: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440: H. 417, 2.

nūllam . . . pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam

---

14. intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [**mittō,** send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. *

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (lĭng′gō-nēz). 4.

15. sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. 1.

16. trīduum, -ī, *n.* [**trēs,** three+**diēs,** day], three days. *

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mora,** a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *

17. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *in pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. *

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. *

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, *b*), *conj.* [**nē+ve,** or], and not, nor. 3.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. 3.

1. inopia, -ae, *f.* [**inops,** needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. *

2. dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō,** surrender], capitulation. *

3. prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up; **sē prōicere,** cast one's self; jump. 4.

suppliciter, *adv.* [**supplex,** suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. pāreō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* **pariō,** bring

---

14. partem: accusative of duration of time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning, the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."

15. cum: causal.

17. nē iuvārent, "(ordering them) not to assist." The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive volitive clause: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

18. iūvissent stands for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

sē . . . habitūrum: i.e. he should treat them as enemies.

19. quō Helvētiōs: sc. *habēret.*

THIRD REFERENCE:
Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.

2. quī cum, "when they."

4. essent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quō nunc estis,* "where you [the Helvetii as a whole, not the envoys] now are."

5. iussisset: supply *Caesar* as the subject.

postquam pervēnit: mode and tense?

Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs

---

forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.

6. **servus, -ī,** *m.*, slave, servant. 1.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.

7. **poscō, poscere, poposcī, ——,** *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. 3.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.

8. **sex (VI),** *card. num. adj., indecl.*, six. *

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vĕr-bĭj'ē-nŭs), *a canton of the Helvetii.* 1.

9. **trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** *tr.* [**trāns+dō,** give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. *

10. **salūs, salūtis,** *f.* [**salvus,** safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). *

11. **dēditicius, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4.

occultō, 1, *tr.* [**occultus,** secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ignārus,** not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. **ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. *

1. **rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum,** *tr.* [**re-+scīscō,** inquire], find out, learn. 1.

App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. **servōs:** fugitive slaves from the Roman army. See **23, 6.**

perfūgissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quī ad vōs perfūgērunt*, "who have fled to you."

7. **dum ea conquīruntur,** "while these were being sought out." For mode and tense, see App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

ea=*obsidēs, arma, servōs.*

9. **timōre nē suppliciō afficerentur,** "by the fear that they would be punished"; lit. "be treated with punishment." For the meaning of *nē*, see App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

perterritī agrees with *mīlia*, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

12. **prīmā:** for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are retaken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. **resciit**=*rescīvit.*

hīs is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit.*

utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs,

---

2. **redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [re-+**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. *

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [**pūrus,** clean+**agō,** do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2.

4. **perfuga, -ae,** *m.* [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.

5. **unde,** *adv.*, from which place, whence. *

6. **frūx, -gis,** *f.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. 1.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. *

7. **famēs, -is,** *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [cf. **tollō,** lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with* **famem,** appease, alleviate. 1.

9. **ratiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**reor,** reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. *

10. **vacō,** 1, *intr.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; lie waste. 4.

11. **bonitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**bonus,** good], goodness; fertility. 1.

---

2. **sī vellent:** implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis*, "if you wish."

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. **in . . . habuit:** i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. **in dēditiōnem accēpit:** this act made them subjects of Rome.

6. **domī:** case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

7. **quō tolerārent:** mode? App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iīs facerent, "to provide them with."

8. **ipsōs:** i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

ipsōs restituere is the object of *iussit*. The object of *iubeō* is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of *imperō* is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in l. 2.

9. **eā maximē ratiōne,** "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the *quod* clause.

13. **prōvinciae Allobrogibusque,** "the province and (especially) the Allo-

quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs,

---

16. **pār, paris,** *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque,** the same as. *

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. *

1. **tabula, -ae,** *f.*, board; tablet; list. 2.

2. **Graecus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun*, the Greeks. 1.

3. **nōminātim,** *adv.* [**nōminō,** name], by name; expressly; in detail. 3.

4. **quot,** *adj.*, *indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. 2.

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā puerīs,** from childhood. *

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *as noun*, old man. 1.

---

broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.

Bōiōs is the object of *collocārent.* It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with *Helvētiōs*, *Tulingōs*, *Latobrīgōs*, in l. 5.

Haeduīs: indirect object of *concessit.*

14. **ēgregiā virtūte,** "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.

ut collocārent is the object of *concessit.* The Boii had had no fixed home, as is shown by **5, 11, 12.** The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.

15. **quibus, quōs:** the antecedent is *Bōiōs.*

16. **parem . . . atque ipsī erant,** lit. "equal . . . as they themselves were (in)"="the same . . . as they themselves enjoyed."

THIRD REFERENCE:
The locative

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. **tabulae,** "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed *stylus.*

litterīs Graecīs: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. **quibus in tabulīs,** "in which."

3. **ratiō,** "an account."

quī exīsset: indirect question.

4. **quī possent:** mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

puerī, senēs, mulierēsque are subjects of *exīssent*, to be supplied from *exīsset.* Note that this use of *-que* is an exception to the statement of the note on **1, 3.**

mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

---

5. **mulier, -eris,** *f.*, woman; wife. *

summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus,** highest], the main thing *or* point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperī,** the chief command. *

caput, capitis, *n.*, the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual, mouth *of a river*); **capitis poena,** capital punishment. *

6. **quattuordecim** (**XIV**), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fourteen. 2.

8. **nōnāgintā,** *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, ninety. 1.

9. **redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *intr.* [**red-** +**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. *

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. 1.

---

5. **summa . . . CCLXIII,** lit. "the total was [i.e. consisted] of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii" = "the total was 263,000 Helvetii, etc."

6. **CCLXIII** = *ducentōrum sexāgintā trium.*

XXXVI = *trīgintā sex.*

7. **XXIII** = *vīgintī trium.*

XXXII = *trīgintā duōrum.*

quī possent: cf. l. 4. Supply *fuērunt;* "there were . . . who could, etc."

8. **ad,** "about," is an adverb in both instances.

fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun *mīlia.*

9. **CCCLXVIII** = *trecenta sexāgintā octō.*

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists. and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.

During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel's identification of it (Guerre de César et d'Arioviste) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

---

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem

---

2. **grātulor,** 1, *intr.* [**grātus,** pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.

3. **tametsī,** *conj.* [**tamen,** however +**etsī,** even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

4. **repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum,** *tr.* [**re-** + **petō,** seek], seek *or* ask again, demand back; *with* **poenās,** exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. **30-36.** At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.

Chap. **30.** Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtīus ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.

2. grātulātum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, *b*: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in **30-54,** it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on **1-29.** It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun *suī* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī, "the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people," refers to the defeat of Cassius, **12,** 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, **n.**: B. 199: 200: H.-B. 344: 351: H. 440. 1. 2.

nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō

---

5. **ūsus, -ūs,** *m.* [**ūtor,** use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est,** there is need; **ūsuī esse** *or* **ex ūsū esse,** be of advantage *or* service; **ūsū venīre,** come by necessity; happen. *

6. **flōrēns, -entis,** *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

8. **domicilium, -lī,** *n.* [**domus,** house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

9. **opportūnus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūctus,** fruit], fruitful, productive. 1.

10. **stīpendiārius, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**stīpendium,** tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. 2.

12. **indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum,** *tr.* [**dīcō,** say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. 1.

13. **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** *and* **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam;** *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; **rēs commūnis,** the common interest. *

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

14. **permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** *tr.* [**mittō,** send], give up *or* over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

---

6. **flōrentissimīs rēbus,** "although they were in a very prosperous condition." The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētiī*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. **utī īnferrent, potīrentur, dēligerent, habērent:** substantive volitive (or purpose) clauses, in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō*.

8. **domiciliō:** dative of purpose.

10. **iūdicāssent,** "they should decide," lit. "they should have decided."

11. **petiērunt utī sibi licēret,** "they requested permission."

concilium: The envoys mentioned in l. 1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. **Caesaris voluntāte:** "with Caesar's consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar's power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.

nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propiereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū

---

16. **sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum,** *tr.* [cf. **sacer,** sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. 2.

5. **labōrō,** 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.

7. **cruciātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**cruciō,** torture; **crux,** cross], torture, torment. *

9. **factiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**faciō,** make], party, faction. 1.

10. **Arvernus, -ī,** *m.* (CDe), an Ar-

---

15. **nē ēnūntiāret** is the object of *sānxērunt.*

nisi (iīs) quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). **mandātum esset** is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

1. **eō conciliō dīmissō:** Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (**30,** 14) that the council was held.

īdem prīncipēs: when they had come to Caesar before (**30,** 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. **dē . . . salūte,** "for their own safety and (that) of all."

agere, "to confer."

4. **Caesarī ad pedēs,** "at Caesar's feet." But *Caesarī* does not depend on *pedēs*, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 188, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 425, 4, n.

5. **nōn minus,** etc., "(saying) that they were no l ss urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

sē: cf. note on *sēsē*, **30,** 3.

quae dīxissent, "which they should say."

7. **sī ēnūntiātum esset,** "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. *ēnūntiātum esset* stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*, *c*: B, 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574, 1.

8. **Galliae:** Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. **factiōnēs:** see Int. 29.

10. **cum contenderent,** "when they had fought." We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, *b*: G.-L. 234: A. 471, *b*: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā

---

vernian; *pl.*, the Arvernī (är-vēr′nī), *possibly* the Arvernians. 3.

tantopere, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great + **opus,** work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns,** powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1.

12. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1.

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. *

prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], at first, in the first place. *

13. posteāquam, *adv.* [**posteā,** afterwards + **quam,** than], after. 4.

14. ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. *

adamō, 1, *tr.* [**amō,** love], love strongly, covet. 1.

15. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

16. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **ut semel,** as soon as. 2.

17. iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum,** again and again. *

19. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

20. hospitium, -tī, *n.* [**hospes,** host *or* guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

---

11. factum esse utī, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamāssent = *adamāvissent.* It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc."

17. pulsōs accēpisse, "as they were beaten, they had suffered."

18. omnem . . āmīsisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war.

20. quī, "although they."

populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs

---

24. **implōrō**, 1, *tr.* [**in** + **plōrō**, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3.

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; *with* **perīculum**, shrink from. *

quōminus, *conj.* [**quō**, so that+**minus**, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

25. **perpetuō**, *adv.* [**perpetuus**, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. 1.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

27. **iūrō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**iūs**, right], take oath; swear. 1.

28. **profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum**, *intr.* [**fugiō**, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 1.

29. **postulō**, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

30. **malus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, **peior, peius**; *n. as noun*, a worse thing; *sup.*, **pessimus**. 1.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [**vincō**, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

31. **Ariovistus, -ī**, *m.*, Ariovistus, (ā″rĭ-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* *

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

34. **dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**, *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go from *or* away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. 3.

---

24. **quōminus essent**: construction? App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 549: A. 558, *b*: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 568, 8.

25. **ūnum sē esse**, "that he was the only one." *sē* is Diviciacus. Cf. note on *sēsē*, 30, 3.

26. **quī potuerit**: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, *b*: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*, *b*: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locutus est*, l. 8. But in *potuerit* we have an instance of *repraesentatio;* i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, *a*: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, *b*, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. **postulātum**: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. **peius accidisse**, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. **tertiam partem**: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. **alterā**, "a second."

34. **paucīs mēnsibus ante**, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." *mēnsibus* is an ablative of degree of difference.

mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare

---

35. **Harūdēs, -um,** *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (ha-rū′dēz), *a German tribe.* 3.

36. **sēdēs, -is,** *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.

39. **cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *

vīctus, -ūs, *m.* [vīvō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.

40. **comparō,** 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.

41. **Magetobriga, -ae,** *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj″ē-tŏb′rĭ-ga), *a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.* 1.

42. **superbē,** *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1.

crūdēliter *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1.

44. **ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. 1.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum** at one's nod *or* command. 2.

45. **īrācundus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [īra, anger], irritable. 1.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.

---

36. **futūrum esse utī omnēs pellerentur,** lit. "it would be that all would be expelled" = "all would be expelled." The direct form was *omnēs pellentur.* As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *pulsum īrī;* but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, *b*: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, *a*: B. 270, 3, *a*: H.-B. 472, *c*: H. 619, 2.

37. **omnēs [ex]:** i.e. all the Gauls.

38. **Gallicum:** sc. *agrum.*

39. **hanc** = *Gallicam.*

vīctūs: note the quantity of *ī*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of *vincō.*

41. **vīcerit:** from this point on to the end of the chapter *repraesentatio* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, l. 26.

proelium: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haedui in an effort to expel Ariovistus.

43. **cuiusque:** the singular forms of *quisque*, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all."

exempla, "punishments."

44. **sī facta sit:** this condition stands for an original *sī facta est.* See note on l. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515· 518, *b*: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. **quid auxilī,** "some help."

populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.

---

48. ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* **[migrō,** migrate], depart, migrate. 1.

50. quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever; whatever; whosoever; whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. *

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

2. flētus, -ūs, *m.* **[fleō,** weep], weeping, lamentation. 1.

4. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.* the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* **[mittō,** send], send, thrust, *or* let down; sink; bow; **sē dēmittere,** come *or* get down, descend; **sē animō dēmittere,** lose courage; **dēmissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, low. 1.

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) *and* **orbis terrārum,** the world. 3.

intueor, 2, *tr.* **[tueor,** look], look at. 1.

5. mīror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder *or* marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.

6. trīstitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. 1.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mān-

---

47. Gallīs: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

48. ut domō ēmigrent, etc., "(namely) leave home, etc.," explains *idem*.

51. nōn (*sē*) **dubitāre quīn sūmat,** "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict." **sūmat:** mode? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

54. dēterrēre nē trādūcātur: for construction see note on *essent*, l. 24.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxilium petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on *mīrātus*.

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum

---

sum, *intr.* [**maneō**, remain], stay through *or* to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

7. **vōx, vōcis,** *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language; *variously translated according to context, as* entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. ✻

8. **exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum,** *tr.* [**premō**, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.

9 **miser, -era, -erum,** *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

10. **occultus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

11. **absēns, -entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum**, be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1.

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. 1.

12. **cōram,** *adv.*, face to face, in person. 1.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. 1.

13. **vērō,** *adv.* [**vērus**, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. ✻

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [**inter**, between], within, inside; into. 4.

2. **cūra, -ae,** *f.*, care, attention. 2.

---

6. **respondēre, permanēre:** historical infinitives.

7. **quaereret:** a pluperfect would seem more natural.

8. **hōc:** ablative of cause.

11. **absentis:** "even when absent."

velut sī adesset: mode and tense? App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307, 1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, *a*: H. 584, 2.

12. **tamen:** "at any rate"; i.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

13. **Sēquanīs:** for case, cf. note on *Gallīs*, **31**, 47.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to undertake their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. **sibi . . . futūram,** "that the matter should receive his attention." For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *a*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

3. **beneficiō suō:** in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles "*rēx*" and "*amīcus*." This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs

---

5. **secundum,** *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

6. **cōgitō,** 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co+agitō,** consider], consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

11. **turpis, -e,** *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

13. **perīculōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**perīculum,** danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 1.

16. **Cimbrī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Cimbri (sĭm′-brī). 4.

Teutonī, -ōrum *or* **Teutonēs, -um,** *m.*, the Teutoni (tū′tō-nī) *or* Teutones (tū′tō-nēz). 4.

---

6. **quārē putāret:** "to think," lit. "why he should think."

sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.

7. **Haeduōs tenērī** is the object of *vidēbat.*

frātrēs appellātōs, "who had been called brothers." See note on **11,** 5.

10. **quod,** "and this"; i.e. the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.

11. **sibi** refers to Caesar, the subject of *arbitrābātur*, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

paulātim, etc., "he saw that for the Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous," etc.

13. **perīculōsum:** see Int. 3.

14. **sibi:** indirect object of *temperātūrōs.* It refers to *hominēs*, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

15. **temperātūrōs quīn exīrent atque contenderent:** construction? App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.

16. **ut,** "as"; for *fēcissent* stands for *fēcērunt* of the direct form.

Cimbrī Teutonīque: see Int. 27.

17. **praesertim cum:** cf. note on **16,** 17.

ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum

---

19. **mātūrē,** *adv.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob+currō,** run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

20. **spīritus, -ūs,** *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

1. **placeō,** 2, *intr.* [cf. **plācō,** appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good *to one, hence,* decide, resolve, determine. 2.

3. **uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *adj.* [**uter,** which *of two*], each *of two*, either *of two;* both. *

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [**colloquor,** talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. *

5. **opus,** *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est,** it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl.* (App. 146.) *

---

18. **Rhodanus dīvideret,** "only the Rhone separates." Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrendum, "that he must face this danger." Since *occurrō* is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Chap. **34.** Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

1. **ad Ariovistum:** he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on **31, 32.**

3. **colloquiō:** dative of purpose.

velle sēsē agere, "(saying) that he wished to confer." Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on **33,** 3).

4. **summīs . . . rēbus,** "matters of the greatest importance to both."

5. **sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse:** the direct form was *sī esset, vēnissem,* "if I wanted anything, I should have gone," a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, *a*: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form *-ūrus fuisse*, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes *-ūrus esse*: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R, 4: A.

ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque

---

7. **praetereā,** *adv.* [**praeter,** beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

8. **possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** *tr.* [**sedeō,** sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. **commeātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**commeō,** go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

mōlīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mōlior,** exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. **mīrus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**mīror,** wonder at], strange, astonishing; **mīrum in modum,** surprisingly. 2.

12. **negōtium, -tī,** *n.* [**neg-+ōtium,** leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare,** employ, direct; **quid negōtī,** what business; **nihil negōtī,** no difficulty. *

2. **mandātum, -ī,** *n.* [**mandō,** command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

quoniam, *conj.* [**quom=cum,** since +**iam,** now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. **cōnsulātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**cōnsul,** consul], consulship. 1.

589, *b*, 1, 2: B. 321, A. 2: H.-B. 581, *b*, 1: H. 647.

ipsī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. The indirect reflexive, *sibi*, would be more usual, but *ipsī* is more emphatic.

6. **sī . . velit,** "if Caesar wanted anything of him," lit. "if Caesar wanted him (for) anything." *Volō* sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, *b*: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, *d*: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. **sī velit** stands for an original *sī vult*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

8. **quās . . . possidēret:** i.e. the land of the Haedui and the Lingones, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. **mīrum:** predicate adjective with *vidērī;* "it seemed strange."

quid Caesarī negōtī esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" ="what business Caesar had"; an indirect question, subject of *vidērī.* **Caesarī** is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. **beneficiō affectus:** cf. note on **33,** 3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the *beneficium* at its true value.

4. **quoniam** (l. 2) **hanc grātiam re-**

Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

---

5. **invītō**, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

6. **gravor**, 1, *intr.* [**gravis**, heavy], be unwilling. 1.

8. **amplē**, *adv.* [**amplus**, large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius**, more, farther. *

9. **reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum**, *tr.* [**red-**+**dō**, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due;* make *or* cause to be, render. *

13. **perpetuus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase* **in perpetuum**, forever. 3.

---

ferret, ut, "since he made this requital, that." The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar's words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case *referret* stands for *refers*, "you make."

6. **neque dīcendum . . . putāret**, "and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn." **sibi**: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

7. **haec esse quae**, "these were (the things) which."

nē trādūceret: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was *nē trādūcat*, "that he shall not bring," a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with *haec*. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be *nōlī trādūcere*, "do not bring," a prohibition: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, *c*: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2: H. 561, 1.

10. **Sēquanīsque . . . licēret**, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haedui]," lit. "permit that it be allowed." **illīs**= *Sēquanīs.*

12. **fēcisset** stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*, *c*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574, 1.

sibi: i.e. Caesar; a dative of possessor.

14. **sī nōn impetrāret**, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances)."

sēsē: the direct form would be *ego*, if expressed at all. It is the subject of *neglēctūrum*, l. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in *sē*, l. 17.

M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus: in 61 B. C. Cf. note on **2**, **2**.

Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam

---

15. **cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum,** *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (**ut** *and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). 1.

16. **commodum, -ī,** *n.* [**commodus**, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

18. **neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** *tr.* [**neg-**+**legō**, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

3. **praescrīptum, -ī,** *n.* [**praescrībō**, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

4. **arbitrium, -rī,** *n.* [**arbiter**, umpire], decision *or* judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 1.

5. **praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum,** *tr.* [**scrībō**, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

8. **congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** *intr.* [**gradior**, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). *

---

15. **senātus cēnsuisset:** this decree of the senate was the only result of the entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. **31**, 28), and no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. **quod . . . posset,** "so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state"; a common formula in decrees of the senate.

18. **neglēctūrum:** tense? App. 205: G.-L. 530: 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. **36.** Ariovistus responds defiantly.

1. **ut imperārent:** a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with *iūs*.

vīcissent, vīcissent, vellent might all have been indicative in the direct form, but would probably be attracted into the subjunctive.

iīs: indirect object of *imperārent*.

3. **ad alterius praescrīptum,** "in accordance with the dictates of anyone else."

4. **ipse:** direct form, *ego*. The reflexive cannot be used to replace a pronoun of the first person (cf. note on *sēsē*, **30**, 3) when a nominative is required, because it has no nominative. Usually no pronoun is used; but if there is emphasis, as here, *ipse* is used.

5. **quem . . . ūterētur,** "how they should exercise their rights."

6. **nōn oportēre sē impedīrī,** "he [Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. **sibi:** dative with the adjective *stīpendiāriōs*.

Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,

---

10 **dēterior, -ius,** *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. 1.

12. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

stīpendium, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. *

quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** as many as + **annus,** year], every year, yearly. 2.

13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; weigh out *money*, pay, pay out; *with* **poenās,** suffer. 2.

14. dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give *or* send notice, declare, threaten. 1.

17. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse,** how? e.g. **quid Germānī possent,** how strong the Germans were. *

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**victus,** conquered], unconquerable, invincible. 1.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **exercitō,** train *or* practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

---

9. quī faceret may be translated by a causal clause, "since he, etc.," but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque . . . neque, "but . . . not . . . or."

11. illātūrum, sī manērent: a vivid future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, lit. "should remain in that which had been agreed upon" = "adhered to the terms which had been agreed upon."

13 fēcissent stands for a future perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, "the name of brothers of the Roman people would be of little value to them."

14. quod, "as to the fact that": App. 248, *a*: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, *a*: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcum, suā: *sēcum* is the indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, *suā* is the direct reflexive, referring to *nēminem.* Cf. notes on **30,** 3 and 6.

16. cum vellet, congrederētur, "let him come on when he liked."

18. inter, "during."

Chap. **37-41.** Caesar marches into the country of Ariovistus, checking a panic on the way.

Chap. **37.** Because of this reply and further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of Ariovistus and the complaints of the Gauls reached Caesar at the same time. It was now about the beginning of August.

et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum triduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ario-

2. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv′ē-rī). *

3. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across *or* over, bring over, convey, transport. *

6. Suēbus,-a,-um, *adj.* of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun,* **Suēbī,** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē′bī), *a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. *

7. Nasua, -ae, *m.* Nasua (năsh′ū-a), *a leader of the Suebi.* 1.

Cimberius, -rī, *m.*, Cimberius (sĭm-bē′rĭ-ŭs), *a leader of the Suebi.* 1.

8. vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with *or* together, connect, unite, bind. *

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. *

2. questum: the supine.

3. Harūdēs: cf. **31**, 35.

4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, *suōs.* would have been more correct, since the Haedui said "our."

obsidibus datīs. "by giving hostages."

5. Trēverī: sc. *veniēbant questum,* followed by indirect discourse.

6. trānsīre: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near modern Mayence. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

9. sī coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

10. minus . . . posset, lit. "it could be less easily resisted (to them)."

11. magnīs itineribus: cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

1. triduī: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but *triduī* = *trium diērum.*

viam: case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A, 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and

vistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contin-

---

2. Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sŏn′shyō), *the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern* Besançon. 2.

5. praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō,** guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.

namque, *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. 3.

7. sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; **sīc . . . ut,** so . . . that; so . . . as. *

9. Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cfg), the (*river*) Dubis (dū′bĭs), *now* the Doubs. 1.

circinus, -ī, *m.* [**circus,** circle], a pair of compasses. 1.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw around. 2.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (*a wall*). 1.

10. sescentī, -ae, -a, (DC), *card. num. adj.* [**sex,** six], six hundred. *

12. rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; *in pl. with* **montis** *or* **collis,** foot, base. 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [**tangō,** touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. 2.

---

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūntiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on **37,** 6.

3. quod agrees in gender with *oppidum,* although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.

4. id: i.e. the capture of Vesontio.

6. summa facultās, "a very great supply."

9. ut, "as if."

paene cingit: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. spatium: object of *continet.*

nōn . . . sescentōrum, "of not more than six hundred feet." **pedum** is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

11. quā flūmen intermittit, "where the river does not flow."

magnā altitūdine: descriptive ablative.

12. rādīcēs is the object of *contingant,* **rīpae** its subject.

gant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc

---

13. **circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,** *tr.* [**dō,** put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ex** + **faciō,** make], make *or* do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. **hūc,** *adv.* [*old form for* **hōc** *from* **hīc**], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nox,** night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diēs,** day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. **percontātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. **ingēns, -entis,** *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus,** great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (**corporum**); violence (**ventī**); severity (**poenae**); **magnitūdō animī,** courage. *

4. **exercitātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**exercitō,** *freq. of* **exerceō,** exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. **praedicō,** 1, *tr.* [**dicō,** proclaim], proclaim publicly *or* before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. **vultus, -ūs,** *m.*, countenance, looks. 2.

7. **subitō,** *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. **mediocriter,** *adv.* [**mediocris,**

---

13. **hunc** (*montem*) is the object of *efficit*, **arcem** is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, *a*: H. 410, 1.

14. **hūc contendit:** he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnīs: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

1. **dum morātur:** mode and tense? App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4. The principal clause of this sentence begins with *tantus*, l. 7.

reī . . . causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. **vōcibus,** "replies."

magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne: descriptive ablatives.

prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī

---

moderate], moderately: **nōn mediocriter,** in no small degree. 1.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque,** minds and hearts; **aliēnātā mente,** bereft of reason. 4.

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

9. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs;* **tribūnus mīlitum,** *or* **mīlitāris,** a military tribune. *

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [**praeficiō,** place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4.

13. pudor, -ōris, *m.* [**pudet,** it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. 2.

14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**re-+maneō,** remain], stay *or* remain behind, remain. *

15. fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

16. tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. 1.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [**fārī,** to speak], fate, lot. 1.

17. miseror, 1, *tr.* [**miser,** wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.

vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus,** the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

18. testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], will. 1.

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō,** mark], seal, sign and seal. 1.

19. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centum,** a hundred], centurion, *the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* *

---

9. tribūnīs: see Int. 41.

10. amīcitiae causā: Caesar puts it delicately. We know from other sources that Caesar had with him young men, friends or relatives of influential men at Rome, who hoped for personal gain from their connection with him in his province. Some of them had little taste for real fighting.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, "one of them alleging one reason, another another."

12. dīceret, "they said," agrees in number with *alius.* Mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, "control their features," so as to look unconcerned.

17. tōtīs castrīs: why is there no preposition? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436, *a*: H. 485, 2.

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. quī ex hīs, "(those) of them who."

sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī

---

21. timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō,** fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. supportō, 1, *tr.* [**sub+portō,** carry], carry *or* bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **dīcō,** say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. 1.

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. *

2. ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line *of soldiers*; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **prīmī ōrdinēs,** centurions of the first rank. *

3. incūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** cause *or* case], bring a case *or* charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

---

22. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambuscades.

24. rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre, lit. "feared the supplies, that they could not" = "feared that the supplies could not." **ut:** translation? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B, 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

26. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for *cum iusseris*, "when you shall have ordered," = "when you order." The clause depends on what follows, not on *nūntiābant*.

fore = *futūrōs esse*.

neque signa lātūrōs, "and would not advance." See Int. 44.

Chap. **40.** Caesar encourages his officers.

1. omnium ōrdinum: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. dūcerentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, "that they ought to inquire or consider." The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*.

5. sē cōnsule: in the preceding year. *sē* and the other reflexives through l. 9

amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidē-

6. **appetō, -petere, -petīvī (-petiī), -ītum,** *tr. and intr.* (**ad+petō,** seek), seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

officium, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre,** *or* **permanēre in officiō,** to remain faithful. *

8. **postulātum, -ī,** *n.* [**postulō,** demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [**aequus,** equal], equality; fairness, equity; **animī aequitās,** contentment. 1.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [*tr.* **speciō,** look], look *or* see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. **repudiō,** 1, *tr.*, reject. 1.

10. **furor, -ōris,** *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in+pellō,** drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. **dīligentia, -ae,** *f.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. **C.,** *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā'yūs). *

Marius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'rĭ-ŭs), *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni.* 1.

14. **laus, laudis,** *f.*, praise, com-

are indirect reflexives: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. **cūr iūdicāret:** the direct form was *cūr iūdicet*, "why should anyone suppose?": App. 210, *a*; 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in **14,** 8.

7. **sibi . . . persuādērī,** "in fact he was convinced": App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. **quod sī intulisset,** "but if he should make": App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574.

11. **verērentur, dēspērārent:** cf. note on l. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsīus: i.e. Caesar's; *suā* could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in **36,** 4.

12. **perīculum,** "a test."

13. **Cimbrīs et Teutonīs:** cf. Int. 27.

Mariō: cf. Int. 5.

14. **vidēbātur:** no satisfactory explanation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs

---

mendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō,** command], commander-in-chief, general. ✱

15. **servīlis, -e,** *adj.* [**servus,** a slave], of *or* like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [**tumeō,** swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

16. **disciplīna, -ae,** *f.* [**discō,** learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.

ego, meī (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* **nōs,** we, us, etc. ✱

18. **cōnstantia, -ae,** *f.* [**cōnstō,** stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [**aliquis,** some + **diū,** long], for some time. 1.

inermis, -e, *adj.* [**in-** + **arma,** arms] without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. 3.

19. **armō, 1,** *tr.* [**arma,** arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; **armātus,** *pf. part., as adj.*, armed; **armātī,** *as noun*, armed men. ✱

22. **plērumque,** *adv.* [**plērusque,** the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. ✱

25. **diūturnitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**diūturnus,** long], long duration. 2.

dēfatīgō, 1, *tr.* [**fatīgō,** weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. 1.

---

15. **factum:** sc. *esse perīculum.*

servīlī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servīlī*, which is equivalent to *servōrum.*

17. **quantum bonī,** "how great an advantage."

18. **inermēs:** a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes; yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. **quibuscum Helvētiī congressī superārint,** lit. "with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered" = "whom the Helvetii had met and conquered." **superārint:** tense? App. 270, *a*: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, *b*, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. **quī:** the antecedent is *Helvētiī.* The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. **proelium:** the battle at Magetobriga; see **31,** 41.

24. **commovēret:** the direct form was *commovet*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam;

---

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

27. dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**spergō**, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

29. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **perītus,** experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

31. simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō,** make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

32. arrogantor, *adv.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.

34. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū′sī). 1.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [**ministrō,** wait upon], furnish, supply, give.

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; **brevī**, in a short time. *

38. male, *adv.* [**malus,** bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, **peius**; *sup.*, **pessimē.** 1.

39. dēsum, deesse, dēfuī,——, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

facinus, -noris, *n.* [**faciō,** do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

---

26. suī potestātem, "a chance at him."

27. dēspērantēs, dispersōs agree with an implied *eōs* which is the object of *adortum* and refers to the Gauls.

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, "not even (Ariovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem."

31. reī . . . simulātiōnem, "a pretense about the supplies." **reī** is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, "to lack confidence in the general's attention to his duties."

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. quod . . . dīcantur, "as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance." **quod:** translation? App. 248, *a*: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, *a*: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, lit. "that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient, (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved." This must be turned into English.



Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54

suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde

---

avāritia, -ae, *f.* [**avārus,** greedy], greed, covetousness. 1.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [**vincō,** conquer], *conquer completely;* prove. 1.

40. innocentia, -ae, *f.* [**innocēns,** innocent], integrity. 1.

fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1.

41. longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. ∗

42. repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+praesēns,** present], make present; do at once. 1.

43. utrum, *conj.* [**uter,** which *of two*], whether; **utrum . . . an,** whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne,** whether . . . or not. 3.

44. an, *conj.*, *used to introduce the second member of alternative questions*, or, or rather. ∗

45. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], tenth. ∗

46. praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**praetor,** commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. ∗

47. indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī,——, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. 1.

praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially, particularly. 1.

1. modus, -ī, *m.* measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modī,** of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō,** *with gen.*, in the character of, like. ∗

2. alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [**alacer,** lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

---

40. innocentiam, "fair dealing," not "innocence"; opposed to *avāritiam.* What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vītā, "throughout his life."

41. quod . . . repraesentātūrum, "he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc."

43. utrum . . . valēret: an indirect double question: App. 214; 264, *c*: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

46. praetōriam cohortem, "his body-guard," which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. **41.** The panic is checked and the army advances.

4. grātiās ēgit, "expressed its thanks."

reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū, locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī

---

8. **umquam,** *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never, never. 2.

9. **satisfactiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**satisfaciō,** give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1.

10. **exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum,** *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

11. **quīnquāgintā (L),** *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. 3.

---

6. **cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī,** "arranged with the tribunes that" or "begged the tribunes to."

8. **neque dē . . . exīstimāvisse,** "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

10. **itinere . . . Dīviciācum ut . . . dūceret,** "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . , in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallīs, "of (all) the Gauls."

11. **eī:** case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, *a*, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*.

mīlium quīnquāgintā is a descriptive genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

12. **circuitū:** he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

13. **ut dīxerat:** cf. **40**, 42.

septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on **37**, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strasburg.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. **42-47.** Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. **42.** Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. **postulāsset:** sc. *Caesar*.

id . . . licēre, "that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned." **Id** is the antecedent of *quod*.

licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus

---

3. propius, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope**, near], nearer.

4. respuō, -spuere, -spuī,——, *tr.* reject, spurn. 1.

5. sānitās,-tātis, *f.* [**sānus**, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, **discretion**, sanity. 1.

6. dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [**negō**, deny], refuse.

ultrō, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *

8. pertinācia, -ae, *f.* [**pertineō**, hold through *or* fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.

10. citrō, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. 1.

11. pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs**, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

14. interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō**, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge. 4.

15. commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**modus**, measure], *in full measure*; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

---

3. accessisset: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see **34**, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.

6. petentī, "when he [Caesar] asked it."

8. fore utī dēsisteret, lit. "that it would be that he would give up" = "that he would give up." The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar's part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on **31**, 36, and App, 205, *b*: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, *a*: B. 270, 3, *a*: H.-B. 472, *c*: H. 619, 2.

13. venīret: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

aliā ratiōne, "on any other terms."

15. salūtem . . . audēbat: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.

16. Gallīs equitibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, *d*: H.-B 371: H. 427.

dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs vexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō

---

17. **dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum,** *tr.* **[trahō,** draw], draw off *or* away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[legiō,** legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

18. **impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** *tr.* **[in+pōnō,** place], place upon, set on, put *or* impose on; mount. 4.

20. **irrīdiculē,** *adv.* **[in-+rīdiculus,** witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.

23. **rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum,** *tr.* **[re-+scrībō,** write], write again; transfer. 1.

1. **plānitiēs, -ēī,** *f.* **[plānus,** level], level ground, plain. 4.

tumulus, -ī, *m.* **[tumeō,** swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[terra,** earth], of earth. 1.

2. **grandis, -e,** *adj.*, great, large, bulky. 1.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; **aequus animus,** equanimity, composure. 3

4. **vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum,** *tr.*, carry; bring along. 1.

---

17. **eō,** the adverb, =*in eōs.*

19. **sī . . . esset,** lit. "if there should at all be need of something done" = "if there should be any need of their services." **quid:** case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. **factō:** construction? App. 146, *b*: G.-L. 406: A. 411, *a*: B. 218, 2, *c*: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. **esset:** implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought *sī erit*, "if there shall be."

20. **nōn irrīdiculē,** "wittily."

21. **pollicitum . . . rescrībere:** the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of *ad equum rescrībere*, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalry man" or "knight."

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

1. **erat,** "there was." The hill was about twelve miles north of the battle-field, and has been identified with considerable certainty.

2. **spatium:** accusative of extent of space.

3. **ut erat dictum,** "as had been agreed."

4. **equīs,** "on horseback."

passibus, intervāllō: ablatives of degree of difference with *ab*, "away from."

cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse

---

6. **dēnī, -ae, -a,** *distr. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.

9. **mūnus, -eris,** *n.*, duty, service, task; present. 1.

11. **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum,** *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

12. **aditus, -ūs,** *m.* [**adeō,** go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with* **fūnera,** appropriate. 4.

13. **praemium, -mī,** *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. *

14. **necessitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**necesse,** cf. **necessārius,** friend], friendship, alliance. 1.

15. **cōnsultum, -ī,** *n.* [**cōnsulō,** take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. 1.

quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot,** how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. 1.

16. **honōrificus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**honōs,** honor+**faciō,** make], conferring honor. 1.

---

5. **cōnstitērunt:** distinguish carefully between *cōnsistō* and *cōnstituō*.

6. **ex equīs,** "on horseback." Cf. 1. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.

9. **quod amīcus:** sc. *appellātus esset.* Cf. note on **33,** 3.

10. **missa:** sc. *essent.* The three *quod* clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *beneficia*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

12. **aditum:** i.e. to the senate.

14. **ipsīs . . . intercēderent,** "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haedui." **intercēderent:** subjunctive in an indirect question.

16. **in eōs,** "in their behalf."

ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.

17. **Galliae:** i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in **31,** 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *priusquam.* The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē

---

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [**perdō**, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dignus**, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **augeō**, increase], increased, advanced, 1.

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad+ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring, take *or* carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

25. remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**re-+mittō**, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; **remissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

---

19. ut vellet, "to wish"; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc consuētūdinem.*

suī, "of their own"; the neuter of *suus*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, "but rather to be advanced."

grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.

21. iīs: for case, cf. note on **42,** 16.

22. quis posset: the direct form was *quis possit*, "who would be able?" and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in chap. **35.**

24. īnferret, etc.: subjunctives of command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē īnferret?* App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, *c*: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2: H. 561, 1.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessītum: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.

ā Gallīs: cf. **31,** 11.

5. ab ipsīs: sc. *Gallīs.*

6. iūre: ablative of accordance.

7. cōnsuērint: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to *repraesentatio.*

oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam

---

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. *

12. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+aequus,** even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

13. ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ōrnō,** adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1.

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**de+terō,** rub, *or* wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. 1.

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* carry off *from beneath;* take away, withdraw. 1.

libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

19. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [**in+pugnō,** fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

20. testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. 1.

---

9. oppugnandum: gerund or gerundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506, n. 2: B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628, footnote 2.

castra habuisse, "had encamped."

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at Magetobriga: cf. **31,** 41.

13. amīcitiam sibi ōrnāmentō esse oportēre, lit. "that it was right for the friendship to be to him for an honor." Make English of this.

15. petīsse: sc. *eam,* referring to *amīcitiam,* as the object. The king admits that he had sued for the honor.

sī remittātur: a vivid future condition.

17. quam, "than."

quod, "as to the fact that."

21. prius quam populum Rōmānum: *prius quam = priusquam,* a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be *priusquam populus Rōmānus vēnerit.* The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.

24. quid sibi vellet, lit. "what did he wish for himself?" an idiomatic expression for "what did he mean?" For mode, see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit,

---

25. sīcut *or* **sīcutī,** *adv.* [**sīc,** so+**ut-(ī),** as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.

27. interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. 1.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contendō,** strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [**suspiciō,** suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis,** like], make like; pretend. 2.

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob+premō,** press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

35. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō,** keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; **ē regiōne,** *with gen.*, opposite. *

---

25. hanc Galliam, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province.

ut . . . oportēret, "just as there ought to be no yielding to him." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably **oporteat, sī faciam,** lit. "it would be right if I should make." This is a less vivid future condition: App. 257: G.-L. 596: A. 516, 2, *b*: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. quod dīceret, "as to the fact that he said," or "as to his statement."

29. imperītum rērum, "ignorant of political matters."

30. bellō Allobrogum: cf. note on 6, 7.

Haeduōs . . . ūsōs esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haedui and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

31. ipsōs=*Haeduōs*.

32. dēbēre sē suspicārī, "he had a right to suspect."

33. simulātā amīcitiā, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Ariovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."

35. sēsē . . . amīcō habitūrum, "he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend."

multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō

---

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.

40. līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.

41. remūneror, 1, *tr.* [re-+**mūneror,** present], repay, reward. 1.

42. labor,-ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

1. sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō,** think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

3. bene, *adv.* [**bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, **melius;** *sup.*, **optimē.** 2.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [**serō,** entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

4. potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis,** able], rather. 2.

5. Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (ru̧-tē′nī). *

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus,** Quintus (kwĭn′-tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Fabius, -bī, *m.* Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwĭn′ tŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs măk′sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls,* 121 B. C. 1.

---

37. multīs . . . factūrum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habēre differs very slightly from *id comperīsse*, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained"; App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiam, quārē, lit. "to this effect, why" = "to show why." **quārē posset** is an indirect question.

3. patī utī dēsereret, "allowed him to abandon." *patior* is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an *ut* clause.

4. Ariovistī, populī Rōmānī: predicative genitives of possession.

5. superātōs esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (**44,** 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteā-

---

6. **Maximus, -ī,** *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quĭn′tŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs măk′sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls*, 121 B. C. 1.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [**in-**+(**g**) **nōscēns,** knowing: **nōscō**], forgive, pardon. 3.

7. **redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum,** *tr.* [**red-**+**agō,** put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

10. **observō,** 1, *tr.* [**servō,** give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.

3. **adequitō,** 1, *intr.* [**equitō,** ride; **equus,** horse], ride up. 1.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. *

5. **etsī,** *conj.* [**et**+**sī,** if], even if, although. *

---

6. **neque . . . redēgisset:** the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative, *quibus;* but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs; quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset.* The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. **antīquissimum quodque tempus,** lit. "each most ancient time"= "priority of time."

11. **lēgibus:** ablative with *ūtī.*

voluisset: sc. *senātus* as the subject.

Chap. **46.** An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.

1. **geruntur:** mode and tense? App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

2. **tumulum:** case? App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 420, 5.

5. **quod:** the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. **legiōnis dēlēctae,** "to his picked legion"; the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."

7. **committendum ut dīcī posset,** lit. "that it ought to be permitted that it could be said"="that he ought to permit it to be said."

pulsīs hostibus, "after the defeat of the enemy."

8. **per fidem,** "because of their confidence (in Caesar's honor)." This is equivalent to saying "treacherously."

quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī

---

10. interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *intr.* [**dīcō,** say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque ignī interdīcere,** *forbid the use of fire and water*, banish. 1.

11. dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** take], take apart, interrupt, break off. 1.

13. iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw into *or* upon; put *or* place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. Procillus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius

---

9. quā arrogantiā ūsus, "using what arrogance" = "with what arrogance. It is often well to translate *ūsus* in this way.

10. omnī . . . interdīxisset, "had forbidden the Romans all Gaul." **Galliā** is an ablative of separation. **Rōmānīs** is the indirect object.

11. ut, "how," introduces both *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset.* It would more naturally precede *impetum.*

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. bīduō post, "on the following day." The literal meaning is "afterwards by two days," but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. quae agī coeptae essent, "which had begun to be discussed," or better, "which they had begun to discuss." The passive forms of *coepī* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

3. utī cōnstitueret: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. lēgātīs, "legates," not "envoys." Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. colloquendī . . . est, "Caesar saw no occasion for a conference."

prīdiē eius diēī is only a fuller expression for *prīdiē*, and has the same meaning.

6. retinērī quīn conicerent, "be kept from casting." For construction see App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.

8. commodissimum vīsum est, "it seemed best." The subject is *mittere,* l. 15.

fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Procillus (gā′yus va̦-lē′rĭ-us prō-sĭl′us), *a Gaul.* 2.

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā′yŭs va̦-lē′rĭ-ŭs ka̦-bū′rŭs), *a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus.* 1.

10. adulēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of* **adolēscō,** grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā′yus va̦-lē′rĭ-us flăk′ ŭs), *Governor of Gaul,* 83 B. C. 1.

dōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnum,** gift], give, present; endow with. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciō,** know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus,** long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.

14. Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mär′kŭs mē′shyŭs). 2.

17. cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [**clāmō,** cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculor, 1, *intr.* [cf. **speciō,** look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter. 3.

---

11. cīvitāte dōnātus erat, "had been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (l. 12) **. . . et** (l. 13), "both . . . and . . . and."

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, "which Ariovistus spoke fluently."

13. in eō, "in his case."

14. Germānīs: dative of possessor.

esset: implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: "because (as he thought) the Germans had."

ūnā, "with him."

15. hospitiō, "guest-friendship." This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospitality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. A similar relationship might exist between a man and a state, or between two states. The obligation was peculiarly binding and sacred.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is not to be translated. The full thought is something like "is it for anything else, or, etc." By such an ellipsis of the first alternative *an* not infrequently introduces a simple question, though its proper place is in the second alternative of a double question.

cōnantēs, "while they were attempting."

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae

---

1. **prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** *tr.* [**moveō**, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

4. **ultrā,** *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. 2.

6. **continuus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**contineō,** hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

7. **prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with* **cōpiās,** arrange, draw up. *

10. **genus, -eris,** *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

Chap. **48-54.** After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle and destroys the German host.

Chap. **48.** Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.

1. **mīlibus:** ablative of measure of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. **sub monte:** at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

postrīdiē eius diēī = *postrīdiē.* Cf. note on **47**, 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 153. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

5. **supportārētur:** mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

interclūderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. **prō castrīs:** this was the favorite position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. **aciem . . . habuit,** "kept his line drawn up."

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although *nē* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn.* Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb, *nōn deesset,* lit. "might not be lacking" = "might be offered him."

8. **vellet:** implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar's mind was *sī vult,* "if he wishes."

9. **castrīs,** "in camp." Why not *in castrīs?* App. 151, *c*: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. **proeliō:** cf. references on *castrīs,* l. 9.

genus . . . exercuerant, "the kind . . . was as follows."

quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī

---

11. exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1.

12. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. 1.

14. versō. 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

15. dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

16. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī,——, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall from *or* off. 1.

circumsistō -sistere, -stitī,——, *tr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand, flock *or* rally around, surround, hem in. *

quō, *adv.* [*old dat. case form of* **quī,** who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō+eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. 2.

18. celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**celer,** swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō,** run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

19. adaequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequō,** make equal], make level with *or* equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

---

12. numerō: ablative of specification, with *totidem.*

13. singulī singulōs dēlēgerant, lit. "individuals had chosen individuals" = "had chosen, each for himself."

14. versābantur, etc.: tense? App. 191, *a*: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

hī . . . concurrēbant, "if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid."

15. quī: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual *quis.*

16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun *quis*, is used as an indefinite after *sī, nisi, nē,* and *num.*

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.

1. eum = *Ariovistum.*

nē . . . prohibērētur: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

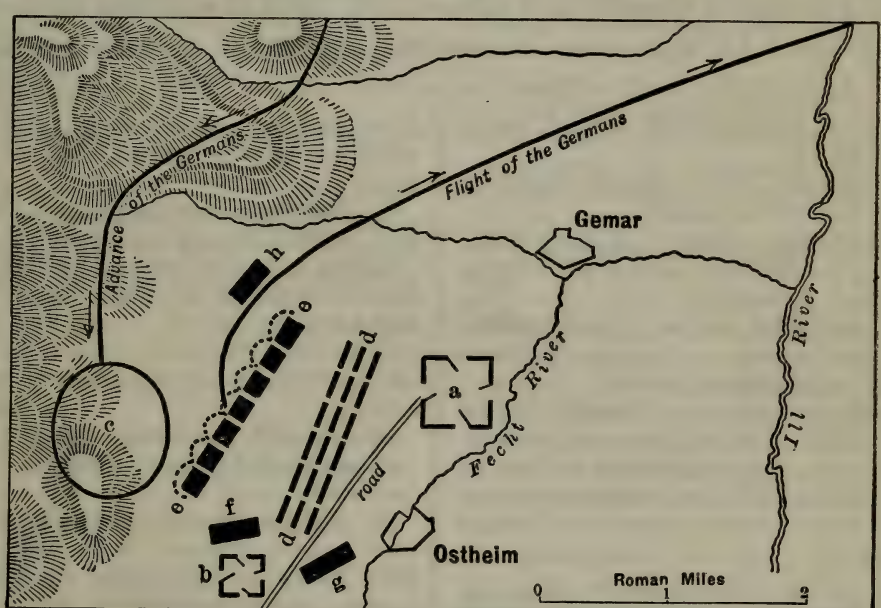
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus

---

3. idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

9. sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

10. prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **prō-**



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

a, *Large Roman camp.*
b, *Small Roman camp.*
c, *Camp of the Germans.*
d, *The Roman legions.*
e, *The German infantry.*
f, *The Roman auxiliaries.*
g, *The Roman cavalry.*
h, *The German cavalry.*

3. castrīs: dative with the adjective *idōneum.*

4. aciē triplicī: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. in armīs: to repel the expected attack.

7. hominum . . . expedīta, lit. "sixteen light-armed thousands of men" = "sixteen thousand light-armed infantry."

perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae

---

pellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. 1.

2. **paulum,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

4. **merīdiēs, -ēī,** *m.*, [*for* **medīdiēs,** *from* **medius,** middle+**diēs,** day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.

7. **utrimque,** *adv.* [**uterque,** each *of two*], on each side, on both sides. 2.

usque, *adv.* (1) *of place*, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with* **ad,** until. 3.

---

12. **reliquās:** sc. *legiōnēs.*

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. **īnstitūtō:** ablative of accordance.

2. **paulum . . . prōgressus:** Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see **48,** 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.

7. **utrimque pugnātum est,** "both sides fought."

9. **quam ob rem,** "why," is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. **proeliō:** see note on *castrīs,* **48,** 9.

dēcertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.

11. **quod ea cōnsuētūdō esset,** "that there was this custom," is a substantive *quod* clause in apposition with *hanc causam.* The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut dēclārārent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with *ea cōnsuētūdō.*

mātrēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (*sortibus,* l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt

---

12. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting *or* drawing of lots. 3.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. 1.

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [**clārus,** clear], make plain, declare. 1.

13. necne, *conj.* [**nec,** nor + **-ne**], or not. 1.

-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213, *a*); *in indirect questions,* whether; **-ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,** whether . . . or. 2.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. 1.

14. lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2.

2. ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla,** wing], on the wing; *pl. as noun,* auxiliaries. 2.

5. speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**speciō,** see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

7. generātim, *adv.* [**genus,** tribe], by tribes. 1.

---

12. utrum . . . necne: construction? App. 214; 264, *c*: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, *a*: H.-B. 234, *a*: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. sī contendissent, "if they should fight." *contendissent* stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. quod . . . vīsum est, "(a garrison) which seemed to be sufficient."

ālāriōs: the word got the meaning "auxiliaries" from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multitūdine: ablative of specification.

4. prō, "in comparison with."

6. necessāriō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack up-hill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. generātim, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. *They* are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—*they* are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food

paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem

---

8. **Marcomannī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Bi), the Marcomanni (mär″kō-măn′ī). 1.

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb′ō-sī). 2.

Vangionēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (văn-jī′ō-nēz). 1.

9. **Nemetēs, -um,** *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nĕm′ē-tēz). 1.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū′shyī). 1.

12. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum,** *tr.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend; **passīs capillīs,** with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. 2.

1. **quaestor, -ōris,** *m.* [**quaerō,** seek], a quaestor (kwĕs′tôr), *one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army.* 3.

3. **dexter, -tra, -trum,** *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. *

5. **repente,** *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

6. **prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush forward, rush out, charge. 1.

7. **comminus,** *adv.* [**manus,** hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1.

9. **excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** *tr. and intr.* [**capiō,** take], *tr.*, take up,

---

and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. **intervāllīs:** ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. **circumdedērunt:** i.e. on the rear and both flanks.

11. **eō,** "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought.

1. **singulīs . . . praefēcit:** i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.

3. **eam partem:** i.e. the enemy's left wing.

5. **signō datō:** by trumpeters.

itaque = *et ita.*

6. **pīla . . . coniciendī:** on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. **rēiectīs,** "throwing aside." The *pīla* were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. **phalange:** on this formation see 24, 11, note.

9. **in phalangem insilīrent:** i.e.

īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi

---

catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. *

10. īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, *tr.* [**saliō**, leap], leap upon. 1.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**re-+vellō**, pluck], pluck *or* tear away, pull out. 1.

dēsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], from above. 1.

13. premō, -premere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.* Publius Licinius Crassus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs lĭ-sĭn′ĭ-ŭs krăs′ŭs) *one of Caesar's lieutenants*, a son of the triumvir. *

16. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [**subsideō**, sit near *or* in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

1. tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** to flee; **post tergum** *or* **ab tergō,** in the rear. *

2. vertō, vertere vertī versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; **terga vertere,** flee. *

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *tr. and intr.* [**fuga,** flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

---

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, **25**, 3-10. **īnsilīrent:** subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

11. cum, "though."

ā sinistrō cornū, "on the left wing," which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expedītior, "freer to act." Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan, p. 153), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

15. tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, "to the assistance of our hard-pressed men."

Chap. **53.** The Germans are routed. Caesar's envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (**51**, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill river is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.

perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte

---

4. trānō, 1, *intr.* [**trāns**+**nō**, swim], swim across. 1.

5. inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō**, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

6. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **nāvis**, ship], small boat, skiff. 1.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō**, bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

8. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor**, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

9. Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vŏk′-shyō), *a king of Noricum.* 1.

10. pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], be destroyed *or* killed, perish. 2.

12. trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1.

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.*, bind. 1.

13. trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. 1.

14. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō**, fall], fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

15. voluptās, -tātis, *f.* [**volō**, wish], *what one wishes;* pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs**, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 1.

16. hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.

---

4. vīribus: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. Ariovistus: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. eā, "in this," is an ablative of means.

reliquōs omnēs: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

7. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.

10. dūxerat: "had married"; while *dūxerat* in l. 9 means "had brought."

12. Procillus: cf. 47, 9.

13. īnsequentem, "who was following."

17. neque . . . dēminuerat, "nor had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,

dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

---

18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**grātulor,** express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.

19. ter, *num. adv.* [cf. **trēs,** three], three times. 1.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.

20. statim, *adv.* [**stō,** stand], *as one stands, hence,* forthwith, immediately, at once. *

necō, 1. *tr.* [**nex,** death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+servō,** save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

21. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

2. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū′bĭ-ī). *

4. aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

5. paulō, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before *or* over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.

---

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing"; lit. "lessened anything of," *quicquam* being the direct object.

19. sē praesente, "in his presence."

cōnsultum: sc. *esse.*

20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, *b*: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.

1. quī . . . vēnerant: cf. **37,** 5.

3. Rhēnum: case? App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 435, 2.

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Vesontio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, "to hold the provincial courts." This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there.

BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost

heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **I, 30-54**, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebates, and the Atuatuci are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in **III, 28** we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. **34** are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book III make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatuci is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Göler (Caesars Gallischer Krieg, pp, 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.



Campaign Map for Book II

LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur,

---

1. suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. ✻

2. crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp.* **crēbrior;** *sup.*, **crēberrimus** (App. 40). 4.

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. 2.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [ad+ferō, carry. App 81], bring, take *or* carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

4. coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [iūrō, swear], swear *or* take an oath together, league together, conspire. ✻

7. sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. 2.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. Labiēnī: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fīēbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dīxerāmus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." *quam* refers to *Belgās*, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The pluperfect *dīxerāmus* is occasionally used in such statements instead of the more common perfect.

4. coniūrāre, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. quod verērentur: a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omnī . . . Galliā, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." *Galliā* here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

---

8. **partim**, *adv.* [*acc.* of **pars**, part], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. 4.

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

9. **inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī,-veterātum,** *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1.

10. **molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre,** be annoyed. 1.

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**mōbilis**, movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [**levis**, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. **vulgō**, *adv.* [**vulgus**, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

---

8. **partim quī**, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

10. **partim quī**, "others of whom."

mōbilitāte et levitāte: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. **ab nōn nūllīs** (*sollicitārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18).

12. **ad . . . hominēs**, "for employing mercenaries."

13. **quī . . . poterant**: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.

14. **imperiō nostrō**: case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

---

*1. **esset**: mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. **litterīs**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. **Labiēnī**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Belgās: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. **coniūrāre**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

obsidēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. **verērentur**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 531, 2, I: H. 643.

Galliā: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, *d*: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. **addūcerētur**: mode? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

Gallīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. **populī**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. **mōbilitāte**: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. **imperiīs**: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*b*): H. 426, 1.

13. **occupābantur**: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 539 A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

---

* These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum

---

2. ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; **inīre cōnsilium,** form; **inīre ratiōnem,** make an estimate, decide; **inīre grātiam,** gain; **inīre numerum,** enumerate. *

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

3. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead down *or* away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus,** Quintus (kwĭn'-tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwĭn'-tŭs pē'dĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* 2.

4. incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], undertake; begin, commence. 1.

5. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [**neg-** + **ōtium,** leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare,** employ, direct; **quid negōtī,** what business; **nihil negōtī,** no difficulty. *

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sĕn'ō-nēz). 1.

7. cōnstanter, *adv.* [**cōnstō,** stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2.

8. vērō, *adv.* [**vērus,** true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

Chap. **2-4.** Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. **2.** Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duās legiōnēs: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. initā aestāte, "after the beginning of warm weather." *Aestās* included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

3. quī (*eās*) **dēdūceret,** "to take them."

cum prīmum: in June. *Cum prīmum* usually takes the indicative.

6. gerantur: Caesar said *ea quae geruntur cognōscite,* "find out what is being done." *gerantur* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, *a*: H. 649, 1.

7. manūs cōgī, "that armed bands were gathering."

8. dubitandum (*sibi esse*) **quīn proficīscerētur,** lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out," = "that he should hesitate to set out." When *dubitō* means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3. A. 558, *a*, n. 2:

---

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī

---

1. **imprōvīsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**in-** + **prōvīsus,** foreseen; **prōvideō**], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvīsō,** unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [**opīnor,** think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris,** impression of cowardice. *

2. **Rēmus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, belonging to *or* one of the Remi; *pl. as noun,* **Rēmī,** *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rē'mī). *

3. **Iccius, -cī,** *m.*, Iccius (ĭk'shyŭs), *a chief of the Remi.* 3.

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (ăn″dē-brō'jyŭs). 1.

B. 298, *b*: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. ad fīnēs: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. eō: the adverb.

omnium opīniōne, lit. "than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected."

2. Rēmī: a Belgian state, of apparently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgīs, "the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul"; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgīs: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. quī dīcerent: purpose. The rest

---

1. legiōnēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. aestāte: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. dēdūceret: mode? App. 225, *a*, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

lēgātum: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. pābulī: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

inciperet: mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. Senonibus: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

Belgīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*a*): H. 434, 2.

6. cognōscant: mode? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. certiōrem: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. cōgī: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. diēbus: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. Belgārum: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

---

5. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], give up *or* over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

6. cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō**, feel], *think together;* agree, combine. 2.

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [**imperō**, command], command, order. 2.

8. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

9. cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 2.

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join with *or* together, connect, unite, bind. *

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

11. Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swĕs″ĭ-ō′nēz). *

---

of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

4. sē is the object of *permittere.* Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.

5. neque . . . neque . . . que, "(and) not . . . and not . . . and."

7. esse: infinitive in indirect discourse. *dare, facere, recipere,* and *iuvāre* depend on *parātōs.*

9. cis: the Gallic side.

10. sēsē: do not translate.

11. ut: with *potuerint.*

Suessiōnēs: object of *dēterrēre.*

13. dēterrēre quīn, "prevent from."

---

1. opīniōne: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, *a*: B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, *e*: H. 471, 8.

2. vēnisset: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H. B. 526: H. 598.

proximī: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Galliae: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*a*): H. 434, 2.

3. lēgātōs: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. Belgīs: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. coniūrāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. oppidīs: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. incolant: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. frātrēs: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. iūre: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

13. potuerint: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2. H. 570.

14. cōnsentīrent: mode? App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3. H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 563, 1; 566.

4. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō

---

2. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse,** how? e.g. **quid Germānī possent,** how strong were the Germans. *

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; **sīc . . . ut,** so . . . that; so . . . as. *

plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; *as noun*, a great many, very many. 2.

3. antīquitus, *adv.* [**antīquus,** ancient], from early *or* ancient times; long ago, anciently. 2.

4. fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fertilis,** productive], productiveness. 1.

5. expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive out *or* forth, expel. 4.

6. Teutonī, -ōrum *or* **Teutonēs, -um,** *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) *or* Teutones (tū'tō-nēz).

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sĭm'-brī). 4.

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [**inter,** between] within, inside; into. 4.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** go], go *or* come into, enter. 1.

8. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

9. explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search *or* find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. 2.

10. propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**propinquus,** neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. 3.

11. commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; **rēs commūnis,** the common interest. *

Chap. 4. The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.

1. iīs: i.e. the envoys of the Remi.

2. quid: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

plērōsque Belgās: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

4. Gallōs: the object.

6. Teutonōs Cimbrōsque: on this invasion see Int. 27.

ingredī prohibuerint, "prevented from entering." Caesar always uses the infinitive after **prohibeō,** instead of the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*.

7. prohibuerint was subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 230, *b*: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, *b*: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 1.

9. dē numerō: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian army.

omnia . . . explōrāta, "that they had ascertained everything." See references at the end of the chapter.

11. quisque: i.e. each delegate.

ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā;

---

13. Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bĕ-lŏv′a-sī). *

14. armō, 1, *tr.* [**arma,** arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; **armātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, armed; **armātī,** *as noun*, armed men. *

15. ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], choose *or* pick out, select; **ēlēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). 1.

sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**sex,** six], sixty. 1.

postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

16. ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], productive, fertile. 1.

17. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō,** sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

18. Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus, (dĭv″ĭ-shĭ-ā′kŭs), *a chief of the Suessiones.* 1.

19. regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō,** keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; **ē regiōne,** *with gen.*, opposite. *

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brĭ-tăn′ĭ-a), *better* Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), *never Brittany.* *

20. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba (găl′ba), *a king of the Suessiones.* 2.

21. prūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**prūdēns,** foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring from *or* down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; **dēlātus** (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. *

22. quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. 3.

---

12. pollicitus sit: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

plūrimum: compare note on *quid*, 1. 2.

14. armāta mīlia centum, lit. "one hundred armed thousands," = "one hundred thousand armed men."

pollicitōs: supply *esse.*

16. suōs: i.e. of the Remi; see map.

17. possidēre: supply *eōs* (*Suessiōnēs*) on the subject.

18. Dīviciācum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

19. partis and **Britanniae** both depend on *imperium.*

Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

21. summam: the noun; *not* the superlative adjective.

totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

---

23. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nĕr'vĭ-ī). *

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (ăt"rē-bā'-tēz). *

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ăm"bĭ-ā'nī). 2.

25. Morinī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mŏr'ĭ-nī). *

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pĭ-ī). *

septem (VII), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, seven. 2.

Caletī, -ōrum (*or* **-ēs, -um**), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kăl'ē-tī). 1.

26. Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē"lĭ-ō-kăs'ēz). 1.

Viromanduī, -ōrum *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vĭr"ō-măn'dū-ī). 3.

Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatuci (ăt"ū-ăt'ū-sī). 4.

27. Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kŏn-drụ'sī). 2.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ĕb"ū-rō'nēz). 2.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). 1.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). 1.

---

23. Nerviōs: with this and the following proper nouns supply *pollicērī*.

maximē ferī: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e. from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

28. Germānī: these tribes were very

---

2. essent: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

3. Germānīs: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, *a*, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

Rhēnum: case? App. 127, *a*: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, *a*: H. 413.

5. patrum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, n. 1.

7. quā: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

rērum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

memoriā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

8. sibi: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

sūmerent: mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

9. explōrāta: use? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

13. virtūte: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. regiōnum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. voluntāte: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam

---

1. **līberāliter,** *adv.* [**līber,** free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow, accompany; pursue; *with* **ōrātiōne,** address. 3.
3. **dīligenter,** *adv.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, *or* care. 4.
5. **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum,** *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *
quantopere, *adv.* [**quantus,** how much + **opus,** work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. 1.
6. **distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* keep apart; divide, isolate. 3.
7. **cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum,** *intr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1.
8. **intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**intrō,** within + **dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring into. 3.
9. **mandātum, -ī,** *n.* [**mandō,** command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

---

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

arbitrārī (*pollicērī*), "they (the Remi) thought the Condrusi . . . promised."

Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. **quantopere:** interrogative. Explain the mode of *intersit.*

commūnis salūtis: i.e. of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

intersit . . . distinērī, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned . . . that the bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause *manūs . . . distinērī* is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit.*

6. **nē cōnflīgendum sit,** lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

7. **id:** i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id . . . coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

in fīnēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovaci were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see **4,** 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

8. **intrōdūxerint, coeperint:** perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the **direct** form.

omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdi-

---

12. Axona, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona (ăk′sō-na), *a river, now the* Aisne. 2.

15. tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due;* make *or* cause to be, render. *

16. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

17. efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make *or* do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

18. Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwĭn′tŭs tĭ-tū′rĭ-ŭs sa-bī′nŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* *

19. cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. *

---

10. in ūnum locum: somewhere to the northwest of the Axona river.

coāctās venīre, lit. "having been gathered were coming," = "had gathered and were coming."

venīre, abesse: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit.*

11. ab iīs explōrātōribus cognōvit, "learned from the scouts."

14. castra: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is eighty feet high.

quae rēs et, "this position both."

latus ūnum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. post . . . reddēbat, "rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, lit. "made that provisions could be brought up," = "made it possible for." **ut . . . possent** is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat.*

17. in, "over."

18. praesidium: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

in alterā parte, "on the other side"; i.e. at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. sex cohortibus: how many men? See Int. 33.

castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.

nem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

---

1. **Bibrax, -ctis,** *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī′-brăks), *a town of the Remi.* 1.

3. **sustentō,** 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **sustineō,** hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. 2.

4. **oppugnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**oppugnō,** storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan *or* method of storming. 2.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw, set, *or* place around. 1.

5. **moenia, -ium,** *n. pl.,* defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.

lapis, -idis, *m.,* stone. *

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.,* throw, cast, hurl; (*of an* **agger**), throw up, construct. *

6. **dēfēnsor, -ōris,** *m.* [**dēfendō,** defend], defender, protector; (*means of*) defense. *

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [**nūdus,** bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.

testūdō, -inis, *f.,* tortoise; shed; **a** testudo, *a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads.* 1.

---

20. **duodēvīgintī pedum:** i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.

1. **nōmine:** ablative of specification. **Bibrax:** see map facing p. 162.

2. **ex itinere:** i.e. without stopping to make camp.

3. **sustentātum est,** lit. "it was held out"; but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See *atque* in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

4. **haec,** "as follows."

circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."

6. **coeptī sunt:** why not *coepērunt?*

---

3. **quae:** use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. **docet:** tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

reī pūblicae: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. **multitūdine:** case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, *b*: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

7. **cōnflīgendum sit:** mode? App. 225, *b*: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. **cognōvit:** mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 551; 557: H. 602.

flūmen, exercitum: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. **pedum:** case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī

---

7. subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], cause to fall *from beneath*, overthrow; dig under, undermine. 1.

12. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [**subsideō,** sit near *or* in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

See App. 86, *a*: G.-L. 175, 5, *a*: A. 205, *a*: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

testūdine: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 34.

8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multitūdō*.

10. summā, "(a man) of the highest."

11. ūnus ex iīs: App. 101, *b*: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, *c*: B. 201, 1, *a*: H.-B. 346, *e*: H. 444. *ūnus* is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius*.

12. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

Chap. **7.** Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.

1. eō: to Bibrax.

īsdem ducibus ūsus, "employing the same persons as guides."

---

2. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

impetū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. diē: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. moenibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. coeptī sunt: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

dēfēnsōribus: case? App. 134, *b*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, *b*: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. conicerent: mode? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. nūllī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. nōbilitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. mittit: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

13. sēsē: case? App, 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

posse: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580, *a*: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As explained under II, **1**, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subject of infinitive
Ablative of time
Narrative cum clause
Infinitive in indirect discourse

nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō

---

2. **Numidae, -ārum,** *m.*, the Numidae (nū′mĭ-dē), *better* the Numidians, *a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.* *

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē′tēz), *better*, Cretans, *natives of the island of Crete.* 1.

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [**sagitta,** an arrow], bowman, archer. 3.

3. **funditor, -ōris,** *m.* [**funda,** sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (băl″ē-ă′rĭk), (i.e. *coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca*) 1.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**oppidum,** town], of *or* pertaining to a town; *in pl. as noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2.

4. **dēfēnsiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**dēfendō,** defend], a defending, defense. 1.

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. 1.

6. **paulisper,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

9. **fūmus, -ī,** *m.*, smoke. 1.

---

3. **mittit:** the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. **et . . . et,** "not only . . . but also."

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

5. **hostibus discessit,** lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." *hostibus* is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendī.* How can *potior*, an intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, *a*: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, *b*, n.: H. 623, 1.

6. **morātī, dēpopulātī:** as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt.* But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. **quō:** the adverb.

8. **ā . . . duōbus,** "less than two miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp. *ab* is here used adverbially; *mīlibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

9. **ut,** "as."

atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam

---

10. significō, 1, *tr.* [**signum,** sign + **faciō,** make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.

1. prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], at first, in the first place. *

2. eximius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**eximō,** take out], *taken from the mass; hence* choice, eminent. 1.

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō,** sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. 1.

4. perīclitor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**perīculum,** trial, danger], try, test; be in danger *or* peril. 1.

---

10. mīlibus: ablative after the comparative *amplius.* The references on 1. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. multitūdinem: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. **4,** the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.

2. opīniōnem virtūtis, "reputation for valor."

proeliō: ablative of separation.

4. nostrī: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

---

1. mediā: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

īsdem: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

2. sagittāriōs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. subsidiō, oppidānīs: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

4. dēfēnsiōnis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

prōpugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *a*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. potiundī: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, *a*; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. vīcīs: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. Caesaris: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

cōpiīs: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

mīlibus duōbus: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. mīlibus octō: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

Third References:

Possessive genitive
Direct object
Ablative absolute

nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque

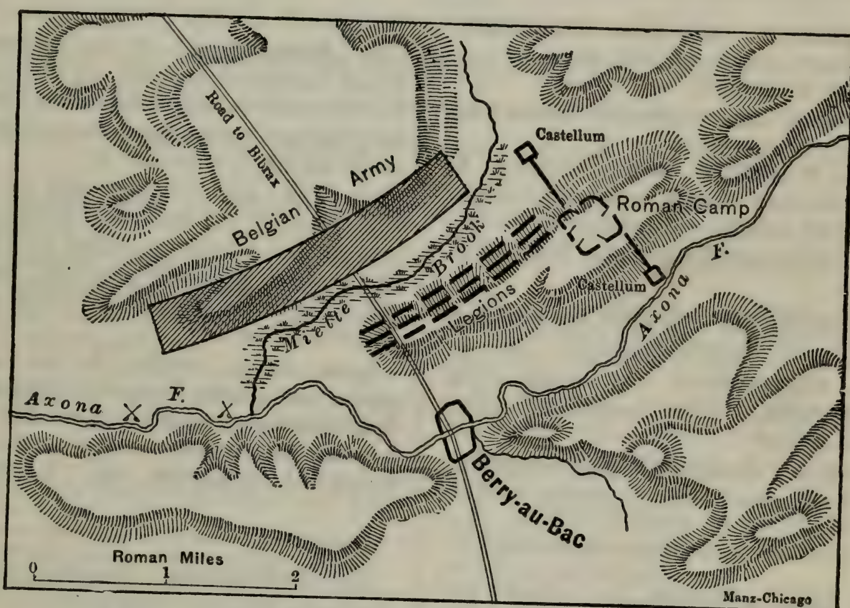
6. **opportūnus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

7. **paululum,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a very little. 1.

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**plānus,** level], level ground, plain. 4.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **ēdō,** give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.



BATTLE ON THE AXONA

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.

locō opportūnō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castrīs: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. **collis** is the subject of ***patēbat, habebat,*** and *redībat.*

7. **tantum . . . poterat,** lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."

in lātitūdinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. **locī:** we should expect this partitive genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum.*

ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reli-

---

9. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [**uter,** which *of two*], each *of two*, either *of two;* both. *

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēiciō,** cast down], declivity, slope, descent. *

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. 3.

lēniter, *adv.* [**lēnis,** smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. fastīgātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. 1.

paulātim, *adv* [**paulus,** little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

11. trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**trānsvertō,** turn across], turned across, cross. 1.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead towards; extend, dig. 1.

12. tormentum, -ī, *n.* [**torqueō,** twist], means of twisting; an engine for *hurling missiles*, e.g. *catapulta and ballista;* windlass, hoist; device for torturing, *hence*, torment, torture. 3.

16. quō, *adv.* [*old dat. case of* **quī,** who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est,** it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or the abl.* (App. 146). *

---

9. ex . . . lateris, lit. "at each end of the side" = "at each end"; i.e. the east and west ends of the hill. *utrāque parte* alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As *latus* means one of the long sides of the hill, *utrāque parte lateris* must mean the ends.

in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.

10. ab utrōque latere, "on each side"; i.e. on the northern and southern slopes.

11. trānsversam, "at right angles" to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. extrēmās: i.e. the outer ends.

tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. īnstrūxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. ab lateribus, "on the flanks." The trenches protected only the right flank of the army, but the left was sufficiently protected by the Miette.

15. quās . . . cōnscrīpserat: cf. **2,** 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. quō: the adverb; supply *dūcī;* "if there should be need of their being led anywhere."

subsidiō: dative of purpose.

quās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī

---

1. **palūs, -ūdis,** *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

5. **neuter, -tra, -trum** (*gen.* **-trīus,** *dat.* **-trī**), *adj. used as noun* [**ne-**+**uter,** which *of two*], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. 1.

7. **prōtinus,** *adv.* [**tenus,** as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 1.

11. **interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum,** *tr.* [**scindō,** cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by a ford.

1. **palūs erat,** "there was a marsh"; i.e. the marshy ground along the Miette.

2. **sī trānsīrent:** construction? App. 264, *b*: G.-L. 460, *b*: A. 576, *a*: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, *a*: H. 649, II, 3.

3. **sī . . . fieret,** "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on *ut aggrederentur*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin."

impedītōs: i.e. by crossing the marsh.

6. **faciunt:** historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi.*

secundiōre proeliō: ablative absolute.

8. **contendērunt:** Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. **vadīs:** the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.

10. **eō cōnsiliō, ut,** etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

---

3. **proeliīs:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

posset: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

6. **nātūrā:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. **patēbat:** mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of means

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

---

13. **ego, meī** (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* **nōs**, we, us, etc. *

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor**, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est,** there is need; **ūsuī esse** *or* **ex ūsū esse,** be of advantage *or* service; **ūsū venīre,** come by necessity, happen. *

2. **levis, -e,** *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. 2.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [**armō**, arm], armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae,** light-armed. 2.

---

12. **minus,** "not," as is usual after *sī*.

potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent.*

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. **equitātum:** the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

3. **in eō locō:** i.e. at the fords.

4. **nostrī** is the subject of *occīdērunt, reppulērunt*, and *interfēcērunt.*

8. **ubi** introduces *intellēxērunt, vīdērunt*, and *coepit.*

---

3. **trānseundī:** construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *a*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. **aggrederentur:** mode? App. 225, *a*, 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. **nostrīs:** case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

10. **cōnsiliō:** case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475.

cui: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. **lēgātus:** case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. **nōbīs ūsuī:** case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, *a*; 506, n. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition
Dative with adjectives
Ablative of cause
Purpose clauses

spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut

---

9. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+aequus,** even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

10. prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. *

14. potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis,** able], rather. 2.

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. *

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus,** house], belonging to the home, domestic; in *or* of one's own land. 1.

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō,** think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [**ad + propinquus,** near], come near *or* close, approach. *

---

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. "when they saw that their hope about the town to be taken . . . had disappointed them" = "when they saw that they were disappointed in their hope of taking the town."

neque = *et nōn.*

nostrōs . . . prōgredī: i.e. the legions would not descend the hill to the Miette.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires thorough organization to supply so large an army. Caesar's superiority to the Gallic leaders is always evident in this matter no less than on the battle field. He sometimes marched into the heart of a hostile country, where it is hard to see how he secured supplies; but we hear only once of a failure to keep his army well fed.

11. cōnstituērunt has two objects, (1) *optimum esse,* "that it was best" (indirect discourse), and (2) (*ut*) *convenīrent,* "to assemble" (a substantive volitive clause).

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "let us assemble to protect those into whose territory the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, "in addition to."

17. Dīviciācum . . . appropinquāre: in accordance with Caesar's directions. See 5, 7.

fīnibus: indirect object of the compound verb *appropinquāre.*

18. hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, lit. "it could not be persuaded to these." Turn into English. It will be remembered that the Bellovaci had reason to be lukewarm in their allegiance to the confederation. See note on 5, 7.

diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā

---

1. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2.

2. tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line *of soldiers;* arrangement, order; degree, rank; **prīmī ōrdinēs,** centurions of the first rank. *

4. properō, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. 2.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. 1.

5. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], *as one stands, hence,* forthwith, immediately, at once. *

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. 1.

---

19. neque = *et nōn.*

Chap. **11.** The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. secundā vigiliā: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between ten and twelve.

2. castrīs: ablative of separation.

4. fēcērunt ut profectiō vidērētur, "they made their departure seem."

fugae: dative.

---

1. certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

ab Titūriō: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

2. armātūrae: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

equitātum, pontem: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

5. eōrum (numerum): case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

8. expugnandō: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, *a*; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.

9. intellēxērunt: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

10. pugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, *b*: B. 338, 1, *c*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

12. domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

13. intrōdūxissent: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

18. cognōverant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

hīs: case? App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*, *b*: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.

19. morārentur: mode? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565.

suīs: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective — *Indirect object*
Partitive genitive — *Ablative of agent*
Gerund — *Gerundive*
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses
Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
Dependent clauses in ind. discourse

īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum

---

6. perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō**, look], look *or* see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

10. Aurunculēius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyŭs aw-rŭng''-kū-lē'yŭs cŏt'ạ), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* 3.

11. subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow closely, follow up *or* on, follow. *

13. fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *tr. and intr.* [**fuga,** flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

14. fortiter, *adv.* [**fortis,** brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

15. prior, prius, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. 2.

16. necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessity, constraint, need. 2.

17. exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [**audiō,** hear], hear (*from a distance*). 1.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō,** cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. *

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

---

6. quod perspexerat: a causal clause.

7. castrīs, "in camp"; but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. quī morārētur, "to delay"; a purpose clause.

11. lēgātum: see Int. 38.

subsequī: the legions could not overtake the fugitives, but if the latter stopped to resist the cavalry the legions could make short work of them.

13. fugientium, "in their flight."

cum . . . cōnsisterent, "since (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop." *cōnsisterent, sustinērent,* and *pōnerent* are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.

14. ventum erat is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. priōrēs, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."

quod vidērentur neque continērentur: a causal clause; mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. neque . . . neque, "and . . . not . . . nor."

multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre

---

2. **terror, -ōris,** *m.* **terreō,** frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.

4. **Noviodūnum, -ī,** *n.*, Noviodunum (nō″vi-ō-dū′nŭm) (Be) *the capital of the Suessiones, the modern* Soissons. 1.

5. **vacuus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**vacō,** be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. 2.

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. *

---

19. **quantum . . . spatium,** lit. "as was the length of the day" = "as the length of the day permitted."

Chap. **12-15.** The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to Caesar.

Chap. **12.** Caesar takes the chief town of the Suessiones.

1. **priusquam reciperent:** mode? App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 2. Now that Caesar had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one.

3. **magnō itinere:** about 28 miles. Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched along its south bank. See map facing p. 162.

4. **ex itinere:** i.e. before making camp and without letting the soldiers rest, although they were tired after their unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar wanted to take the town before its garrison could be reënforced. On this method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. **paucīs dēfendentibus,** "although there were but few defenders"; ablative absolute with adversative meaning.

---

1. **strepitū, tumultū, ōrdine, imperiō:** case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B, 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. **peteret:** mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

5. **vidērētur:** mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

6. **discēderent:** mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; **574:** B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

11. **legiōnibus:** case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

12. **mīlia:** case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. **mīlitum:** case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

perīculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, *a*: H. 461.

17. **sibi:** case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Subjective genitive
Ablative of separation
Ablative of accompaniment
Ablative of manner
Indirect question

nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō

---

7. **vīnea, -ae,** *f.* [**vīnum,** wine], vine arbor, *hence,* a shed *for the defense of a besieging party.* 4.

10. **agger, aggeris,** *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. *

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. *

11. **magnitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**magnus,** great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (**corporum**); violence (**ventī**); severity (**poenae**); **magnitūdō animī,** courage. *

12. **celeritās, -tātis,** *f.* [**celer,** swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. **cōnservō,** 1, *tr.* [**servō,** save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. *

4. **Bratuspantium, -tī,** *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brăt″ŭs-păn′shyŭm). 1.

6. **nātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**nāscor,** be born], birth; **maiōrēs nātū,** *greater by birth,* elders. 3.

---

7. **vīneās agere,** "to move up the *vineae.*" See Int. 62, d.

quaeque, "and (those things) which."

8. **ūsuī**: dative of purpose.

9. **in oppidum:** they probably entered from the north by crossing the Axona. There may have been a bridge which Caesar had not had time to destroy.

10. **aggere turribusque:** see Int. 61.

13. **petentibus Rēmīs:** on the relations between the Remi and the Suessiones see **3**, 11.

14. **impetrant,** "they [the Suessiones] obtained their request." The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

1. **obsidibus,** "as hostages"; in apposition with *prīmīs*, which is used as a noun, and with *fīliīs*.

2. **Galbae:** who had been head of the league; see **4**, 20.

3. **Bellovacōs:** the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 162.

6. **ex oppidō:** is *ex* needed with this verb? See **11**, 2.

---

14. **cōnservārentur:** tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: **H.-B. 476, 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.**

impetrant: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: **H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.**

THIRD REFERENCE:

Historical present

ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod

---

7. **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum** *or* **tēnsum,** *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. 1.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context, as* entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *

11. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum,** *tr.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend; **passīs capillīs,** with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. 2.

1. **discessus, -ūs,** *m.* [**discēdō,** depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. 3.

4. **impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *tr.* [**in + pellō,** drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

5. **redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum,** *tr.* [**red- + agō,** put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**indignus,** unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. 1.

---

7. **vōce significāre:** the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. *sēsē . . . contendere* depends on this expression.

10. **puerī,** "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. **14.** Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

1. **discessum:** i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

3. **omnī tempore fuisse,** "had always been." Diviciacus claims the Bellovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

4. **impulsōs . . . et dēfēcisse et intulisse,** "that they [the Bellovaci] instigated . . . had both revolted and made."

5. **redāctōs perferre,** "had been reduced . . . and were enduring."

7. **quī,** "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of *profūgisse.*

---

4. **quī:** use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. **nātū:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. **mōre:** case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of specification

Coördinate relative

intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservatūrum dīxit, et, quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidē-

---

9. **profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum,** *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

10. **clēmentia, -ae,** *f.* [**clēmēns,** gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**mānsuētus,** tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. 2.

12. **amplificō,** 1, *tr.* [**amplus,** large +**faciō,** make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. 1.

13. **incidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——,** *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

4. **sescentī, -ae, -a** (**DC**), *card. num. adj.* [**sex,** six], six hundred. *

6. **mora, -ae,** *f.*, delay. 3.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give up *or* over, yield, surrender; devote; **sē dēdere,** submit, surrender. *

---

8. **quantam intulissent:** indirect question.

9. **Britanniam:** the relations between the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See **4,** 19.

10. **suā,** "his usual."

11. **quod sī fēcerit,** "if he should do this." The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. **quōrum:** the antecedent is *Belgās.*

13. **qua:** the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative, when *quis* is used as an indefinite.

Chap. **15.** Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

1. **honōris causā,** lit. "for the sake of the honor of" = "in deference to."

2. **eōs,** i.e. the Bellovaci, is the object of *receptūrum et cōnservātūrum* (*esse*).

3. **multitūdine:** ablative of specification.

6. **Ambiānōrum:** see map facing p. 162.

---

6. **populō:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

10. **clēmentiā:** case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

11. **ūtātur:** tense? App. 202; 203; 270, *a*: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, *b*: B. 267; 318: H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

13. **qua:** use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

cōnsuērint: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with ūtor, etc.

runt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia

---

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. 2.

10. lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1.

11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, ——, *intr.* [**re-+languēscō**, become weak], become weak *or* enfeebled. 1.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**re-+mittō**, send], send *or* despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; **remissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

12. increpitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **increpō**, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa**, cause *or* case], bring a case *or* charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

13. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pater**, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.

1. inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō**, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

2. Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the *river* Sabis (sā'bĭs). 2.

amplē, *adv.* [**amplus**, large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius,** more, farther. *

---

7. quōrum, "their."

8. nūllum . . . mercātōribus, "that traders had no access to them."

9. patī, "that (they) allowed."

vīnī, rērum: partitive genitives with *nihil.*

10. quod exīstimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. dēdidissent, prōiēcissent: may have been subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, *e*: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. cōnfirmāre sēsē neque missūrōs, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

2. Sabim: note the accusative in *-im.*

---

2. erat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. auctōritāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. mercātōribus: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

12. virtūtis: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

13. reliquōs: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter

---

6. **experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum,** *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

8. **aetās, aetātis,** *f.*, period of life, age. 2.

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-** + **ūtilis,** useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.

1. **centuriō, -ōnis,** *m.* [**centum,** a hundred], centurion, *the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* *

4. **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** *and* **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and* b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

5. **cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**cōnsuēscō,** become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.

mīlia: accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

3. **trāns flūmen:** i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

5. **fīnitimīs:** in apposition with *Atrebātibus* and *Viromanduīs.* See map.

6. **ab iīs:** i.e. by the Nervii.

7. **quīque,** "and (the men) who."

8. **eum locum quō,** "a place to which."

9. **coniēcisse:** as subject supply *eōs*, referring to the Nervii.

esset: mode? App. 230, *a*: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. **17.** The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. **ex . . . Gallīs:** equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. **Caesarem . . . facerent,** "had joined Caesar and were marching along with him."

5. **eōrum . . . exercitūs,** "our army's usual order of march during those days." Both *diērum* and *exercitūs* depend on *itineris.* On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. **inter singulās legiōnēs,** "between every two legions."

---

1. **trīduum:** case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. **hīs:** case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote.3, *b*: H. 426, 2.

9. **exercituī:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs

Dative of possessor

singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque

---

10. dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō,** seize], rend *or* tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.

11. adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *tr.* [**iuvō,** aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 1.

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, *a*), whoever, whatever. 1.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**pēs,** foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae,** infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [**praeda,** booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. 1.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2.

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut into. 1.

---

7. impedīmentōrum: see Int. 46.

numerum, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble."

castra, "camping-ground."

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinīs: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (*esse*) **ut,** "the result would be that." This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, *a*: G.-L. 635: A. 583, *b*: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, *b*: H. 643, 1.

adiuvābat: the subject is the clause *quod . . . effēcerant;* "the fact that the Nervii had made, etc., assisted."

13. nihil: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 2, *b*: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

14. eī reī: i.e. cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, "whatever strength they have consists in infantry."

15. quō impedīrent: a purpose clause. Why is not *ut* used? App. 225, *a*, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, *a*: B. 282, *a*: H.-B. 502, 2, *b*: H. 568, 7.

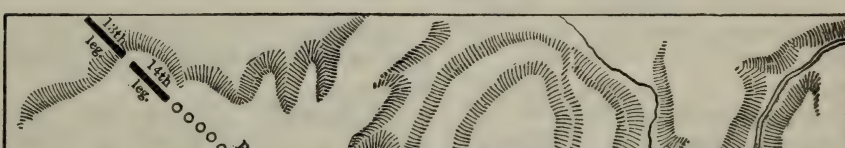
16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

tenerīs . . . interiectīs: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (*incīsīs*) and their tops bent over (*īnflexīs*). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (*crēbrīs . . . ēnātīs*). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (*rubīs . . . interiectīs*).

īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī

---

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. 1.
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor**, be born], be born from; spring up. 1.
rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1.
sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. 1.
18. intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], throw *or* hurl between; put *or* place between; **interiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed; **mediocrī interiectō spatiō**, not far away. 4.
īnstar, *n.*, *indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*, like. 1.
saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2.
mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mūniō**, fortify], defense, fortification. 1.
19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae** + **habeō**, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. 3.
intrō, 1, *tr.*, go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. 1.



Battle on the Sabis

18. effēcerant ut praebērent, "they had made these hedges furnish."
19. quō . . . posset: a clause of characteristic. Translate personally, "into which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see."

impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

---

21. **omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** *tr.* [**ob**+**mittō,** send], let go *or* fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.

2. **aequāliter,** *adv.* [**aequālis,** equal; **aequus,** equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**clīvis,** a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun,* slopes. 2.

3. **nōminō,** 1, *tr.* [**nōmen,** name], call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. **acclīvitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**acclīvis,** ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born *or* produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. 3.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**contrā,** against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō,** on the contrary. 3.

6. **silvestris, -e,** *adj.* [**silva,** forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood *or* forest. 1.

intrōrsus, *adv.* [**intrō,** within+**versus,** *pf. part. of* **vertō,** turn], within, on the inside. 1.

7. **occultus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun,* a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

Chap. **18.** Description of the battlefield.

1. **haec,** "as follows."

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e. the scouts and centurions who had been sent on ahead; **17,** 1.

2. **collis:** north of the river. See plan, p. 191.

summō, "the top"; the ablative singular of *summus,* used as a noun.

4. **collis:** south of the river.

5. **passūs . . . apertus,** "at the bottom bare of trees for two hundred paces."

---

2. **dēligant:** tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. **dēmōnstrārunt:** form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

11. **audērent:** mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

12. **quod effēcerant:** construction? App. 248: G.-L 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

21. **omittendum** (*esse*): construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

Third References:

Contracted verb forms
Sequence of tenses
Substantive clauses of result

dum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. **statiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**stō,** stand], standing *or* stationing; a military post *or* station; sentries, pickets, outposts; **in statiōne esse,** be on guard. 4.

2. **aliter,** *adv.* [**alius,** other], otherwise; **aliter . . . ac,** otherwise . . . than. 2.

8. **trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressum,** *tr.* [**gradior,** step], step over, cross. 1.

9. **identidem,** *adv.* [**īdem,** the same], repeatedly. 1.

11. **porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** *tr.* [**prō**+**regō,** keep straight], extend; **porrēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. 1.

8. **vidēbantur,** "were seen," not "seemed."

9. **pedum trium:** descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

Chap. 19. The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.

1. **omnibus cōpiīs:** why is *cum* not used? App. 140, *a*: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, *a*: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in **17**, 2.

2. **aliter . . . ac,** lit. "had itself otherwise than" = "was different from what."

habēbat is singular because *ratiō ōrdōque* is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."

4. **expedītās,** "without baggage"; whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. **legiōnēs . . . cōnscrīptae erant:** as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; **8**, 15.

10. **reciperent, facerent,** "kept retiring, kept making."

11. **longius . . . fīnem,** "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead

2. **ad flūmen:** construction? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 426, 2: B. 182, 2: H.-B. 385: H. 418.

4. **acclīvitāte:** case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

5. **īnfimus:** meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

6. **posset:** mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Place to which
Descriptive ablative
Adjectives with partitive meaning

nēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

---

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. 2.

13. dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [**mētior,** measure], measure out *or* off. 2.

15. lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed *or* hidden. 2.

17. subitō, *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly *or* rush forth. 1.

19. prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run down, hurry down. 4.

1. vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag, standard. 1.

---

us to expect *ad fīnem, ad quem*, but the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. "extended stretched out" = "extended." The whole clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: sc. *eōs;* i.e. the enemy.

13. dīmēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

14. prīma impedīmenta, "the head of the baggage train."

15. quod tempus, "the time which."

16. convēnerat, "had been agreed upon."

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, "as . . . they had pledged each other (to do)."

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.

21. adversō colle, lit. "by way of the hill facing them" = "up the hill." For the case of *colle*, see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

22. opere: i.e. of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda,

---

4. cōnsuētūdine: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

6. praesidiō impedīmentīs: construction? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

Third References:

Double dative

Ablative of accordance

prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs

---

2. concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō**, run], run *or* rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 1.

revocō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+vocō**, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.

4. paulō, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. *

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon, send for, invite. *

6. brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [**brevis**, short], shortness; brevity. 2.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [**incurrō**, rush into *or* upon], attack. 1.

7. difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [**difficilis**, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. *

scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciō**, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

8. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **exercitō**, train *or* practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō**, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

---

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesar"="Caesar had to do everything."

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply *erat.* Similarly supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.

quī, "(those soldiers) who."

4. paulō longius, "a little too far."

aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. signum: here the signal for the attack.

7. duae rēs: explained by two appositives, first, *scientia atque ūsus*, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, *quod . . . vetuerat* (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."

8. quod poterant: a causal clause.

proeliīs, "in battles"; but it is an ablative of means.

9. quid fierī oportēret, "what ought to be done"; an indirect question, object of *praescrībere.*

10. ab singulīs . . . discēdere, "each legate to leave a particular legion." It is not quite correct to translate "leave his legion," because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.

11. nisi mūnītīs castrīs, lit. "un[illegible]s the camp having been fortified"="u[illegible] the camp had been fortified."

vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tem-

---

12. **vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum,** *tr.*, forbid. 1.

14. **administrō,** 1, *tr.* [**minister,** servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. *

2. **fors, fortis,** *f.*, chance; **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. 3.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [**ob + ferō,** bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; *with* **sē,** expose one's self *to*, charge *upon*, encounter. 3.

3. **decimus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], tenth. *

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come down, go, come. 2.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *

6. **adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum,** *tr.* [**agō,** move], drive *or* bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). *

8. **occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**ob + currō,** run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

---

13. **nihil:** an emphatic *nōn*.

quae vidēbantur, "whatever seemed best."

Chap. 21. Caesar encourages his men.

1. **ad . . . mīlitēs:** with *dēcucurrit*.

2. **quam in partem** = *in eam partem in quam*. Cf. note on **19,** 11.

legiōnem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; cf. I, **40,** 45-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 191.

3. **nōn longiōre ōrātiōne quam utī,** "with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc."

4. **neu:** the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

6. **quod aberant:** a causal clause, explaining *signum dedit*.

quam . . . posset, lit. "than to which a javelin could be thrown." Omit *quō* in translating. For the mode of *posset* see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, *c*: B. 283, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 521, 2, *c*: H. 570, 1.

7. **in alteram partem:** the right wing. See plan.

8. **pugnantibus occurrit,** "he found (them already) fighting."

---

1. **Caesarī:** case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

erant agenda: construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

4. **paulō:** case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

10. **quod vetuerat:** construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Substantive quod clause

poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus

---

9. **exiguitās, -tātis,** *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. *

dīmicō, 1, *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.

10. **accommodō,** 1, *tr.*, adjust *or* adapt to one's self, fit *or* put on. 1.

11. **galea, -ae,** *f.*, *a leather* helmet. 1.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; **sē induere,** be impaled *or* pierced. 1.

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering. 1.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off *or* away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

12. **dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, ——,** *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

13. **cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,** *tr.* [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

3. **dīversus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*pf. part. of* dīvertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

---

10. **ad . . . accommodanda,** "for fitting on their decorations"; especially on the helmets; see Plate I, facing p. 27. These *insignia* probably distinguished the legions.

11. **galeās:** these would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

scūtīs: dative of separation.

tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.

12. **dēfuerit:** note the exception to sequence; App. 204, *a*: G.-L. 513: A. 485, *c* (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 478: H. 550.

quam in partem, "to whatever place."

13. **quaeque . . . cōnspexit,** "and whatever standards he saw first." On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. **suīs:** sc. *signīs.*

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.

1. **ut,** "as."

2. **reī . . . ōrdō,** lit. "the theory and arrangement of military matters"="the theory of military tactics." When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. **cum . . . resisterent . . . impe-**

---

4. **virtūtis:** case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

12. **dēfuerit:** mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Result clause

Clause of characteristic

resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōviderī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre

---

4. **dēnsus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, closely set *or* packed, thick, dense. 3.

5. **prōspectus, -ūs,** *m.* [**prōspiciō,** look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.

6. **prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum,** *tr.* [**videō,** see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *

8. **inīquitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**inīquus,** unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēveniō,** turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. 1.

1. **nōnus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. 2.

2. **cursus, -ūs,** *m.* [**currō,** run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [**anima,** breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.

3. **obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. 1.

4. **compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

---

dīrētur gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . poterant*.

dīversae, lit. "separated" = "separately."

aliae . . . parte, "some in one place, others in another."

4. **ante:** see **17,** 12-20.

5. **interiectīs,** "which intervened."

neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, lit. "sure" = "so that they could be counted on."

6. **quid . . . esset:** an indirect question, subject of *prōviderī (poterat)*.

quid: construction? App. 146, *a*: G.-L. 406: A. 411, *b*: B. 218, 2, *a*: H.-B. 430, 2, *a*: H. 477, III, n.

7. **in . . . inīquitāte,** "in such a diversity of circumstances."

8. **fortūnae:** genitive limiting *eventūs*.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. **nōnae et decimae:** these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. **aciē** = *aciēī*; App. 30, *b*: G.-L. 63, n. 1: A. 98, n.: B. 52, 3: H.-B. 100, 2: H. 134, 2.

pīlīs: see Int. 36, a.

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōnfectōs: translate after *Atrebātēs*.

3. **ea pars:** the left wing of the Romans.

---

4. **resisterent:** mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Cum causal

cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

---

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**ūndecim,** eleven], eleventh. 1.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**octō,** eight], eighth. 1.

prōflīgō, 1, *tr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. 1.

10. congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). *

11. proelior, 1, *intr.* [**proelium,** battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. 3.

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

12. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. *

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelfth. 2.

14. Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bŏd″ū-ŏg-nā′tŭs). 1.

---

5. cōnantēs, "as they [the Atrebates] were trying."

gladiīs: see Int. 36, b.

impedītam, "while thus embarrassed"; i.e. by crossing the river.

6. ipsī: the Romans of the left wing.

7. locum inīquum: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.

resistentēs hostēs: object of *coniēcērunt.*

8. aliā in parte: the center.

dīversae: i.e. separated from the other legions.

10. ex locō superiōre, "(having come down) from their higher position."

12. nūdātīs: by the advance of the four legions already mentioned. See the plan.

13. nōn magnō intervāllō, "at no very great distance." Case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

omnēs Nerviī: 60,000 in number.

14. duce Boduognātō, "under the leadership of Boduognatus." Ablative absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. ab apertō latere: the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. summum . . . locum, lit. "the highest place belonging to the camp" = "the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. **24.** The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th legions, but he pauses to give a vivid

peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

---

2. **pedes, peditis,** *m.* [**pēs,** foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

5. **cālō, -ōnis,** *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. 3.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decimus,** tenth], of *or* belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate (*of the camp*). 1.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. *

6. **victor, -ōris,** *m.* [**vincō,** conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

7. **respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,** *tr.* [**re-** + **speciō,** look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. 1.

8. **praeceps, -cipitis,** *adj.* [**caput,** head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2.

9. **fremitus, -ūs,** *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. 2.

11. **Trēvir, -erī,** *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv'ē-rī). *

12. **singulāris, -e,** *adj.* [**singulī.** one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

---

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of **19, 7.**

2. **iīs:** the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dīxeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." *quōs* refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*. *dīxī* would be more natural and more usual than *dīxeram*.

3. **adversīs,** "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. **occurrēbant:** note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter *describe* a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. **ab decumānā portā:** the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. **victōrēs,** "as victors."

8. **eōrum:** the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.

9. **aliī . . . partem:** for translation cf. note on **22, 3.**

11. **virtūtis opīniō,** "reputation for courage"; an objective genitive.

13. **cum:** with *vīdissent.*

premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut

---

14. **premō, -premere, -pressī, -pressum,** *tr.* press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

15. **dissipō,** 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 1.

1. **cohortātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**cohortor,** encourage], encouragement, cheering. 1.

2. **urgeō, urgēre, ursī,** ——, *tr.*, press, press hard. 2.

5. **signifer, -erī,** *m.* [**signum,** standard + **ferō,** bear], standard-bearer. 1.

---

16. **dēspērātīs,** "despairing of."

17. **castrīs:** what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and 12th legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.

1. **Caesar:** subject of *prōcessit* (l. 15) and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: *Caesar . . . profectus; ubi . . . urgērī; signīs . . . vīdit; quārtae . . . āmissō; reliquārum . . . occīsīs; in hīs . . . posset; reliquōs . . . vītāre; hostēs . . . īnstāre; et . . . posset; scūtō . . . prōcessit; centuriōnibus . . . possent.*

cohortātiōne: cf. **21,** 2.

2. **ubi,** "when"; with *vīdit*, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on *vīdit.* Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signīs collātīs: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. **sibi . . . impedīmentō,** lit. "were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting" = "hindered one another in fighting."

4. **quārtae cohortis:** this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. **signō āmissō:** regarded as a great disgrace.

occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū impe-

---

7. **prīmipīlus, -ī,** *m.* [**prīmus,** first + **pīlus,** a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

Sextius, -tī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs sĕks'tĭ-ŭs băk'ū-lŭs), *a centurion in Caesar's army.* 2.

vir, virī, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction *or* honor; cf. **homō,** a human being *as distinguished from the lower animals.* *

9. **tardus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1.

10. **dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,** *tr.* [**serō,** entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. *

16. **manipulus, -ī,** *m.* [**manus,** hand + **pleō,** fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), maniple. 1.

laxō, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. 1.

18. **imperātor, -ōris,** *m.* [**imperō,** command], commander-in-chief, general. *

---

7. **prīmipīlō:** see Int. 42.

8. **multīs gravibusque,** "many severe." When *multī* and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by *et* or *que*.

sē sustinēre, " stand on his feet."

9. **ab novissimīs,** "in the rear."

10. **dēsertō locō,** "deserting their posts."

tēla vītāre, " were getting out of the range of missiles."

neque . . . et, "not . . . and."

12. **rem . . . angustō,** "and affairs were in a critical condition."

vīdit: simply repeats the *vīdit* of l. 4.

13. **quod . . . posset:** a clause of characteristic.

scūtō dētractō, "snatching a shield." Here begins Caesar's action.

mīlitī: dative of separation.

14. **eō:** the adverb.

16. **signa . . . laxāre,** "to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks."

quō: cf. note on **17,** 15.

17. **spē . . . animō,** "hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed."

18. **prō sē,** lit. "in proportion to himself" = " to the best of his ability."

rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

---

19. **opera, -ae,** *f.* [**opus,** work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; **dare operam,** give attention, take pains. 1.

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously *or* well. 1.

20. **paulum,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, 1, *tr.* [**tardus,** slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. **iūxtā,** *adv.* [**iungō,** join], next, near. 1.

2. **tribūnus, -ī,** *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs;* **tribūnus mīlitum** *or* **mīlitāris,** a military tribune. *

---

19. **etiam . . . rēbus,** "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. **26.** The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. **iūxtā:** i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

cōnstiterat, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between *cōnsistō* and *cōnstituō.*

2. **tribūnōs:** see Int. 41.

3. **sēsē coniungerent:** i.e. to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa īnferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. **cum . . . ferret,** "since they protected one another."

5. **timērent:** agreeing with *mīlitēs,* which is implied in *alius aliī.*

āversī, "in the rear."

7. **quae . . . fuerant:** cf. **19,** 5.

8. **proeliō . . . incitātō,** "quickening their step on hearing of the battle."

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. **Labiēnus:** cf. note on **23,** 1.

10. **quae rēs gererentur:** indirect question.

11. **quī cum,** "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. **quō in locō,** "in what condition."

rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla inter-

---

2. **prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum,** *intr.* [**cubō,** lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2.

3. **innītor, -nītī, -nīxus sum,** *intr.* [**nītor,** rest on], lean upon. 1.

4. **inermis, -e,** *adj.* [**in-+arma,** arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. 3.

5. **turpitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**turpis,** disgraceful], disgrace. 1.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1.

6. **legiōnārius, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**legiō,** legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* **quam; praeferre sē alicui,** surpass. 1.

8. **iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, ——,** *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1.

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* **ratiōnem,** adopt, use. 4.

9. **coacervō, 1,** [**acervō,** heap up; **acervus,** heap], heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [**cadō,** fall], a fallen *or* dead body, corpse. 1.

10. **tumulus, -ī,** *m.* [**tumeō,** swell],

---

14. **nihil . . . fēcērunt,** lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.

2. **quī,** "those who." The clause is determinative, not characteristic; App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction; App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

scūtīs: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

4. **inermēs . . . occurrerent,** "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. **etiam . . . salūtis,** "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. **proximī . . . īnsisterent,** "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. **hīs:** i.e. *proximi.*

quī superessent: cf. note on *qui*, l. 2.

10. **ut ex tumulō,** "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of *ut* (l. 7) still continues.

---

5. **circumvenīrentur:** construction? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

14. **sibi:** case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

cepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē

---

swelling; mound, hill. 4.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt; intercept, cut off. 1.

11. **nēquīquam,** *adv.* [**nē+quī(d)-quam,** anything], in vain, to no purpose. 1.

1. **gēns, gentis,** *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. 3.

3. **aestuārium, -rī,** *n.* [**aestus,** tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. **cōnsēnsus, -ūs,** *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

8. **senātor, -ōris,** *m.* [**senex,** old], elder; senator. 1.

10. **miser, -era, -erum,** *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

supplex, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. 1.

---

11. **ut . . . dēbēret,** "so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc."; i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. **altissimās:** at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, "deeds which"; i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. **ex,** "instead of."

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. **quōs coniectōs dīxerāmus,** "who, as I have said, had been, etc."; cf. note on **24,** 2.

4. **victōribus . . . tūtum,** "that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing safe for the conquered."

5. **quī supererant:** compare *quī superessent*, **27,** 9. This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. **vix ad quīngentōs:** this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

quī possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

9. **ut . . . vidērētur,** "that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc."

cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs quae

---

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misereō**, pity +**cor**, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.

1. scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *tr.*, write, record *or* make mention *in writing.* 1.

3. cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **coniūnctus**, joined together], all together, all. 1.

4. ēgregiē, *adv.* [**ēgregius**, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.

5. rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. 1.

acclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**ad**+**clīvus**, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.

8. duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [**duo**, two+**plicō**, fold], twofold, double. 2.

9. pondus, -eris, *n.* [cf. **pendō**, weigh], weight. 1.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. 2.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. 3.

10. prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor**, be born], born; descended, sprung. 1.

---

11. iussit, imperāvit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. *iubeō* regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; *imperō*, the dative with *ut* and the subjunctive.

Chap. **29-33.** Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.

Chap. **29.** The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. suprā: in **16, 7.**

cum venīrent, "while coming."

omnibus cōpiīs: ablative of manner. Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to say that the Atuatuci came in company with themselves.

4. oppidum: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.

5. quod cum, "although this town."

ex . . . partibus, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. ducentōrum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying *aditus.* The comparative *minus* has no effect on the construction; cf. note on *mīlia,* **16, 2.**

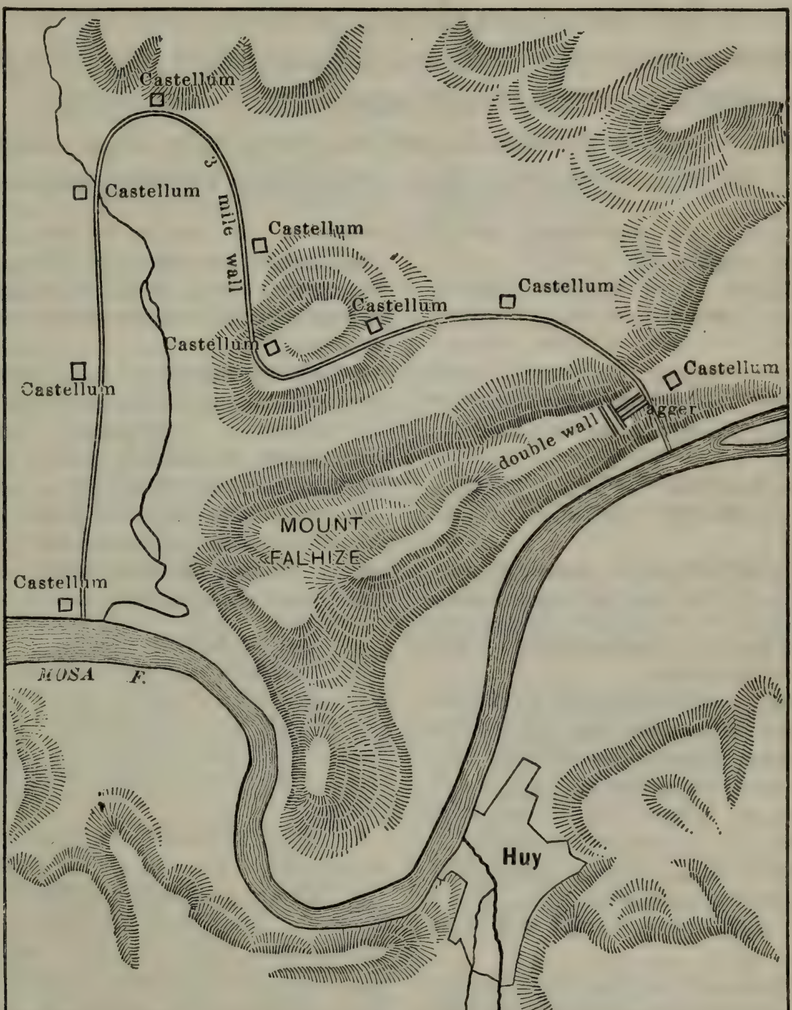
8. duplicī mūrō: see plan, p. 207.

tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. Cimbrīs Teutonīsque: cf. Int. 27.

sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum

13. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs,** guard], custody, guard (*state of being guarded*); *pl.*, guards, keepers. 2.



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for *impedīmentīs* here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . relīquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."

ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

---

14. **obitus, -ūs,** *m.* [**obeō**, go to *death*], destruction. 1.

15. **exagitō,** 1, *tr.* [**agitō**, *freq. of* **agō**, drive], drive out *or* away; disturb, harass. 2.

aliās, *adv.* [**alius**, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; **aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another. 4.

17. **domicilium, -lī,** *n.* [**domus**, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

2. **excursiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**excurrō**, run forth], a running out *or* forth, sally, sortie. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **parvus**, little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvulī**, children. 1.

4. **circummūniō,** 4, *tr.* [**mūniō**, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. **exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum,** *tr.* [**struō**, build], build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. **irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum,** *intr.* [**in**+**rīdeō**, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

---

14. **eōrum:** the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. **cum . . . dēfenderent:** some *cum* clauses are best translated by participles; so here, "sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them," lit. "when they . . . warded off war made (on them)."

16. **cōnsēnsū . . . factā,** "peace was made by common consent, and." *eōrum* refers to both the Atuatuci and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatuci at this time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatuci scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

2. **faciēbant,** "kept making"; imperfect of repeated action.

3. **pedum XII:** in height.

XV mīlium: supply *pedum* as a partitive genitive; "(of) 15,000 feet in circumference"; i.e. three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. **oppidō:** ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. **vīneīs, aggere, turrim:** see Int. 61; 62, d. The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case the agger was intended only as a roadway up which to push the tower.

6. **irrīdēre:** on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

---

10. **ex Cimbrīs:** case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, *a*, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

14. **annōs:** case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnfīderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre

---

7. **māchinātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**māchinor,** contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.

quisnam, quidnam, *and* **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,** *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 *and a*), who? which? what? who then? what pray? 1.

8. **tantalus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*dim. of* **tantus,** so great], so small *or* little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.

statūra, -ae, *f.* [**status; stō,** stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.

9. **plērumque,** *adv.* [**plērusque,** the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. 1.

10. **contemptus, -ūs,** *m.* [**contemnō,** despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1.

onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. 4.

2. **inūsitātus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**in-** + **ūsitātus,** usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**speciō,** see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

3. **modus, -ī,** *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modī,** of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō,** *with gen.*, in the character of, like. *

---

7. **a tantō spatiō,** "so far away"; lit. "away by so great a distance," *ā* being used as an adverb. Cf. **7,** 8.

īnstituerētur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 588, II.

quibusnam manibus . . . cōnfīderent, "(asking) by what hands, pray, did they hope?"; indirect discourse for *cōnfīditis*, "do you hope?" For mode see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. **hominēs:** in apposition with the subject of *cōnfīderent;* "especially (as they were) men, etc."

10. **contemptuī est,** "is an object of contempt."

in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. **31.** The Atuatuci propose a conditional surrender.

1. **movērī,** "that it [the tower] moved."

3. **locūtī:** the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. *nōn sē . . . possent* depends on *locūtī;* everything else, on *dīxērunt* (l. 6), "speaking as follows . . . said." But it makes smoother English to translate *locūtī* as *locūtī sunt* and omit *dīxērunt*, "spoke as follows."

---

7. **spatiō:** case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of degree of difference

Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam

---

4. **dīvīnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**dīvus,** divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.

5. **prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

7. **dēprecor,** 1, *tr. and intr.* [**precor,** pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.

9. **dēspoliō,** 1, *tr.* [**spoliō,** strip], deprive. 1.

10. **invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum,** *intr.* [**videō,** see], look askance at; envy. 1.

12. **quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs,** *and* **quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [**quī,** who+**vīs,** you wish], whom *or* what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.

13. **cruciātus, -ūs,** *m.*[**cruciō,** torture; **crux,** cross], torture, torment. *

dominor, 1, *intr.* [**dominus,** master], be master, rule. 1.

---

4. **quī possent,** "since they could," may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, *e*: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. **ūnum,** "one favor"; i.e. *nē . . . dēspoliāret.*

7. **sī statuisset,** "if he should decide." The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. "if you shall have decided."

prō, "in accordance with."

quam audīrent, "of which they kept hearing."

9. **nē dēspoliāret:** the original form was probably *nōlī dēspoliāre;* App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276, *c*; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

sibi: with the adjective *inimīcōs.*

10. **virtūtī:** what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

trāditīs armīs, "if they should, etc."

11. **sibi praestāre,** lit. "it was better for them" = "they preferred."

cāsum, "extremity."

Chap. 32. The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. **cōnsuētūdine:** ablative of accordance.

2. **meritō:** ablative of cause.

---

8. **esse cōnservandōs:** construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

9. **sibi:** case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation

Dative of reference

mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iīs quae reti-

---

3. **ariēs, arietis,** *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, *a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head;* brace, buttress. 2.

9. **acervus, -ī,** *m.*, a heap, mass. 1.

10. **adaequō,** 1, *tr.* [**aequō,** make equal], make level with *or* equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

11. **cēlō,** 1, *tr.*, keep covered *or* hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. 2.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō,** be open+**faciō,** make], make *or* throw open, open. 2.

5. **indīligenter,** *adv.* [**indīligēns,** careless], carelessly. 1.

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain,

---

3. **ariēs:** see Int. 62, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. **nisi armīs trāditīs:** cf. **20,** 11, note.

in, "in the case of."

5. **factūrum . . . que imperātūrum,** "he would do . . . and would command" means "he would do . . . ; namely, he would command."

6. **rē,** "answer."

7. **facere:** we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

8. **ante:** i.e. on the side where the Romans were.

9. **aggeris:** the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

11. **portīs patefactīs,** "they opened the gates and."

12. **pāce sunt ūsī,** "remained quiet."

Chap. **33.** The Atuatuci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.

2. **nē quam:** cf. references on **32,** 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. **praesidia,** "the outposts" in the *castella* (**30,** 4) which guarded the Roman wall.

5. **cum:** with both *iīs armīs* and *scūtīs.*

---

5. quam: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

nuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūni-

---

keep; guard, watch; reserve. 2.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. 2.

6. cortex, -icis, *m.*, *f.*, bark. 1.

7. vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. 1.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō**, weave], weave in *or* together. 1.

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent, *made of hides.* 4.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. 1.

9. repente, *adv.* [**repēns**, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ērumpō**, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. *

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō**, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**re**+**frangō**, break], break in *or* open; break, diminish. 1.

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**intrō**, within + **mittō**, send], send *or* let in. 1.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**secō**, cut], cutting; dividing *of captured goods;* booty. 1.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūnus**, one+

---

6. ex . . . intextīs, "made of bark or of osiers woven together."

8. quā: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

11. ignibus, "by signal fires."

12. concursum est, pugnātum est: translate personally.

14. ut pugnārī dēbuit, lit. "as it ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

eōs quī iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōnsisteret, "depended on valor alone."

ad, "about," used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.

versam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns

---

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all *as a mass.* *

19. **vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale + **dō,** give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. **Crassus, -ī,** *m.*, Publius Licinius Crassus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* *

2. **Venetī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vĕn′ē-tī). *

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nĕl′ī). *

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sĭs′mī), *a Gallic people in modern Brittany.* 2.

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō″rī-ō-sŏl′ĭ-tēz). 3.

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū′vĭ-ī). 2.

3. **Aulercī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Aulerci (aw-lēr′sī), *a Gallic people divided into four branches.* (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ĕb″ū-rō-vī′sēz), (Bd); (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nŏm′a-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Branovices (brăn″ō-vī′sēz), *location unknown;* (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī″a-blĭn′tēz), (Bc). 3.

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rĕd′ō-nēz). 1.

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare,** sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; **ōra,** the sea shore. *

4. **diciō, -ōnis,** *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

2. **barbarus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun,* savages, barbarians. *

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

---

19. **iīs quī ēmerant:** slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome.

numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.

1. **legiōne ūnā:** this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. **quae:** agrees in gender with the predicate noun, *cīvitātēs.*

5. **esse redāctās:** they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. **omnī Galliā:** the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. **opīniō,** "impression."

quae incolerent: for mode see note on *quī,* **27,** 2.

Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

---

5. **Īllyricum, -ī,** *n.*, Illyricum (ĭ-lĭr'ĭ-kŭm], Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* 2.

6. **Carnutēs, -um,** *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär'nū-tēz).

Andēs, -ium, *or* **Andī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ăn'dēz) *or* Andi (ăn'dī). 2.

7. **Turonī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū'rō-nī). 1.

10. **supplicātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**supplex,** suppliant], public prayer *to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence* thanksgiving. 2.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [**cernō,** separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3.

---

3. **quī pollicērentur:** a purpose clause.

4. **datūrās:** feminine, because *sē* refers to *nātiōnibus.*

5. **initā proximā aestāte,** "at the beginning of the next summer." At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

6. **in Carnutēs:** with *dēductīs.*

7. **quaeque cīvitātēs** = *et eās cīvitātēs quae.*

8. **in Ītaliam:** i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. **ex,** "in consequence of."

10. **supplicātiō:** a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, "(an honor) which." The antecedent is the preceding clause.

BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britanni, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-öperation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence

supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.





Campaign Map for Book III

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for Book **II**, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

---

1. **Servius, -vī,** *m.*, Servius (sĕr′vĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Servius Sulpicius Galba (sĕr′vĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh′yŭs găl′bạ), *one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins.* *

2. **Nantuātēs, -um,** *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (năn″tū-ā′tēz). 4.

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vĕr′ạ-grī). 3.

3. **Sedūnī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū′nī). 3.

Chap. **1-6.** Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. **1.** Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.

1. cum . . . proficīscerētur: as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. legiōne duodecimā: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii; cf. II, 25.

Nantuātēs, etc.: see the map facing p. 217.

3. mīsit: the pupil should notice carefully Caesar's use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. pertinent: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

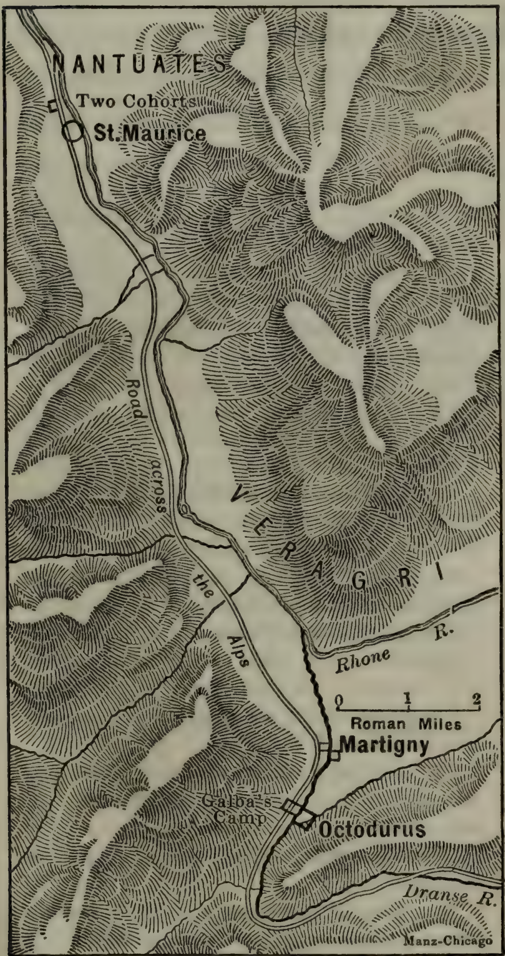
5. fuit: this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

quod volēbat, "that he wished"; a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa.* The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but *describes* something (Caesar's feelings) as *going on* at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect.*

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 42.

quō: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.



GALBA'S CAMP

---

9. aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [**quot,** how many], some, a few, several. 3.

13. Octodūrus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ŏk″tō-dū′rŭs). 1.

14. vallēs, -is, *f.*, vale, valley. 2.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.

19. attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**ad + tribuō,** assign], assign, allot. 2.

---

6. perīculō: from the natives.

portōriīs, "tolls," levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

cōnsuērant: meaning of tense? App. 194, *a*: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis.*

11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. nōn . . . plānitiē, "with a little level ground adjacent."

17. vacuam relictam, "left vacant."

19. eum locum: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

---

6. **renovō**, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**novus**, new], renew. 2.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob**+**premō**, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

8. **plēnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**pleō**, fill], full, whole, complete. 3.

9. **singillātim,** *adv.* [**singulī**, one each], singly, one by one; individually. 1.

10. **paucitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**paucus**, few], fewness, small number. *

13. **abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum,** *tr.* [**trahō**, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. 1.

15. **perpetuus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent,

---

Chap. 2. The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.

2. **eō**: i.e. into the winter quarters.

3. **quam . . . concesserat**: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.

4. **montēs**: the foot-hills, bordering on the valley.

5. **aliquot dē causīs**: these reasons are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, l. 7; (2) *quod exīstimābant*, l. 10; (3) *accēdēbat quod dolēbant*, l. 13; (4) (*accēdēbat quod*) *habēbant*. Note that the imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.

6. **ut caperent**: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. **neque eam plēnissimam,** "and that not at its full strength"; explained by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. **complūribus singillātim,** "many men individually."

11. **cum dēcurrerent et conicerent,** "when they should, etc.," is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down . . . they cannot withstand, etc."

13. **accēdēbat quod,** lit. "there was added that" = "a further reason was that" or "besides."

līberōs abstractōs (*esse*), "that their children, etc."

14. **obsidum nōmine,** lit. "under the name of hostages" = "as hostages."

15. **perpetuae possessiōnis:** **sc.** *causā*.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī

---

lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase* **in perpetuum**, forever. 3.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1.

2. plēnē, *adv.* [**plēnus**, full], fully. 1.

5. exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō**, search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [**sub** + **portō**, carry], carry *or* bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

---

16. fīnitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere* is the object of *habēbant*, and *persuāsum* is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. "they had . . . persuaded to themselves" = "they were persuaded that."

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to defend their camp.

1. opus hībernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, *mūnītiōnēs*.

3. esset prōvīsum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), "that he need have no fear."

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīrī (*posset*), lit. "and it could not be come to their assistance."

10. eius modī, "to this effect."

dīcēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action; App. 191, *a*: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2. H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

maiōrī partī placuit, "the majority determined."

placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex

13. **placeō,** 2, *intr.* [cf. **plācō,** appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good *to one*, *hence*, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**re-** + **servō,** save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

1. **brevis, -e,** *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; **brevī,** in a short time. *

3. **gaesum, -ī,** *n.*, *a heavy iron* javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1.

4. **integer, -gra, -grum,** *adj.*, untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rē integrā,** before anything was done. 3.

5. **frūstrā,** *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. 3.

6. **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque,** *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. *

8. **diūturnitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**diūturnus,** long], long duration. 2.

Chap. **4.** The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.

rēbus . . . administrandīs: the dative of the gerundive is not common.

quās cōnstituissent: a determinative clause; App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. dēcurrere: an historical infinitive. In what case is its subject, *hostēs?* App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute, "while their strength was fresh."

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

7. hōc superārī, quod, "they were overmatched in this, that."

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of repeated action.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, "while none of these things, etc."

10. poterat and **dabātur** are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabātur, "not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man." H. 656, 3; "**Nōn modo** (or **sōlum**) **nōn, sed nē . . . quidem** means *not only not, but not even,* and **nōn modo (sōlum), sed nē . . . quidem,** has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."

pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nerviciō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit

---

11. saucius,-a,-um, *adj.*, wounded. 1.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. 1.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. 1.

5. pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century *of soldiers;* **prīmus pīlus,** first century *of a legion;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *or* **prīmipīlus,** the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of the Nervii. 1.

7. C., *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā'yus). *

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā'yŭs vŏl''ū-sē'nŭs kwa-drā'tŭs), *a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry.* 4.

---

11. excēdendī: gerund or gerundive?

locī relinquendī: gerund or gerundive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction? App. 291, *a*: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, *c*: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba decides on a sortie.

1. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had lasted." The imperfect subjunctive is to be translated on the same principle as is laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, *b*: G.-L. 234: A. 471, *b*: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōrīs: ablative after the comparative, *amplius;* cf. note on *mīlibus*, II, 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, "as our men grew weaker"; ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, "extremity."

quem . . . dīximus: cf. II, 25, 7.

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in this chapter are all historical presents. The historical present narrates a new event in a story just as the perfect does. It may be followed by either the primary or the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In this chapter the dependent subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the principal verbs were perfects.

ūnam . . . sī experīrentur, lit. "told him that there was one hope of safety, if they should try" = "that their only hope of safety was to try."

9. extrēmum auxilium, "their last resource."

experīrentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

10. mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, "he directed the soldiers." This phrase is followed by indirect discourse, as usual; but all the verbs are in the subjunctive mode, because they represent imperatives of the direct form.

paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē in castra mūnītiōnēs-

---

11. **tantummodo,** *adv.*, only. 1.

12. **excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** *tr. and intr.* [**capiō,** take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. *

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**re-** + **faciō,** make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with* **sē,** refresh one's self, rest. 3.

13. **ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** *intr.* [**rumpō,** break], break forth, sally. 1.

2. **colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** *tr.* [**con** + **legō,** gather], gather together, collect; acquire; **sē colligere,** *collect one's self,* rally. 3.

6. **cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum,** *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal,* it is agreed, certain, evident, known. *

9. **fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum,** *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out *or* off, put *or* strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

---

12. **exciperent,** lit. "catch," on their shields = "shield themselves from."

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. **quod iussī sunt faciunt,** "they did as they had been commanded." *iussī sunt* is used instead of a pluperfect, just as *faciunt* is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except *iussī sunt* are in the imperfect or pluperfect.

2. **suī colligendī:** cf. note on **4,** 12.

3. **commūtātā fortūnā:** the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

4. **potiundōrum castrōrum:** how can the intransitive verb *potior* be used in the gerundive construction? App. 289, I, *a*: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, *b*, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coördinate clause.

5. **ex mīlibus XXX** depends on *tertiā parte.* Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. **armīs:** ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.

que suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī

---

12. **meminī, -isse** (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. 1.

15. **dēmoror,** 1, *tr.* [**moror,** delay], hinder, delay. 1.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

3. **hiems, -mis,** *f.*, winter time, winter. *

5. **subitus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**subeō,** come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden.

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.* [**co-** + **orior,** rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

---

10. **quod . . . nōlēbat:** Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. **aliō cōnsiliō,** "with one purpose"; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. **aliīs . . . rēbus,** "that he had met a different state of affairs"; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. **in Nantuātēs:** there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremorican states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chapters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremorican states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.

1. **omnibus dē causīs,** "for every reason"; explained by the ablatives absolute *superātīs . . . Sedūnīs,* which should be translated by causal clauses.

pācātam (*esse*) **Galliam:** this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. **superātīs Belgīs:** cf. II, 1-33.

expulsīs Germānīs: cf. I, 30-54.

victīs Sedūnīs: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. **quod . . . volēbat:** under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque

6. **adulēscēns, -entis,** *m.* [*pres. part. of* **adolēscō,** grow up], youth, young man. 4.

7. **mare, -is,** *n.*, sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean. *

8. **praefectus, -ī,** *m.* [**praeficiō,** place over,] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4.

10. **Terrasidius, -dī,** *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī'tŭs tĕr"ạ-sĭd'ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* 2.

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär'kŭs trē'bĭ-ŭs găl'ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* 2.

11. **Velānius, -nī,** *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwĭn'tŭs vē-lā'-nĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* 2.

Sīlius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī'tŭs sĭl'ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* 2.

2. **ōra, -ae,** *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. 4.

3. **nāvigō,** 1, *intr.* [**nāvis,** ship], set sail, sail. *

4. **nauticus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**nauta,** sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. 3.

5. **vāstus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. 3.

portus, -ūs, *m.* [cf. **porta,** gate], harbor, haven, port. *

7. **vectīgālis, -e,** *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], paying revenue *or* tribute; tributary. 2.

7. **proximus . . . Ōceanum:** i.e. nearer than any other officer. For case see App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 435, 2.

9. **in fīnitimās cīvitātēs:** especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremorican states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorican states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. **huius cīvitātis:** the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. **ōrae:** partitive genitive, depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum: depending on *ōrae*.

quod: belongs with *habent*, l. 2; *antecēdunt*, l. 4; and *habent*, l. 7.

4. **in magnō . . . interiectīs,** "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. **habent vectīgālēs,** "they treat

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī,

---

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. 1.

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. 2.

15. permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through *or* to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

16. mālō, mālle, māluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**magis,** more+**volō,** wish], wish more *or* rather, prefer. 1.

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [**aedēs,** house+**faciō,** make], build, construct. 1.

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the *river* Liger (lī'jēr), *better* the Loire. 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [cf. **rēmus,** oar], oarsman, rower. 1.

---

as tributaries"; i.e. the ship owners paid a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.

ab . . . retinendī, lit. "a beginning is made by these of arresting" = "they began by arresting."

9. fīnitimī: the Esuvii and the Coriosolites.

10. ut, "as," almost "since."

12. commūnī cōnsiliō, "by common agreement."

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), "that they would do."

14. ut permanēre quam perferre mālint, "to prefer to remain (rather) than to endure."

15. accēperint: implied indirect discourse.

18. sī velit, remittat: the direct form was *sī vīs, remitte.*

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, "was too far off," to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 64.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing p. 217, notice that there are three towns along the Liger, connected by a line of march. These were the winter quarters of the army, and no doubt ships were built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not competent oarsmen, for their ships were managed by sails, not oars; otherwise oarsmen might have been secured from the friendly maritime states, the Andes and the Pictones.

īnstituī, "to be procured."

nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās

---

4. **nauta, -ae,** *m.* [*for* **nāvita; nāvis,** ship], sailor. 1.

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.* steersman, pilot. 1.

7. **facinus, -noris,** *n.* [**faciō,** do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

9. **sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum,** *tr.* [cf. **sacer,** sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable, established. 2.

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+violātus,** injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. 1.

13. **nāvigātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**nāvigō,** sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. 3.

14. **īnscientia, -ae,** *f.* [**īnsciēns,** ignorant], ignorance. 3.

19. **īnsula, -ae,** *f.*, island. *

---

5. **cum prīmum . . . potuit:** probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 557, *a*.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 217), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. **quantum . . . admīsissent,** "how great a crime they had committed"; an indirect question.

8. **lēgātōs retentōs** (*esse*), "(namely), that envoys had been arrested," explains *facinus;* syntactically it is indirect discourse after *intellegēbant.*

quod nōmen, "a name which"; i.e. *lēgātōs.*

10. **prō,** "in proportion to."

12. **hōc:** ablative of cause, explained by *quod . . . cōnfīdēbant.*

nātūrā: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. **pedestria itinera,** "land routes."

14. **impedītam** (*esse*), "was difficult."

15. **neque posse cōnfīdēbant,** "and they trusted that . . . would not be able."

16. **iam,** "even."

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, *a*: H.-B. 532, 2, *b*: H. 586, II.

17. **sē posse,** sc. *sciēbant.*

18. **facultātem,** "supply."

19. **locōrum,** depends on *vada,* etc.

nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque

---

20. **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum,** *tr.*, learn, become acquainted *or* familiar with; **nōvī,** *pf.*, have learned, *hence*, know; **nōtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. 4.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** close], shut up; **conclūsum mare,** an inland sea. 1.

23. **Venetia, -ae,** *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'-shya), *the country of the Veneti.* 1.

25. **Lexoviī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lĕk-sō'vĭ-ī). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (năm'nē-tēz). 1.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ăm''bĭ-lĭ'a-tī). 1.

26. **Diablintēs, -um,** *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī''a-blĭn'tēz). 1.

3. **rebelliō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**rebellō,** renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. **dēfectiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**dēficiō,** fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1.

5. **neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** *tr.* [**neg-+legō,** choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

7. **mōbiliter,** *adv.* [**mōbilis,** mov-

---

20. **aliam esse atque,** "was different from (what it was)."

in conclūso marī: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. **in Venetiam:** probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 232.

prīmum: the adverb.

25. **Ambiliatōs:** their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. **suprā:** in chap. 9.

2. **multa,** "many considerations."

3. **iniūria . . . equitum,** lit. "the outrage of knights arrested" = "the outrage of arresting knights."

5. **nē,** "the fear that." This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa.*

hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, "that the same course was open to them."

6. **cum:** causal.

7. **rēbus:** what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,

---

able], readily, easily. 1.

excitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō**, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). 3.

9. **cōnspīrō**, 1, *intr.* [**spīrō**, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.

10. **partior**, 4, *tr.* [**pars**, part], part, share, divide. 1.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribuō**, assign], assign, divide, distribute. 3.

3. **officium, -cī**, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre**, *or* **permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. *

---

8. **autem**, "moreover."

9. **cōnspīrārent:** translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 1.

10. **partiendum** (*esse*) **sibi**, lit. "must be divided by him" = "he must divide." Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

lātius distribuendum: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. **11.** Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.

2. **flūminī:** what other case may *proximus* govern? See note on **7**, 7.

mittit: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all started from Angers. See map facing p. 217.

mandat adeat: note the primary sequence after the historical present; cf. note on *accurrunt*, **5**, 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgae in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

4. **arcessītī:** sc. *esse*.

5. **cōnentur** is a part of Caesar's instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But *dīcēbantur* is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

6. **cohortibus legiōnāriīs:** Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.

7. **in Galliam:** i.e. Celtic Gaul.

Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXIIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis

---

10. D., *abbr. for praenomen* **Decimus** (dĕs'ĭ-mŭs). 1.

11. Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dĕs'ĭ-mŭs jū'nĭ-ŭs bru̥'tŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony.* 2.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. *

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ccd), the Pictones (pĭk'tō-nēz). 1.

1. situs, -ūs, *m.* [**sinō,** put down], situation, site, position. 1.

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [**lingua,** tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [**prōmineō,** project], promontory, headland. 1.

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; **minuente aestū,** at ebb tide. *

bis, *num. adv.* [*for* **duis,** *from* **duo,** two], twice. 3.

5. afflīctō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afflīgō,** strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2.

6. quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. 1.

---

10. quī . . . cūret, "to see that that force be kept away." For the construction of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

11. classī, nāvibus: indirect objects of the compound verb *praeficit*. The fleet had probably assembled in the Liger, near its mouth.

14. eō: i.e. *in Venetōs*. He probably moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described in this chapter, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar two legions and eight cohorts with which to attack the Veneti.

cōpiīs: why may *cum* be omitted? App. 140, *a*: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, *a*: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Chap. 12-16. Caesar crushes the Veneti.

Chap. 12. Situation of the towns of the Veneti.

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the small plan in the lower left hand corner of the map on p. 232.

extrēmīs, "the end of."

2. pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."

4. nāvibus. sc. *aditum habērent*.

5. in vadīs afflīctārentur, "were stranded on the shallows." The subjunctive is due to attraction.

6. sī quandō . . . coeperant, . . . dēportābant, "whenever they began

forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habē-

---

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [**trūdō,** thrust], thrust *or* shut out. 1.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**ad+pellō,** drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

. . they would carry off, etc." *dēportābant* is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. *coeperant* is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. extrūsō . . . adaequātīs: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

aggere ac mōlibus: ablatives of means.

8. fortūnīs: indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. cuius reī: i.e. ships.

bant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitūdinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trāns-

---

10. **dēportō,** 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry off *or* away. 1.

11. **opportūnitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**opportūnus,** fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; *with* **locī,** favorable situation *or* position; *with* **temporis,** favorable opportunity. 3.

13. **tempestās, -tātis,** *f.* [**tempus,** time], time, season; weather, *usually* bad weather, storm, tempest. *

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. 1.

14. **rārus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. 1.

1. **namque,** *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. 3.

2. **carīna, -ae,** *f.*, keel. 1.

aliquantō, *adv.* [**aliquantus,** some], somewhat, a little. 1.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, flat, plain. 2.

3. **dēcessus, -ūs,** *m.* [**dēcēdō,** depart], departure; ebb, fall (*of the tide*). 1.

4. **prōra, -ae,** *f.*, prow. 1.

admodum, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *up to the measure;* very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. 1.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō,** direct], lift *or* raise; **ērēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. 1.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern *of a ship.* 2.

5. **flūctus, -ūs,** *m.* [**fluō,** flow], flood, billow, wave. 3.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accommodō,** adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. 2.

6. **rōbur, -oris,** *n.*, oak. 1.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam, thwart. 1.

---

12. **partem:** duration of time.

13. **summa** agrees with *difficultās.*

vāstō . . . portibus: ablatives absolute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships of the Veneti.

1. **namque** introduces the reason for the ability of the enemy's ships to operate while the Roman ships were helpless.

2. **carīnae . . . nāvium,** "the bottoms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc." In such cases Latin never inserts a word for "those."

3. **quō:** when is *quō* used in purpose clauses?

excipere, "meet," "encounter." They were less likely to strike bottom, and if stranded they would not heel over.

5. **tōtae,** "entirely."

6. **ex rōbore:** construction? App. 136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 406, 4: H. 470.

quamvīs: accusative of *quīvīs.*

trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in

tra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

---

7. **pedālis, -e,** *adj.* [**pēs,** foot], of a foot *in thickness or diameter.* 1.

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], fasten. 1.

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. 1.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum,** iron], of iron, iron. 2.

8. **digitus, -ī,** *m.*, finger; *as measure of length,* a finger's breadth, *the 16th part of a Roman foot;* **digitus pollex,** the thumb. 1.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, *with or without* **digitus.** 1.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**crassus,** thick], thickness. 1.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; **in ancorīs,** at anchor. *.

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. 3.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. 3.

9. **revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum,** *tr.* [**re-+vinciō,** bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. 3.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. 1.

tenuiter, *adv.* [**tenuis,** thin], thinly. 1.

10. **līnum, -ī,** *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. 1.

11. **similis, -e,** *adj.*, like, similar. 1.

12. **ventus, -ī,** *m.*, wind. *

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. 1.

14. **congressus, -ūs,** *m.*, [**congredior,** meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1.

15. **pulsus, -ūs,** *m.* [**pellō,** strike], stroke. 1.

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4.

16. **aptus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. 1.

---

across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and helped them to withstand the Roman *rōstra* (l. 17). In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. **in altitūdinem,** "in thickness."

8. **crassitūdine:** this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, "instead of."

9. **pellēs . . . cōnfectae,** "skins and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails."

11. **quod:** explaining *eō.*

12. **tanta onera nāvium,** "such heavy ships."

13. **nōn satis commodē,** "not very well."

14. **classī:** dative of possessor.

ūnā celeritāte, "only in speed."

15. **pulsū rēmōrum,** "in rowing"; i.e. "in having oars." In the battle which followed the fact that the Roman ships had oars was an immense advantage.

reliqua, "all other things."

prō "in view of."

16. **illīs:** the ships of the enemy.

iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōn-

---

17. **rōstrum, -ī,** *n.* [**rōdō,** gnaw, consume], beak *of a bird;* beak or prow *of a ship.* 2.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns,** *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. 4.

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**firmus,** strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.

19. **cōpula, -ae,** *f.*, grappling-hook. 1.

20. **saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum,** *intr.* [**saevus,** raging], rage; be fierce. 1.

21. **tūtō,** *adv.* [**tūtus,** safe], safely, securely. 2.

22. **cautēs, -is,** *f.*, reef. 1.

23. **extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī,** ——, *tr.* [**timēscō,** *incept. of* **timeō,** fear], dread. 1.

3. **reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum,** *tr.* [**re-+premō,** press], press *or* keep back, check, restrain. 1.

5. **genus, -eris,** *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

6. **ōrnō, 1,** *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

---

17. **nostrae:** sc. *nāvēs.*

18. **adigēbātur,** "could be thrown."

19. **cōpulīs:** see Int. 64.

accēdēbat ut et ferrent et cōnsisterent et timērent, "there was the additional advantage that they weathered, etc.," or simply, "besides, they weathered, etc."

20. **sē ventō dedissent,** "ran before the wind."

21. **cōnsisterent,** "came to anchor."

22. **relictae,** "when left."

quārum rērum cāsus, "the danger of these things."

23. **nāvibus:** dative of the agent.

Chap. **14.** The naval battle. The Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. **expugnātīs:** by the method described in chap. **12.**

2. **neque . . . posse,** "and that they could not be injured." What is the literal translation? App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

6. **armōrum,** "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostrīs: sc. *nāvibus.*

cōnstitērunt, "took their position": from *cōnsistō.* See the map on p. **232.**

stitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adduc-

---

14. praeparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō**, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (*for pulling down walls*). 2.

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1.

affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**ad** + **fīgō**, fix], fasten to. 1.

15. longurius, -rī, *m.* [**longus**, long], a long pole. 2.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis**, like], unlike. 1.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. 1.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**mūrus**, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum**, mural javelin, *a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall.* 1.

16. antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*upright*). 1.

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō**, (**prēndō**), seize], grasp *or* lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). 2.

---

7. Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of *cōnstābat*.

9. quid . . . īnsisterent, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4.

10. rōstrō: ablative of means.

nocērī: sc. *nāvibus hostium*; cf. references on *neque . . . posse*, l. 2.

turribus excitātīs, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space.

11. ex, "on."

12. neque . . . et = *et* (both) *nōn . . . et.* In translating, omit the first *et.*

13. missa, "those thrown."

erat magnō ūsuī, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day.

15. longuriīs: dative with *īnsertae* and *affīxae.*

nōn . . . falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks."

hīs . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell.

hīs: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsī erant: mode? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4. For the

tīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

---

17. **nāvigium, -gī,** *n.* [**nāvigō,** sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**rumpō,** break], break off, tear away; **praeruptus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. 1.

18. **abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut *or* lop off, tear off *or* away. 1.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall down, fall. 1.

19. **armāmenta, -ōrum,** *n.* [**armō,** arm], implements, gear; tackle *or* rigging *of a ship*. 2.

21. **certāmen, -inis,** *n.* [**certō,** strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

23. **factum, -ī,** *n.* [*pf. part. of* **faciō,** *half noun, half participle*], act, exploit, deed. 1.

25. **dēspectus, -ūs,** *m.* [**dēspiciō,** look down upon], *a looking down*, view. 1.

1. **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *distrib. num. adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.

2. **ternī, -ae, -a,** *distr. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], three each, three apiece. 1.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *tr.* [**sistō,** stand], flock *or* rally around, surround, hem in. *

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb over; board. 1.

---

tenses cf. note on **sī quandō . . . dēportābant, 12,** 6.

17. **quibus:** i.e. *fūnibus.*

18. **cum:** causal.

19. **nāvibus,** "of the ships"; a dative of reference modifying the whole clause, where a genitive might have been used instead; cf. *Caesarī,* I, **31,** 4.

22. **in cōnspectū,** etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 232.

23. **paulō fortius,** "a little braver than usual."

Chap. **15.** Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. **cum circumsteterant:** for mode see note on *cum comprehēnsī erant,* **14,** 15.

singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. **quod, eī reī:** both refer to the statement in the first sentence, *cum . . . contendēbant.*

Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā

---

7. **malacia, -ae,** *f.*, a calm *at sea.* 1. **tranquillitās, -tātis,** *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand *or* come forth, appear, arise; ensue. 1.

9. **cōnsector,** 1, *tr.* [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4.

10. **interventus, -ūs,** *m.* [**interveniō,** come between], coming; aid. 1.

11. **terra, -ae,** *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) *and* **orbis terrārum,** the world. 3.

usque, *adv.* (1) *of place,* all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time,* up to, till; *with* **ad,** until. 3.

2. **iuventūs, -ūtis,** *f.* [**iuvenis,** young], period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years;* the youth, the young men. 1.

3. **dignitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**dignus,** worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

4. **ubīque,** *adv.* [**ubi,** where], anywhere, everywhere. 1.

8. **vindicō,** 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. 1.

---

6. **in . . . ferēbat,** "in that direction toward which the wind was blowing."

9. **singulās,** "one by one."

11. **cum pugnārētur,** "when the battle had been going on." For this translation of the imperfect see note on *cum pugnārētur,* **5,** 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. **cum . . . tum,** "not only . . . but also."

3. **in quibus . . . fuit,** "who had any ability to advise or any rank."

eō: to the seat of war.

4. **nāvium . . . fuerat,** "whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere."

5. **quibus,** refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on *quid . . . īnsisterent,* **14,** 9.

7. **eō gravius, quō,** lit. "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc."

barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē

---

10. necō, 1, *tr.* [**nex,** death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēndere,** sell at auction. 1.

3. Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix vī-rĭd′ō-vĭks), *a chief of the Venelli.* 4.

6. Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lĕr′sī ĕb″ū-rō-vī′sēz). 1.

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [**augeō,** increase], one who produces, creates, *or* originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author: **auctor esse,** advise. 1.

8. praetereā, *adv.* [**praeter,** beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give over, ruin; **perditus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

10. agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [**ager,** land +**colō,** cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.

---

10 reliquōs: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatuci (II, **33**, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. dum geruntur: for mode and tense, see App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

Sabīnus: see **11**, 8.

5. hīs paucīs diēbus, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. nōlēbant: the senators.

8. undique ex Galliā, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremorican states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-continued war had unsettled everything.

11. idōneō . . . tenēbat, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablatives: *rēbus* is an ablative of specification: *locō* is an ablative of place, App.

tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum

---

13. **prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with* **cōpiās,** arrange, draw up. *

14. **contemptiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**contemnō,** despise], disdain, contempt. 1.

15. **carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum,** *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. 1.

18. **absēns, -entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum** be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.

19. **aequus, -a, -um,** *adj.* even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; **aequus animus,** equanimity, composure. 3.

2. **callidus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, shrewd. 1.

3. **praemium, -mī,** *n.*, distinction, prize, reward *

pollicitātiō, -ōnis *f.*, [**polliceor,** promise], promise, offer. 2.

4. **ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum,** *tr.* [**doceō,** teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 1.

7. **clam,** *adv.*, secretly. 3.

151, *b*: *castrīs* appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means, App. 151, *c*.

12. **cum,** "although."

mīlium: sc. *passuum.*

spatiō: ablative of degree of difference; lit. "opposite by a distance, etc."

14. **hostibus:** dative of reference.

18. **eō absente,** "in the absence of the man"; i.e. Caesar.

20. **lēgātō:** dative of the agent with *dīmicandum (esse)*; "that a legate ought to fight."

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.

2. **Gallum,** "a Gaul."

ex iīs, "(one) of those."

5. **prō perfugā,** "pretending to be a deserter."

6. **docet** has as objects the two substantive clauses *quibus . . . premātur* (indirect question) and *abesse,* etc. (indirect discourse).

neque . . . nocte, lit. "and that it was not farther off but that on the next night," = "and that no later than the next night."

ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūnctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

---

9. conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [**clāmō,** cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. 2.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occidō,** fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1.

bene, *adv.* [**bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, **melius;** *sup.*, **optimē.** 2.

12. cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūnctor,** delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnfirmō,** assert], assurance. 1.

13. parum, *adv.* [**parvus,** little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetian. 2.

14. libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1.

explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **explōrō,** search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1.

18. sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. 1.

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. 1.

19. pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [**per + regō,** keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

---

9. negōtī . . . gerendī, "of winning a victory."

10. īrī oportēre, "(but) that they must go."

11. superiōrum diērum, "during the preceding days."

13. spēs . . . bellī, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc." The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. quod . . . crēdunt: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with *rēs*, l. 11.

15. prius quam . . . concessum, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, **17, 6,** no doubt helped the council to yield. Mode? App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, *b*, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, *c*: H. 605, I.

17. ut . . . victōriā, "as if victory were assured."

18. quibus . . . compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. ab īmō, "from the bottom."

quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam per-

---

7. **dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**dēfatīgō,** weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.

8. **exercitātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**exercitō,** *freq. of* **exerceō,** exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

9. **tergum, -ī,** *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** to flee; **post tergum** *or* **ab tergō,** in the rear. *

10. **vertō, vertere, vertī, versum,** *tr.*, turn, turn around; **terga vertere,** flee. *

12. **ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** *intr.* [**vādō,** go], escape. 1.

13. **nāvālis, -e,** *adj.* [**nāvis,** ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1.

15. **alacer, -cris, -cre,** *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. 2.

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. 1.

16. **mollis, -e,** *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. 1.

17. **mēns, mentis,** *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque,** minds and hearts; **aliēnātā mente,** bereft of reason. 4.

---

3. **quam . . . spatī,** "the least possible time."

5. **cupientibus,** lit. "to them desiring," = "as they eagerly awaited it."

6. **onera:** the bundles of brush; **18,** 18.

7. **factum est opportūnitāte,** "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The subject of *factum est* is *ut . . . verterent.*

8. **mīlitum:** the Romans.

9. **ac,** "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause follows a negative one; English usually says "but."

11. **equitēs:** nominative.

13. **Sabīnus:** sc. *certior factus est.*

14. **Titūriō:** Titurius Sabinus.

15. **ut . . . sīc,** "while . . . yet."

16. **animus,** "impulse."

17. **mēns,** "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

1. **Crassus:** read **11,** 5-8, and see map facing p. 217.

vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sotiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

---

4. **Praecōnīnus, -ī,** *m.*, Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū′shyŭs va̤-lē′rĭ-ŭs prĕk″ō-nī′nŭs), *a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time.* 1.

5. **Manlius, -lī,** *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū′shyŭs măn′lĭ-ŭs), *proconsul in* 78 B.C. 1.

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, *one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province.* 1.

6. **mediocris, -cre,** *adj.* [**medius,** the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

8. **Tolōsa, -ae,** *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō′sa̤), *now* Toulouse. 1.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär′ka̤-sō). 1.

9. **Narbō, -ōnis,** *m.* (Ee), Narbo (när′bō), *now* Narbonne. 1.

10. **ēvocō, 1,** *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call forth *or* out, summon; **ēvocātus,** *pf. part. as noun*, reënlisted veteran. 3.

Sotiātēs, -um, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō″shĭ-ā′tēz). 4.

15. **convallis, -is,** *f.* [**vallis,** valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.

---

2. **ante:** see I, 1, 2.

3. **paucīs annīs:** twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79, B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.

6. **nōn mediocrem,** "unusual."

8. **virīs:** ablative absolute with *ēvocātīs.* These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

Tolōsā: place from which, with *ēvocātīs.*

9. **cīvitātēs,** "cities." *fīnitimae* agrees with it.

hīs regiōnibus: Aquitania. The dative depends on *fīnitimae.*

12. **quō:** ablative of specification.

13. **prīmum:** the adverb.

16. **disiectōs,** "while scattered," in pursuit of the cavalry.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propterēā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs,

---

2. **frētus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, relying upon. 1.

4. **adulēscentulus, -ī,** *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns,** youth], a very young man. 1.

9. **cunīculus, -ī,** *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1.

11. **aerāria, -ae,** *f.* [**aes,** copper], copper mine. 1.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [**secō,** cut], cutting; shaft, mine. 1.

12. **prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. 2.

1. **intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum,** *tr.* [**tendō,** stretch], stretch out *or* to; **intentus,** *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. 3.

Chap. 21. Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.

1. **superiōribus victōriīs:** those mentioned in 20, 4-5. Case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, *a*: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 432: H. 476, 1.

3. **quid . . . possent:** subject of *perspicī.*

imperātōre, "commander-in-chief."

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. **adulēscentulō duce:** ablative absolute.

5. **cuperent:** like *putārent,* with *cum,* l. 1.

6. **ex itinere:** as in II, 12, 4.

8. **aliās:** the adverb.

9. **cunīculīs āctīs,** "having driven tunnels." They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

cuius reī, "an art in which." Case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. **dīligentiā:** ablative of cause. The Romans may have dug countermines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. **faciunt,** "they did so."

Chap. 22. The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.

1. **rem:** the surrender of the arms.

aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs (quōs illī solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium

---

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā″dī-a-tŭn′ŭs), *the leader of the Sotiates.* 2.

3. dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [**voveō**, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus,** *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. 2.

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. 1.

4. commodum, -ī, *n.* [**commodus,** convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. 1.

7. adhūc, *adv.* [**hūc**, hither], hitherto, as yet. 1.

8. recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; *with* **perīculum,** shrink from. *

10. vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

1. Vocātēs, -um, *m.* (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā′tēz). 2.

---

3. quōrum . . . condiciō, ut fruantur, "whose position is this, that they enjoy."

4. ut . . . fruantur . . . ferant . . . cōnscīscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodīs: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

ūnā: the adverb.

5. quōrum . . . dēdiderint: a determining clause, App. 231. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

sī . . . accidat: the mode is due to the same reason as that of *dēdiderint.* Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, *b*: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoriā: ablative of time within which.

quisquam: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. devōvisset: cf. note on *quōrum . . . dēdiderint*, l. 5.

recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum hīs: this simply repeats *cum DC dēvōtīs*, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, "nevertheless"; i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. eādem: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.

1. in fīnēs, etc.: see map facing p. 217.

et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūnctandum exīstimāvit quīn

---

2. **Tarusātēs, -ium,** *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tăr″ū-sā′tēz). 2.

4. **quōqueversus,** *adv.*, in every direction, all around. 1.

10. **Sertōrius, -rī,** *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwĭn′tŭs sēr-tō′rĭ-ŭs) *a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C.* 1.

15. **dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw apart; separate, divide. 1.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō,** sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2.

18. **cūnctor,** 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2.

---

3. **oppidum:** subject of *expugnātum* (*esse*).

paucīs . . . erat, lit. "within the few days within which it had been come there." = "within a few days after his arrival."

7. **citeriōris Hispāniae:** Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

fīnitimae agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquītāniae.*

8. **auctōritāte,** "assurance."

10. **ducēs,** "as commanders."

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. **cōnsuētūdine:** ablative of accordance.

loca capere, "to choose suitable positions."

14. **quod,** "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun.

15. **nōn facile dīdūcī,** "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through *augērī*, depend on *animadvertit.*

18. **nōn . . . dēcertāret,** "he thought he must not delay to fight a de

pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs con-

---

3. **etsī,** *conj.* [**et** + **sī**, if], even if, although. *

8. **cōgitō,** 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co** + **agitō**, consider], consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

---

cisive battle."

On the *quīn* clause, see App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

19. **cōnsilium,** "a council of war."

20. **pugnae:** dative.

Chap. 24. Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.

1. **duplicī aciē:** The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line.

2. **auxiliīs . . . coniectīs:** the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. **sē . . . dīmicātūrōs,** "that it would be safe to fight."

5. **tūtius esse,** "that it was still safer."

obsessīs . . . interclūsō, "by blocking . . . and cutting off."

7. **coepissent:** indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. **impedītōs:** both by their heavy baggage (*impedīmenta*) and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. **suā** refers to the subject, ***hostēs.***

11. **opīniōne,** lit. "impression" which they gave, = "appearance."

13. **exspectārī . . . oportēre,** "that they ought not to delay longer."

quīn . . . īrētur: cf. 23, 18, note.

14. **omnibus cupientibus,** "to the delight of all."

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.

1. **coniectīs,** "by throwing."

iectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs

---

2. **dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive from *or* away, ward off. 1.

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [**auxilium,** aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun,* auxiliary troops. 1.

4. **subministrō, 1,** *tr.* [**ministrō,** wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.

caespes, -itis, *m.,* a sod, turf. 1.

6. **timidē,** *adv.* [**timidus,** fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

8. **circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *tr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* march around, traverse, visit. 1.

4. **intrītus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**in-**+ **trītus,** worn], unwearied. 1.

5. **circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw around. 2.

7. **prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum,** *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], overthrow. 1.

---

3. **quibus:** the dative, since with *cōnfīdō* the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, *a*) of things.

4. **subministrandīs:** to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, "for an agger." The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. **ex locō superiōre:** the top of the rampart.

8. **circumitīs castrīs,** "having ridden around the camp."

9. **ab,** "at."

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.

1. **cohortātus ut excitārent,** "urging . . . to stimulate."

4. **intrītae ab labōre,** "not worn out by fighting." *ab labōre* is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, "roundabout."

7. **dīximus:** in **25, 9.**

prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

---

8. **plānē**, *adv.* [**plānus**, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.
11. **impugnō**, 1, *tr.* [**in + pugnō**, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.
14. **campus, -ī**, *m.*, plain, open space *or* country. 1.
15. **Cantabrī, -ōrum**, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'ta-brī). 1.
2. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *
Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tär-bĕl'ī). 1.
3. **Bigerriōnēs, -um**, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jĕr″ĭ-ō'nēz *or* bī″jĕ-rī-ō'nēz). 1.
Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā'nĭ-ī). 1.
Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ĕl″ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1.
4. **Auscī, -ōrum**, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci aw'sī). 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (ga-rŭm'nī). 1.
Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sĭb″ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kŏk″ō-sā'tēz). 1.

---

8. **prius . . . quam:** see App. 236, *c*.
vidērī: supply *possent* from *posset*.
9. **quid reī gererētur**, "what was going on"; subject of *posset*.
10. **nostrī:** i.e. those who were attacking in front.
quod, "a thing which." The antecedent is *redintegrātīs vīribus*.
12. **per**, "over."
14. **campīs:** ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.
ex . . . numerō depends on *quārtā parte*.
15. **quae** (*mīlia*) **convēnisse** is the subject of the impersonal *cōnstābat*, "who were known to have gathered."
16. **multā nocte**, "late at night."

Chap. **27.** Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.

4. **paucae ultimae nātiōnēs**, "only a few tribes, the most remote"; probably those living among the Pyrenees.
5. **tempore:** cf. note on *quibus*, **25**, 3.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

---

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* [**ultrā**, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant *or* remote; *as noun*, those in the rear. 2.

1. **exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum,** *tr.* [**agō**, drive], finish, pass. 1.

3. **umquam,** *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never, never. 2.

8. **continēns, -entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **contineō**, hold together], *holding together;* continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun*, mainland, continent. *

11. **dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum,** *tr.* [**spargō**, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

12. **ēvolō,** 1, *intr.* [**volō**, fly], fly *or* rush forth. 1.

15. **dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum,** *tr.* [**perdō**, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

1. **exācta**, "past"; the participle used as an adjective.

2. **omnī Galliā**: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, **1**, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

3. **quī essent, mīsissent**: a clause of characteristic.

5. **eō**, "against them."

exercitum: on his march from the Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.

quī, "but they."

ac, "than" or "from"; cf. *aliam atque*, **9**, 20.

7. **contendissent**: the mode is due only to indirect discourse.

9. **initium**, "edge."

11. **dispersīs nostrīs**: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, **19** and **20**.

13. **complūribus**: of the enemy.

14. **longius**, "too far."

impedītiōribus, "very difficult."

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

---

1. deinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. 1.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*, cut; kill, slay. 2.

2. imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in-** + **prūdēns,** prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. 1.

3. māteria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. 4.

6. pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; *usually* small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2.

9. continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**continuus,** continuous], continuance, succession. 1.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. **nē quis impetus,** "that no attack."

inermibus . . . mīlitibus: ablative absolute.

4. **conversam ad hostem,** "with their tops turned toward the enemy."

prō vāllō, "to serve as a rampart." Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. **cōnfectō,** lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. **ipsī:** the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. **sub pellibus:** in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (**I, 31**), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against

the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book **III**, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.



Campaign Map for Book IV

LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsē-

---

1. Cn., *abbr.* for **Gnaeus** (nē'ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1.

Pompēius, -ī, *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ŭs pŏm-pē'yŭs), *better,* Pompey, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in* 60 B.C., *defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy,* 48 B.C. 1.

2. Usipetēs, -um, *m.,* the Usipetes (ū-sĭp'ē-tēz). 4.

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Tencteri (tĕngk'tē-rī). 4.

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.,* of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun,* **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bī), *a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. *

8. quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** as many as+**annus,** year], every year, yearly. 2.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.,* remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

Chap. **1-4.** Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. **1.** Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with *annus,* though its antecedent is *hieme*; cf. *quod,* I, **38,** 3, note.

quī . . . cōnsulibus, "in the year when, etc."

Cn. Pompēiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.

runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs

---

10. vicis, *gen.* (*no nom.*), change; *only in the adv. phrase* **in vicem,** alternately, in turn. 1.

11. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**re-** + **maneō,** remain], stay *or* remain behind, remain. *

12. sēparō, 1, *tr.* [**sē-** + **parō,** prepare], prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. 1.

14. colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.

15. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. 1.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live; subsist on. 2.

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**vēnor,** hunt], hunting, the chase. 1.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 1.

17. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [**discō,** learn], learning; discipline; instruction, system. 2.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. 2.

19. immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. 1.

20. frīgidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. 1.

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [**vestiō,** clothe] clothing. 1.

---

10. illōs: i.e. those who are fighting.

annō post, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."

12. ratiō atque ūsus, "the [theoretical] training and practice in."

prīvātī . . . est: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.

14. frūmentō, "on grain"; ablative of means with *vīvunt.*

maximam partem: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, *a*: B. 185, 1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus, "are devoted to hunting."

16. quae res, "a practice which"; subject of *alit* and *efficit.*

17. quod . . faciunt explains *lībertāte.*

ā puerīs, "from boyhood."

nūllō officiō assuēfactī, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.

19. hominēs: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."

in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom," = "have trained themselves to such hardiness."

20. locīs frīgidissimīs, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.

vestītūs depends on *quicquam.* On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs

---

22. **lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum,** *tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1.

3. **dēsīderō,** 1. *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. 1.

4. **impēnsus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, expensive; *with* **pretium,** great. 1.

5. **dēfōrmis, -e,** *adj.* [**fōrma,** form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.

7. **dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum,** *intr.* [**saliō,** leap], leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. *

8. **vēstīgium, -gī,** *n.* [**vēstīgō,** trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.

10. **turpis, -e,** *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [**in-+ars,** skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1.

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

---

21. **habērent, lavārentur:** translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here *addūxērunt*) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.

1. **mercātōribus:** dative of possessor.

eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have."

cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

2. **quibus vēndant:** a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of *quibus* and the object of *habeant.*

quam quō dēsīderent, "than because they desire." *Nōn quō* with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In this sentence *magis quam* takes the place of *nōn.* The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."

3. **iūmentīs importātīs nōn ūtuntur:** the important word is the participle *importātīs*, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."

4. **quaeque** = *et quae.*

6. **haec:** antecedent of *quae* (*iūmenta*).

summī . . . efficiunt, lit. "make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor." See App. 104.

7. **pedibus,** "on foot."

9. **eōrum mōribus,** "according to their standards."

10. **habētur,** "is considered."

ephippiīs: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.

ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn

---

11. **ephippiātus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**ephippium,** saddle], using a saddle. 1.

12. **quamvīs,** *adv.* [**quam,** as+**vīs,** you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.

13. **remollēscō, -mollēscere, ——, ——,** *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. 1.

1. **laus, laudis,** *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

5. **Ubiī, -ōrum,** *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bĭ-ī). *

6. **flōrēns, -entis,** *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [**capiō,** take], comprehension, ideas. 1.

7. **hūmānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**homō,** man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. 1.

8. **ventitō, 1,** *intr.* [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2.

11. **amplitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**amplus,** large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [**gravis,** heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1.

---

12. **quamvīs paucī,** "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vīnum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 3. Their treatment of the Ubii.

1. **pūblicē,** "for the state."

2. **vacāre agrōs:** subject of *esse.*

3. **ūnā ex parte:** i.e. on the east of the Suebi.

4. **sescenta:** this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.

5. **ad alteram partem:** i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.

6. **paulō:** with *hūmāniōrēs.*

10. **cum,** "although."

multīs . . . expertī, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."

potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāvērunt, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs

---

12. humilis, -e, *adj.* [**humus,** the ground], *on the ground;* low, humble, abject, weak. 1.

13. īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **firmus,** strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.

3. Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jĕr-mā'nĭ-a), *better*, Germany, *the country east of the Rhine.* 1.

4. triennium, -nī, *n.* [**trēs,** three + **annus,** year], three years. 1.

7. dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** move, migrate], move from *or* away, emigrate, remove. 2.

11. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō,** sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.

simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis,** like], make like; pretend. 2.

13. īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō,** know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1.

15. metus, -ūs, *m.* [**metuō,** fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; **metū territāre,** terrify; **hōc metū = metū huius reī,** from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.

1. in eādem causā, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi.

2. suprā: in 1, 2.

6. multitūdinis: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. trāns: on the German side.

habuerant: before the arrival of the Germans.

9. vī contendere, "force a passage."

10. inopiam nāvium: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

13. equitātū: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the *means* employed by the Germans.

vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

---

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [**re-**+**migrō,** move], move back, return. 2.

1. īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [**īnfirmus,** not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**moveō,** move], changeable. 1.

4. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [**via,** road], traveler. 1.

8. prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with* **sententia,** pronounce. 1.

audītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**audiō,** hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.

10. paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, ——, *tr., impers.,* it causes regret; makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb,* repent (App. 109). 1.

necesse, *indecl. adj.,* necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**certus,** decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. 2.

11. serviō, 4, *intr.* [**servus,** slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1.

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictum, *tr.,* form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

---

19. eōrum cōpiīs, "on their supplies"; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . . . committendum, "that no confidence should be placed in them."

4. cōnsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

utī: with *cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat,* and *cōgat.*

7. quāsque = *et quās.*

8. rēbus, "stories."

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, lit. "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, *b*: B. 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. plērīque . . . respondeant, "give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs, invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat.

---

2. **mātūrē,** *adv.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3

3. **suspicor,** 1, *tr.* [**suspiciō,** suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

4. **invītō,** 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

9. **dissimulō,** 1, *tr.* [**simulō,** make like], disguise, conceal. 1.

10. **permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum,** *tr.* [**mulceō,** soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1.

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. **ad exercitum:** where was it? See III, **29,** 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. **ea facta** (*esse*), "that those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

5. **ab Rhēnō discēderent:** i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. **fore parāta,** lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, *parātum īrī* The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in *invītātōs.*

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. **quī** refers only to *Condrūsōrum.*

10. **permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs:** Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. **cōnstituit,** "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. **dēlēctīs,** "having levied."

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

---

8. **ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], cast *or* drive out, expel; cast up; **sē ēicere,** rush out, sally. 2.

9. **ūtilis, -e,** *adj.* [**ūtor,** use], useful, serviceable. 1.

11. **possīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum,** *tr.*, take possession of, seize. 1.

3. **tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum,** *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. 1.

---

3. **ā quibus:** the Germans.

4. **haec,** "as follows." The haughty tone of the speech recalls the speeches of Divico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

priōrēs, "first"; i.e. they were not the aggressors.

5. **recūsāre quīn,** "refuse to"; App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.

7. **quīcumque** = *omnibus* (dative with *resistere*) *quī*.

8. **haec tamen dīcere,** "this, however, they would say."

10. **attribuant:** the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.

11. **ūnīs,** "alone."

12. **reliquum nēminem,** "no one else."

13. **quem possint:** a clause of characteristic.

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic land, but offers to let them settle among the Ubii.

1. **quae vīsum est,** "what seemed best." *quae* is the object of *respondēre*, to be supplied from *respondit*.

exitus, "the conclusion."

3. **vērum,** "right," "just."

quī: supply *eōs* as the antecedent.

7. **Suēbōrum iniūriīs,** "the wrongs done them by the Suebi."

8. **hoc:** i.e. that they allow the Usipetes and the Tencteri to settle among

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

---

3. **propius,** *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope**, near], nearer. *

5. **frūmentor,** 1, *intr.* [**frūmentum,** grain], get grain, forage. 4.

6. **Ambivaritī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ăm″bĭ-văr′ĭ-tī). 1.

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the *river* Mosa (mō′sa), *now* the Meuse *or* Maas. *

7. **interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere,** pledge. 4.

1. **prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——,** *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow forth, rise. 1.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vŏs′ē-gŭs), *better,* the Vosges Mountains. 1.

3. **Vacalus, -ī,** *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (văk′a-lŭs) *river, now* the Waal. 1.

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (ba-tā′vī). 1.

---

them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. **post diem tertium,** "on the third day"; i.e. the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

3. **propius sē:** App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B, 380, *b*: H. 420, 5.

5. **diēbus:** ablative of degree of difference.

6. **trāns:** to the west.

exspectārī equitēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is quite possible that the envoys were honest in asking time to consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.

1. **ex monte Vosegō:** more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. **parte quādam,** etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. **inde:** from the confluence.

Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia

---

5. **Lepontiī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pŏn'shyī). 1.

6. **Mediomatricī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē″dĭ-ō-măt'rĭ-sī). 1.

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb'ō-sī). 2.

7. **citātus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **citō,** put in motion], swift. 1.

8. **diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——,** *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

10. **piscis, -is,** *m.*, fish. 1.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. 1.

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1.

---

5. **longō spatiō,** "in a long course."

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

8. **īnsulīs effectīs,** "making islands."

10. **sunt quī,** "there are some who," is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.

Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubii. Caesar grants a short truce.

2. **ut erat cōnstitūtum:** translate after *ad . . . revertuntur.* See 9, 2.

5. **antecessissent:** implied indirect discourse.

6. **quōrum sī,** "and if their."

7. **fēcisset:** for the future perfect of the direct form.

8. **eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs,** "that they would accept the terms"; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubii.

9. **trīduī spatium:** this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubii were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubii, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.

Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossīs equīs complūribusque nostrīs dē-

10. **illō**, *adv.* [*old dat. of* **ille**], thither, to that place, there (= thither). 1.

12. **aquātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**aqua**, water], getting water. 1.

13. **frequēns, -entis,** *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. 2.

14. **postulātum, -ī,** *n.* [**postulō**, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

17. **quoad,** *adv.* [**quō**, whither+**ad**, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. 2.

3. **octingentī, -ae, -a,** *card. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eight hundred. 1.

6. **indūtiae, -ārum,** *f.*, truce. 2.

8. **suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum,** *tr.* [**sub**+**fodiō**, dig], dig under; stab underneath. 1.

10. **eōdem illō pertinēre,** "tended to that same object." See **9**, 6, and note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request for time to consult the Ubii was perfectly natural, for they could not know whether the Ubii would respect Caesar's command (**8**, 8).

13. **hūc**: i.e. to the camping ground.

14. **convenīrent**: see *daret*, l. 9. note.

15. **quī nūntiārent,** "men to give orders."

17. **sustinērent:** i.e. they were simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry treacherously attack and rout Caesar's cavalry.

1. **ubi prīmum,** "as soon as."

3. **equitēs**: why not the ablative after the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, *b*. For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5,000, compare **2**, 11.

quī ierant: cf. **9**, 5.

6. **impetū factō**: this attack cannot have been authorized by the German leaders. They certainly wanted a truce, whatever their motives may have been, and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was not important enough to tempt them to break it. Either the German cavalry had failed to receive orders, or it could not resist the delight of attacking a despised foe.

7. **cōnsuētūdine**: cf. **2**, 7.

iectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum īnfirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē

---

12. **septuāgintā** (LXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**septem**, seven], seventy. 1.

13. **Pīsō, -ōnis**, *m.*, Piso (pī'sō), *an Aquitanian.* 1.

5. **dēmentia, -ae**, *f.* [**mēns**, mind], madness, folly. 1.

9. **quaestor, -ōris**, *m.* [**quaerō**, seek], a quaestor (kwĕs'tôr), *one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army.* 3.

commūnicō, 1, *tr.* [**commūnis**, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. 1.

---

9. **ita . . . ēgērunt**, "drove them back in such a panic."

10. **prius quam vēnissent**: the subjunctive is probably due to attraction, but may be explained by App. 236, *b*.

13. **genere**: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395: A. 403, *a*: B. 215: H.-B. 413: H. 469, 2.

15. **interclūsō**: translate by a relative clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on vengeance and detains the German leaders, who have come to apologize.

1. **neque iam**, "no longer."

4. **exspectāre**: subject of *esse*.

dum augērentur: App. 235, *b*.

5. **summae . . . esse**, "was (an act) of the utmost folly."

6. **quantum auctōritātis**, "what prestige."

9. **quaestōre**: see Int. 39.

nē . . . praetermitteret, "not to let any opportunity for battle go by."

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī,

---

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1.

11. māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. 1.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [**perfidus,** faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. 2.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō,** make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. 1.

---

11. quod, "(namely) that."

13. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. suī pūrgandī causā, "to excuse themselves." Construction? App. 291, *a*: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, *c*: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

contrā atque, "contrary to what."

15. ut . . . impetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."

16. quōs oblātōs (*esse*), "that they had come into his power."

17. retinērī: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, **9**, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. **14.** Caesar surprises the German camp.

1. aciē . . . īnstitūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, *b*.

et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū-

---

6. **-ne,** *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213, *a*); *in indirect questions*, whether; **-ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,** whether . . . or. 2.

adversus, *prep. w. acc.* [**adversus,** turned against], opposite to, against. 1.

an, *conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions*, or, or rather. *

9. **irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** *tr.* [**in+rumpō,** break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. 1.

13. **passim,** *adv.*, in all directions. 1.

2. **abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw away *or* down; hurl. 2.

3. **cōnfluēns, -entis,** *f.* [**cōnfluō,** flow together], a flowing together, confluence. 1.

5. **praecipitō,** 1, *tr.* [**praeceps,** headlong], throw *or* hurl headlong, precipitate. 1.

---

4. **et . . . et,** "both . . . and."

suōrum: i.e. their leaders, who had been detained by Caesar.

5. **perturbantur -ne praestāret,** "were in great confusion, (not knowing) whether it was better." On the kind of question see App. 214; 264, *c*.

9. **quī:** sc. *iī* as antecedent.

14. **cōnsectandōs:** the beginning of the next chapter shows that the object was massacre, not the taking of prisoners.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed and slaughtered.

3. **Rhēnī:** i.e. the Vacalus; see *parte quādam*, 10, 2, note.

4. **reliquā,** "further."

5. **reliquī periērunt:** some must have escaped. At any rate in later years there were Usipetes and Tencteri living east of the Rhine, not far from this battlefield. But they may be accounted for by the escape of the cavalry.

dine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs

---

6. **pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed *or* killed, perish. 2.

1. **Germānicus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**Germānus,** German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

2. **iūstus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with* **fūnera,** appropriate. 4.

10. **Sugambrī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-găm'brī). 4.

---

6. **oppressī,** "overwhelmed."
ad ūnum, "to a man."

7. **ex,** "after," "relieved of."

9. **discēdendī . . . fēcit:** if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. **lībertātem,** "permission" to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tencteri; they would tempt fortune no more.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

2. **iūstissima,** "most valid," "strongest."

3. **quod . . . voluit:** in apposition with *illa.*

4. **suīs . . . rēbus,** "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually follows its noun; why does it here precede?

cum intellegerent, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. **accessit etiam quod,** lit. "there was added also the fact that," = "moreover," "and besides."

7. **suprā:** see 9, 5.

cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum

---

13. fīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīnis,** limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond *or* across the Rhine; *pl. as noun,* **Trānsrhēnānī,** the people across the Rhine. 1.

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occupō,** seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. 2.

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry across *or* over, bring over, convey, transport. *

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.* Ariovistus (ā″rī-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* *

---

12. (*ut*) **dēderent:** object of *postulārent.*

13. sē refers to the subject of *exīstimāret,* not to the speaker; so *suī,* l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mode? App. 268, III; 210, *a.*

suī . . . Rhēnum, "that anything across the Rhine belong to (lit. "be of") his authority or control."

17. obsidēs dederant: see II, 35, 5, note.

ōrābant, "kept begging." The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 8, 7.

19. occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae, "affairs of state."

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as *ferret,* l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, "for the future."

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in *ōrābant.*

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē ut secundum nātūram

---

5. **rapiditās, -tātis,** *f.* **[rapidus,** swift], swiftness. 1.

8. **tignum, -ī,** *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. 2.

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* **[sēsqui,** one and a half+**pēs,** foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.

10. **immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** *tr.* **[in+mittō,** send], send *or* let into, insert; send against, direct towards *or* against; **trabibus immissīs,** beams being let in. 2.

11. **dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum,** *tr.* **[fīgō,** fix], fix *or* fasten down, drive in, plant. 1.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. 1.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. 2.

dērēctē, *adv.* **[dērēctus,** straight], straight. 1.

12. **perpendiculum, -ī,** *n.*, plummet, plumb line. 1.

prōnē, *adv.* **[prōnus,** inclined], sloping downwards. 1.

fastīgātē, *adv.* **[fastīgātus,** sloping], sloping. 1.

---

3. **neque suae . . . statuēbat,** "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." *dignitatis* is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. **summa prōpōnēbātur,** "presented itself as very great."

5. **lātitūdinem:** the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. **id contendendum,** "that he ought to make the effort."

8. **bīna,** "two." The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a, a.*

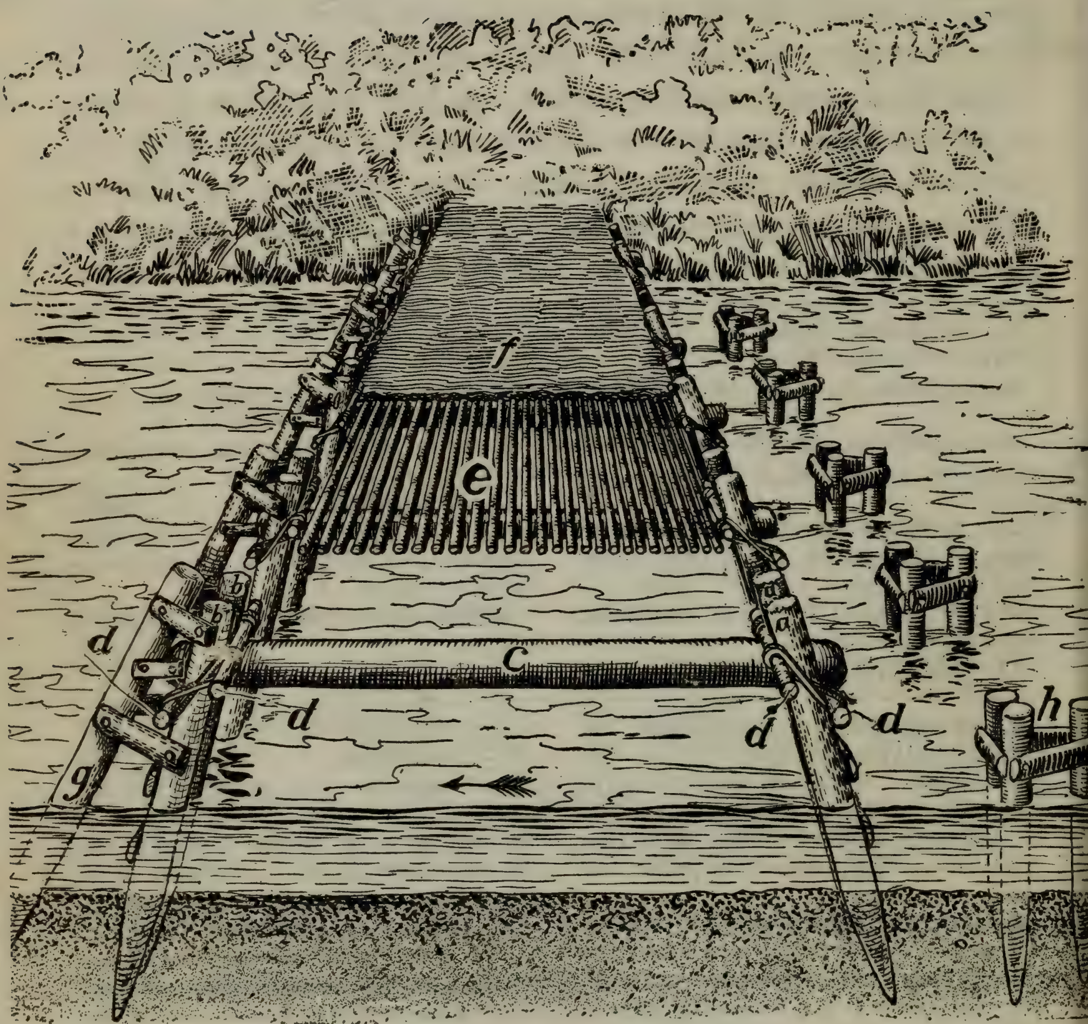
dīmēnsa ad, "measured according to"; i.e. they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed.

9. **intervāllō . . . iungēbat,** "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet between them." See plan and the pile-driver, p. 273. *Intervāllō* is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. **haec . . . dēfīxerat,** "when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there." They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. *dēfīxerat:* mode? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

11. **nōn . . . perpendiculum,** "not vertically, like a pile"; i.e. as piles are usually driven.

12. **ut . . . prōcumberent:** i.e. sloping down-stream.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, *a*, tigna bīna, l. 8.
b, *b*, iīs contrāria duo (tigna), l. 13.
c, bipedālis trabs, l. 16.
d, *d*, *d*, *d*, fībulae, l. 17.
e, dērēcta māteria, l. 21.
f, longuriī crātēsque, l. 22.
g, sublica oblīquē ācta, l. 23.
h, aliae (sublicae) suprā pontem, l. 25.

flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque, īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab

---

14. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quadrāgintā,** forty], forty each. 1.

16. īnsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], above, on the top, from above. 1.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**bis,** twice+**pēs,** foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.

17. iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [**iungō,** join], joining. 1.

distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand apart; be apart, removed *or* separated. 1.

utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque,** each *of*

---

13. iīs . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (*ab īnferiōre parte*), but sloping against the current. See plan, *b*, *b*.

duo: we should expect *bīna*, as in l. 8.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, *e*: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, *d*: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

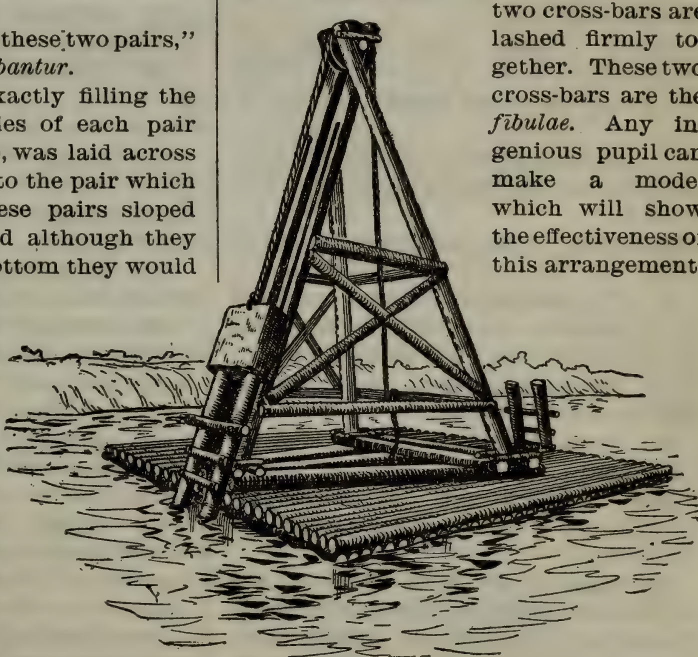
The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haec utraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of *distinebantur*.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, *c*). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinēbantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fībulae*) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. "as much as the joining of the timbers stood apart." *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. fībulīs: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (*d*, *d*) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the *fībulae.* Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.



PILE-DRIVER

extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā

---

two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

fībula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; brace, fastening. 1.

18. **disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** *tr.* [**claudō**, shut], shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate. 1.

20. **aqua, -ae,** *f.*, water. 2.

artē, *adv.* [**artus**, close], closely, firmly. 1.

21. **illigō, 1,** *tr.* [**ligō**, bind], attach, hold *or* bind together. 1.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dērigō**, put in line], straight. 1.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], throw into *or* upon; put *or* place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō**, weave], weave *or* bind together, connect. 1.

22. **crātēs, -is,** *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*). 1.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [**sternō**, strew], strew over, cover over. 2.

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

23. **oblīquē,** *adv.* [**oblīquus**, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. 1.

26. **truncus, -ī,** *m.*, trunk *of trees*. 1.

---

18. **quibus** refers to *fībulīs.* It is in the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and *revīnctīs*.

disclūsīs: by the cross-beam and the piles.

in . . . revīnctīs, "bound together in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. **ea rērum nātūra**, "such was the nature of the structure."

20. **incitāvisset** is subjunctive by attraction.

hōc . . . tenērentur, "the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together."

21. **haec** refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a trestle-bent. There were probably between fifty and sixty such trestle-bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one cross-beam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (*dērēctā māteriā*). Plan, *e*.

22. **nihilō sētius**: i.e. although the bridge was already very strong.

23. **et** is correlative with *et* in l. 25.

oblīquē: i.e. they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, *g*.

24. **quae prō ariete subiectae exciperent**, "which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc."

25. **aliae**: sc. *sublicae agēbantur.* There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (*h*) suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of measure of difference with *suprā*.

essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tēncterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās

---

9. **exportō,** 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry out *or* away. 1.

10. **sōlitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**sōlus,** alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1.

2. **succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** *tr.* [**sub+caedō,** cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2.

4. **posteāquam,** *adv.* [**posteā,** afterwards+**quam,** than], after. 4.

---

27. **essent missae** is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. **neu:** why not *neque*?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambri.

1. **diēbus decem quibus,** lit. "within ten days within which," = "within ten days after"; cf. *paucīs diēbus quibus*, III, 23, 3.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, *a*.

5. **quibus petentibus:** translate by a clause, "and when they, etc."

7. **hortantibus iīs,** lit. "those urging," = "on the advice of those."

8. **quōs . . . habēbant:** i.e. the cavalry, **16,** 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, **15,** 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.

3. **sī premerentur:** implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. **nūntiōs dīmīsisse utī,** "had sent messengers (urging) that."

9. **hunc . . . ferē,** "that this place had been chosen almost in the middle."

Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē

---

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place; (*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this time. 1.

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō,** blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.

līberō, 1, *tr.* [**līber,** free], make *or* set free, release, deliver. 2.

16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**ūtilis,** useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.

1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.

8. incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**cognitus,** known; **cognōscō,** learn], unknown. 2.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

---

10. hīc, ibi: both words refer to the same place.

12. iīs rēbus: explained by the substantive volitive (*ut*) clauses which follow.

13. ut . . . iniceret: cf. note at the end of chap. 15.

16. prōfectum: notice the *ō*; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: "although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early."

4. hostibus nostrīs: indirect object of *subministrāta.*

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. magnō . . . fore, "it would be of great advantage to him."

sī adīsset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognita: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4,19, we learn that a king of the Suessi-

praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

---

5. **trāiectus, -ūs,** *m.* [**trāiciō,** hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.

9. **Britannus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brĭ-tăn′ī); *better*, the Britons. 1.

11. **obtemperō,** 1, *intr.* [**temperō,** rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

---

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, **13**, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

9. **illō:** the adverb.

hīs ipsīs: the traders; dative with *nōtum.*

11. **vocātīs mercātōribus,** "although he summoned, etc."

12. **neque,** etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on *reperīre.*

Chap. **21.** Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.

2. **Volusēnum:** either the subject of *esse* or the object of *praemittit*; supply *eum* in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, **5, 7**; he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. **hūc:** at a harbor among the Morini. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.

10. **quī polliceantur:** a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, *sē datūrōs esse.*

remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

---

13. Commius, -mī, *m.*, Commius (kŏm'ĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Atrebates.* 3.

15. fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs,** faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.

3. excūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** reason], give reason for; excuse. 1.

4. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+ **perītus,** experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

6. opportūnē, *adv.* [**opportūnus,** fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1

---

13. Atrebātibus superātīs: in the battle with the Nervii, II, **23.**

14. ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates.

15. sibi fidēlem: but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says *arbitrābātur.*

16. in hīs regiōnibus: i.e. in Belgium.

magnī: genitive of value.

18. fidem sequantur, lit. "follow the protection (of)," = "surrender (to)."

sē: i.e. Caesar.

19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. "(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man," = "as much as a man could."

20. quī . . . audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.

3. cōnsiliō, "behavior"; see III, **28.**

hominēs: in apposition with the omitted subject; "being barbarians."

4. cōnsuētūdinis: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.

5. fēcissent, imperāsset: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.

que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contractīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem

9. **antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before; prefer. 1.

12. **onerārius, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**onus,** burden], fitted for burdens; *with* **nāvis,** transport, freight ship. *

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.

16. **quōminus,** *conj.* [**quō,** so that + **minus,** not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

20. **Sulpicius, -cī,** *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh'yŭs ru̥'fŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* 1.

1. **nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum,** *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum,** *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* **nāvēs,** weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.

9. **hās . . . occupātiōnēs,** "engaging in such trivial matters."

12. **coāctīs contractīsque,** "having levied and brought together."

13. **quod . . . habēbat,** lit. "whatever of ships of war he had besides," = "the ships which he had."

15. **hūc accēdēbant,** lit. "there were added to this number," = "he had in addition."

ā . . . octō, "eight miles [away]." If the chief harbor was Wissant, the smaller was Sangatte, east of Wissant.

16. **tenēbantur quōminus possent,** "were kept from being able": App. 228, *c*.

18. **exercitum dūcendum dedit:** construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. **idōneam tempestātem:** a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. **tertiā vigiliā:** just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been

portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō

---

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.

4. tardē, *adv.* [**tardus,** slow], slowly; *comp.* **tardius,** too slowly. 1.

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.

7. angustē, *adv.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.

8. lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3.

9. nēquāquam, *adv.* [**nē+quāquam,** in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. 1.

īnstabilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-+stabilis,** firm], not firm, unsteady. 1.

15. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [**moveō,** move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō,** nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum,** at one's nod *or* command. 2.

---

drawn up on the sandy beach, and in embarking.

4. tardius, "too late." The wind changed and delayed them for three days.

hōra quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: probably at or near Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs.

7. haec, "such."

10. dum convenīrent: mode? App. 235, *b*.

ad hōram nōnam: somewhere near 3 P.M.

11. in ancorīs, "at anchor."

13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seamanship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. ut quae habērent, lit. "as (things) which have," = "since it has to do with"; a causal relative clause, App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, *e*, n. 1: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523, *b*: H. 592, 1.

15. (*ut*) **administrārentur:** the object of *monuit*.

ad tempus, "on the instant."

16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibly

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior,

---

2. **essedārius, -rī,** *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 1.

6. **ignōtus,-a, -um,** *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; **nōscō,** know], unknown, unfamiliar. 1.

9. **āridus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. 3.

10. **membrum, -ī,** *n.*, member of the body, limb. 1.

11. **īnsuēfactus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [suēscō, become accustomed +**faciō,** make] accustomed, trained. 1.

13. **alacritās, -tātis,** *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening current.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to prevent the landing.

2. **quō genere,** "a kind of troops which."

5. **nisi . . . pōterant,** "could be stationed only in deep water."

6. **mīlitibus:** dative of the agent with *dēsiliendum,* etc., *erat.*

ignōtīs . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

7. **oppressīs,** "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with *mīlitibus.*

8. **cōnsistendum,** "keep their footing."

9. **cum illī,** "while the enemy."

12. **nōn ūtēbantur,** "did not display."

13. **quō** agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. **inūsitātior,** "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were

paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa sub-

---

4. funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. 1.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. 1.

6. figūra, -ae, *f.* [**fingō,** form], form, shape, figure. 1.

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard *(as the* **aquila** *was the chief standard of the legion)*. 3.

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [**testor,** witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1.

fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happily, fortunately. 1.

11. ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], turn out, result. 1.

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation,* say. 1.

commīlitō, -ōnis, *m.* [**mīles,** soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1.

12. certē, *adv.* [**certus,** certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf. *oblique cases of* **ego**], my, mine, my own. 1.

15. dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [**decus,** honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.

2. firmiter, *adv.* [**firmus,** strong], firmly. 1

---

more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expedītior, lit. "whose motion was freer for use," = "which were more easily managed."

4. latus apertum, "the right flank," which was unprotected by shields.

9. quī, "the man who."

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate I, 6, facing p. 27.

13. praestiterō: note the force of the tense. "(whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty."

15. inter sē, "one another."

16. ex proximīs nāvibus, "those who were in the nearest ships."

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter īnsistere, "get a firm footing."

signa subsequī: i.e. keep their formation by cohorts.

sequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta

---

4. **aggregō,** 1, *tr.* [**ad+grex,** flock], *unite in a flock;* assemble; join, attach. 1.

9. **scapha, -ae,** *f.*, skiff, boat. 1.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**speculātor,** spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1.

10. **labōrō,** 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.

6. **ōrātor, -ōris,** *m.* [**ōrō,** speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1.

---

3. **alius . . . nāvī,** "men from different ships."

quibuscumque . . . aggregābat, "gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon"; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, **21,** 13.

5. **ubi cōnspexerant:** the pluperfect instead of the usual perfect with *ubi*, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.

7. **plūrēs,** "several" of the enemy.

in ūniversōs, "upon the main body."

9. **scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia:** these boats could be rowed into shallow water.

11. **simul** = *simul atque.*

13. **neque,** "but . . . not."

longius, "very far."

14. **capere,** "reach." See note on *tardius*, **23,** 4.

hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. **27.** The Britons sue for peace.

3. **datūrōs, factūrōs sēsē:** the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on *dare*, **21,** 10.

4. **suprā:** see **21,** 13.

6. **cum,** "although."

modō, "in the capacity of," "as."

dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est

---

8. **culpa, -ae,** *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. 1.

9. **imprūdentia, -ae,** *f.* [**imprūdēns,** imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight *or* forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 2.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [**in-**+(**g**)**nōscēns,** knowing; **nōscō**], forgive, pardon. 3.

13. **longinquus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**longus,** long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

16. **commendō,** 1, *tr.* [**mandō,** entrust], entrust; surrender. 1.

3. **lēnis, -e,** *adj.*, gentle, mild, smooth. 1.

---

8. **eius reī:** the treatment of Commius.

9. **ut ignōscerētur,** "that they be pardoned." In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, *d*.

10. **cum lēgātīs missīs petīssent,** "after they had sent hostages and begged"; see **21,** 10.

14. **arcessītam,** "for whom they had sent."

15. **in agrōs,** "to their farms."

Chap. **28-31.** A storm turns back Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him.

Chap. **28.** The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

1. **post . . . quam** = *diē quārtō postquam.* When *postquam* is divided, *post* is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . than." Here it is a preposition. The day was August 30th, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

2. **suprā,** see **22,** 15 and **23,** 4.

6. **aliae, aliae:** the wind must have come from the north or northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter west of Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to return to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Caesar's camp.

propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit; nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod

---

10. **prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum,** *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. 1.

1. **lūna, -ae,** *f.*, the moon. 2.

5. **dēligō,** 1, *tr.* [**ligō,** bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

6. **auxilior,** 1, *intr.* [**auxilium,** aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 1.

7. **frangō frangere, frēgī, frāctum,** *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

9. **perturbātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [**perturbō,** disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. 1.

10. **reportō,** 1, *tr.* [**re-+portō,** carry], carry *or* bring back, convey. 1.

---

8. **occāsum:** for construction see note on *propius sē,* **9,** 3.

9. **cum complērentur,** "since they began to fill."

10. **adversā nocte,** "in the face of the night."

Chap. **29.** The storm and the tide wreck Caesar's fleet.

1. **lūna plēna:** there was a full moon on the night of August 30th. This is what enables us to calculate the day of Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. **aestūs maximōs:** the "spring" tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

nostrīs . . . incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti.

4. **quae . . . dēligātae,** "which were riding at anchor." The transports were heavier than the war-ships and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.

6. **administrandī,** "of managing them."

9. **id quod** or *quae rēs* is commonly used instead of *quod* when the antecedent is a clause.

10. **quibus possent:** a clause of characteristic.

11. **omnia quae erant ūsuī,** "all the things which were needed"; a determining clause. App. 231.

omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubē-

---

8. **reditus, -ūs,** *m.* [**redeō,** return], returning, return. 1.

5. **afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum,** *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. 1.

6. **aes, aeris,** *n.* copper; *anything made of copper*, coin, money; **aes aliēnum,** *another's money*, debt. 1.

---

12. **hiemārī oportēre,** "that they must pass the winter."

13. **in hiemem,** "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

1. **prīncipēs:** subject of *dūxērunt*, l. 6.

5. **hōc,** "on this account."

etiam, "still."

6. **optimum:** predicate adjective with *esse*, the subject being *prohibēre* and *prōdūcere*.

factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. **factā:** translate as an infinitive, coördinate with *prohibēre*.

rem, "operations."

8. **hīs superātīs,** "if these (troops) were overpowered."

Chap. 31. Caesar repairs his fleet.

2. **ex . . . eō,** "from the disaster to his ships and from the fact."

3. **quod accidit,** "which really did happen."

4. **cāsūs,** "emergencies."

5. **quae nāvēs, eārum,** "of those ships which."

6. **aere:** iron was not much used in the construction of ships, because it rusts.

bat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

---

5. **pulvis, -eris,** *m.*, dust. 1.
10. **cōnfestim,** *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. 1.
14. **dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum,** *tr.* [**metō**, reap], mow, reap. 1.
15. **dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī,** ——, *intr.* [**latēscō**, *incept. of* **lateō**, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. 1.
16. **metō, metere, messuī, messum,** *tr.*, mow, reap. 1.
18. **essedum, -ī,** *n.*, *a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons.* 2.

---

8. **summō studiō:** the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.
9. **reliquīs . . . effēcit,** lit. "made that it could be sailed by the rest," = "made the others fit to sail in."

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. **frūmentātum:** App. 295.
3. **interpositā,** "having arisen."
in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly engaged in labor on the farms near the camp.
6. **quam . . . ferret,** "than usual."
7. **id quod erat,** "what was really the case"; explained by the clause *aliquid . . . cōnsilī,* "that some new plan had been entered upon."
8. **cohortēs:** probably four, one at each gate.
10. **succēdere,** "to take their places."
armārī, "to arm themselves."
14. **ūna,** "only one."
17. **incertīs ōrdinibus:** owing to

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tem-

---

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

2. perequitō, 1, *intr.* [**equitō,** ride], ride about, ride through *or* around. 1.

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1.

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop *or* squadron *of about thirty cavalrymen.* 1.

īnsinuō, 1, *tr.* [**sinuō,** wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1.

5. aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. 1.

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2.

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [**recipiō,** receive, retreat; refuge, shelter. 1.

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**stabilis,** firm], firmness, steadiness. 1.

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [**modus,** limit], manage, govern, control, guide. 1.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. 1.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon*). 1.

percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run along *or* over. 1.

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, **citius;** *sup.*, **citissimē.** 1.

1. novitās, -tātis, *f.* [**novus,** new], newness; strangeness, novelty. 1.

---

the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle.

2. equōrum, "caused by the horses."

4. equitum turmās : the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description ; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated.

6. illī: the warriors, who had alighted.

7. expedītum receptum, "a ready retreat."

8. praestant, "display."

10. ac, "and even."

incitātōs, "when at full speed."

sustinēre, "to check"; depending on *cōnsuērint.*

brevī, "quickly."

11. per, "along."

iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp.

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostrīs: indirect object of *tulit. perturbātīs* agrees with it.

novitāte, "because of the strangeness."

pore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et

---

8. **continuus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**contineō,** hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

11. **praedicō,** 1, *tr.* [**dicō,** proclaim], proclaim publicly *or* before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

12. **praeda, -ae,** *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. 2.

14. **peditātus, -ūs,** *m.* [**pedes,** foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1.

3. **effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī,** ——, *tr. and intr.* [**ex+fugiō,** flee], flee from *or* away, escape. 1.

---

5. **aliēnum,** lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." *suō*, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable."

6. **dum haec geruntur,** "in the meantime."

7. **quī . . . reliquī:** mentioned in **32,** 3.

9. **quae continērent:** App. **230,** *a*, examples.

12. **praedae faciendae:** they would have been disappointed, for the Romans had left their baggage in Gaul; **30,** 5.

suī līberandī: see note on *suī pūrgandī*, **13,** 14.

Chap. **35.** The Britons are put to flight.

1. **idem fore, ut,** "that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that."

4. **ante:** in **21,** 14 and **27,** 4.

5. **diūtius,** "very long."

6. **ac,** "but"; for this translation see note on III, **19,** 9.

7. **tantō spatiō quantum . . . po-**

vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe

---

3. **duplicō**, 1, *tr.* [**duplex**, double], double, increase. 1.

4. **aequinoctium, -tī,** *n.* [**aequus,** equal + **nox,** night], the equinox. 1.

9. **īnfrā,** *adv.* [**īnferus,** below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. 1.

2. **trecentī, -ae, -a** (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [**trēs,** three + **centum,** hundred], three hundred. 1.

5. **orbis, -is,** *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world. 1.

---

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." *spatiō* is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, *c*.

Chap. **36.** Caesar returns to Gaul.

2. **hīs**: dative of reference.

3. **eōs . . . iussit**: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

4. **propinquā diē**: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

hiemī . . . subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

8. **quōs reliquae,** "as the rest."

capere, "reach," "make."

et, "but."

9. **īnfrā**: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.

Chap. **37-38.** The Morini revolt and are conquered.

Chap. **37.** The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.

1. **quibus ex nāvibus**: i.e. the two transports.

2. **in castra**: at Wissant.

3. **pācātōs**: see **22,** 1-11.

4. **prīmō**: the adverb.

ita, "so very," "very."

5. **pōnere,** "to lay down."

orbe: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.

factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omninō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

---

3. **siccitās, -tātis,** *f.* [**siccus,** dry], drought, dryness. 1.

4. **perfugium, -gī,** *n.* [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1.

---

6. **hominum:** with *mīlia.*

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

3. **siccitātēs:** translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had nowhere to retreat"; App. 230, *c.*

4. **quō perfugiō erant ūsī,** lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, **28,** 8.

6. **quī . . . dūxerant:** see **22,** 18.

9. **in Belgīs:** in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. **diērum vīgintī supplicātiō:** see note on II, **35,** 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

BOOK V. SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES, NERVII, AND TREVERI

If Caesar accomplished nothing else by his first expedition to Britain, he at least learned that a large force would be needed for its subjugation. Therefore he quartered his army for the winter at suitable places for shipbuilding and gave orders for the construction of a large fleet. On returning from Cisalpine Gaul, early in June, 54 B.C., he found so many new ships constructed that his total fleet amounted to 800 vessels. Giving orders for the concentration of his forces at Port Itius, he hastened off to quiet the Treveri, who threatened to make trouble during his absence. This done, all was in readiness for the voyage; but a northwest wind delayed him twenty-five days.

At last, about July 20, with five legions and 2,000 cavalry, he set sail at sunset. About noon the next day he reached Deal, and landed without opposition. That same night, leaving a guard for the ships, he led his army twelve miles inland to a little stream, on whose farther bank the Britons were drawn up. Quickly driven from this position, the natives took refuge in a well-fortified stronghold near by, only to be routed once more. Here Caesar fortified a camp and spent the night. In the morning the troops had begun the pursuit of the enemy, when Caesar was recalled by the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a storm during the night. Though time was precious, he decided to have the fleet drawn up on the shore and surrounded by a fortification, which was done in ten days. He then returned to the camp from which he had been recalled.

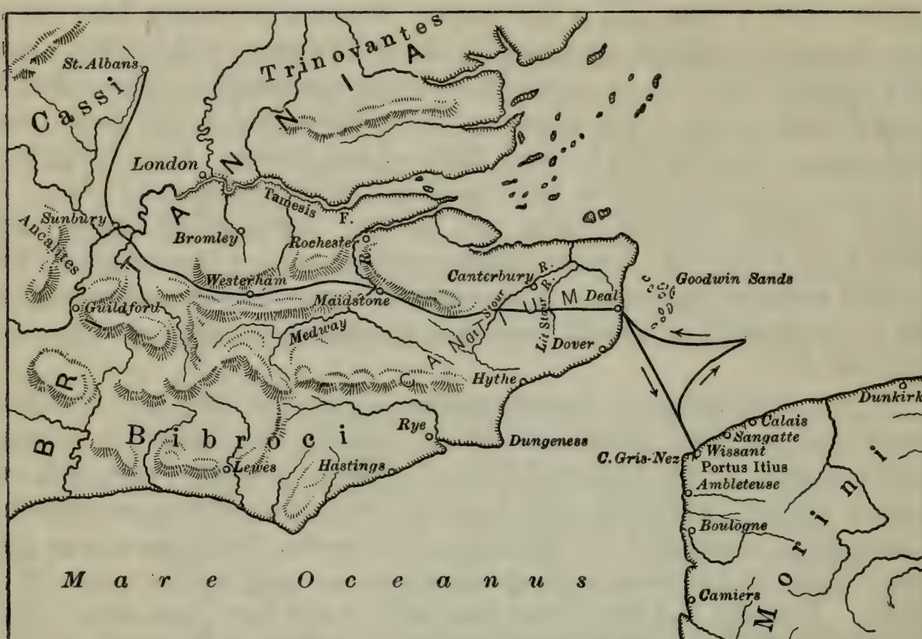
The Britons had made good use of the time. The several tribes had postponed their differences with one another, had united their forces and had given the command to the able and energetic Cassivellaunus. One attempt convinced this leader that no British army could stand against the Romans in regular battle. Henceforth he determined to fight no pitched battle, but to harass Caesar's march, to prevent his foraging, and thus to wear him out. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to put an end to the contest, and marched farther inland. At the Thames the enemy once more tried to make a stand, having obstructed the only ford with stakes; but the Romans would not be stopped. The principal tribes now submitted, and Caesar captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus. The British leader made one more effort: he instigated an attack on the fleet, which resulted disastrously to the Britons. Then he made a nominal submission and Caesar returned to Gaul.

In the fall of this year a blow was struck by the Eburones which inflicted upon Caesar's army the most serious loss of its entire Gallic experience, and which so encouraged the other Gauls that it led to the great general revolt a year and a half later. Because of scanty harvests in Gaul, Caesar distributed his army for the winter more widely than usual, being careful, however, to keep the several detachments within what he thought easy reach of one another. One legion and a half were quartered among the Eburones, under Sabinus and Cotta. Fifty miles west of them, among the Nervii, Quintus Cicero commanded one legion. At a little greater distance, near the Treveri, lay another legion, commanded by Labienus. Other legions were in or near Samarobriva, two hundred miles to the west. In Samarobriva was Caesar, postponing his visit to Italy until he should hear that all the winter quarters were well established.

At the instigation of Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri whom Caesar had humbled before sailing to Britain, the Eburones made a sudden attack on Sabinus and Cotta. When they were repulsed, one of their leaders, Ambiorix, asked for an interview, and under pretense of friendship persuaded the Romans to abandon their camp and join either Cicero or Labienus. He promised under oath not to hinder their march. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile. After a desperate conflict, prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, the legion and a half were destroyed almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known to the Romans, Ambiorix joined the Nervii and persuaded them to attack Cicero. As before, the Gauls were repulsed and Ambiorix advised the Romans to abandon their camp; but Cicero refused, and defended his post with the greatest heroism. Day after day messengers were sent to Caesar, only to be caught and tortured to death. At last one got through. Moving at once to the rescue Caesar raised the siege and defeated the Gauls. This success checked for a time the general revolt which had seemed imminent; but Gaul was so restless and ready for revolt that Caesar for once gave up his usual visit to Italy and remained with his army.

The chief inspirer of rebellion during the winter was Indutiomarus. At last he raised an army, with the intention of joining other states with whose chiefs he had been in correspondence. First, however, he wished to storm the camp of Labienus. By pretending fear the Romans lured him right under the walls of their camp, then charged out on him. In the panic-stricken flight that followed, Indutiomarus was killed. Then Caesar, as he remarks, "had a quieter Gaul."



THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

The sailing and landing points are assumed to be the same as in the previous expedition (p. 254), although Caesar says only that he used the points which he had found most suitable in the previous summer. The sailing point of the previous expedition had been entirely satisfactory; and he had found no opportunity of exploring the coast of Britain for a better landing point, so that he must have landed at any rate very near his first landing point.

Caesar set sail with a wind blowing from the southwest (chap. 8), which was not the most suitable wind for a voyage to Deal with flat-bottomed ships; but the tide was running toward the southwest and served to keep his ships from drifting down the wind to the northeast. A gentle breeze which died out at midnight could not have carried him more than half way across. Then the tide changed and carried him to the northeast for five hours, probably from twelve to fifteen miles; and in the morning he saw that he had got farther away from Britain, which now lay at his left. The Goodwin Sands prevented his making directly for Deal, so that he had nearly twenty-five miles to row. The tide, which again changed to the southwest, helped him at first, but not in the latter part of his voyage, so that it was nearly midday before he reached Deal.

The route in Britain is that of Napoleon and Rüstow, but too few data are given by Caesar to make any part of it certain.

LIBER QUINTUS.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cognōverat, ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in

---

Chap. 1-5. Caesar makes all preparations for a second invasion of Britain.

Chap. 1. Caesar gives orders for the construction of a fleet. He goes to Illyricum.

1. **L. Domitiō . . . cōnsulibus:** in the year 54 B.C. The consuls took office on Jan. 1, and Caesar seems to have remained with the army till after that day, no doubt visiting the various winter quarters and seeing the work of ship-building well started.

4. **aedificandās cūrārent:** see App. 285, II, *b*. The ships were probably constructed at several points on the rivers of Belgium.

5. **subductiōnis:** the Romans regularly beached their ships for the winter. See also IV, **29**, 4.

6. **humiliōrēs:** probably both less deep in the water and less high out of the water. They must have been nearly flat-bottomed.

quam quibus, "than those which."

nostrō marī: the Mediterranean.

7. **atque id**, "and [he did] that."

propter . . . aestuum: an incorrect reason.

10. **lātiōrēs;** like *humiliōrēs*, a predicate adjective with *facit*.

reliquīs maribus: the various parts of the Mediterranean.

11. **āctuāriās:** i.e. they had both oars and sails. The transports used in the preceding expedition had no oars, though the galleys did have them.

imperat fierī: note the unusual infinitive with *imperō*, which usually takes *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive. The passive infinitive only is thus used.

humilitās: if the sides had been high it would have been necessary to cut portholes for the oars.

12. **ex Hispāniā:** the Romans got their best ropes and much of their metal from Spain.

Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sescentās eius generis cuius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus nāvēs et longās XXVIII invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relin-

---

14. Īllyricum: this was his second visit; see III, 7, 3.

18. eārum rērum: i.e. the raids.

23. dat, "he appointed."

poenam, "compensation."

Chap. 2. Caesar inspects the fleet and leads a force against the Treveri.

1. conventibus: in Illyricum: he had already held court in Cisalpine Gaul; **1,** 13. Notice Caesar's unresting energy in the only vacation he had: between Jan. 1 and early summer he traveled from Belgium to northern Italy, held court there, went to Illyricum, cowed the Pirustae, held court in Illyricum, and traveled back to Belgium.

4. in, "in spite of."

5. cuius: attracted from the accusative into the case of its antecedent.

6. neque . . . possint, lit. "and that it was not far from this, that they could, etc." Make English of this.

8. portum Itium: see map, p. 294. This was Wissant, the harbor which he had used in the preceding year, and which he had found most suitable for his purpose (*quō . . . cognōverat*).

10. mīlium passuum XXX: a descriptive genitive, depending on *trāiectum.* This is about the length of a direct voyage to his landing point, Deal.

11. huic reī: for completing and launching the ships, and for taking them to Wissant.

quit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō parēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī magnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō

---

12. **expedītīs:** i.e. without the heavy baggage.

13. **concilia:** Caesar had now begun to call regular meetings of representatives from the Gallic states. Attendance on them was a test of loyalty to Rome.

Chap. 3. Two rival chiefs of the Treveri seek Caesar's support.

1. **haec cīvitās:** the Treveri.

plūrimum equitātū valet: cf. II, **24**, 11.

2. **suprā:** in III, **11**, 1. Their proximity to the Germans made them more restless and dangerous.

3. **prīncipātū,** "leadership."

4. **Indutiomārus** was the father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. **alter,** "the latter."

6. **suōs,** "his party."

9. **cōgere:** with *īnstituit.*

10. **ingentī magnitūdine:** descriptive ablative with *quae.*

11. **initium:** i.e. their northeastern frontier.

13. **nōn nūllī prīncipēs:** who belonged to the faction of Indutiomarus.

15. **prīvātīs rēbus,** "individual interests."

quoniam . . . possent: implied indirect discourse. They said, in effect, that they were not strong enough to settle the dispute between Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, and could only look out for themselves.

18. **quō:** see App. 225, *a*, 2.

continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās eius fideī permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indutiomārum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propinquīsque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō eius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābātur eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae

---

19. **nē,** "for fear that."

omnis . . . discessū: i.e. if all the chiefs should go to Caesar.

20. **itaque . . . esse,** "therefore [because he had not come to Caesar] the whole state was in his power"; implying that he, and not Cingetorix, had the right to treat with Caesar.

Chap. **4.** Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix.

2. **quae rēs:** namely, the fear that all his followers would desert him.

cōnsiliō: of making war on Caesar.

3. **aestātem:** it was already June.

omnibus . . . comparātīs, "after all preparations had been made, etc."

8. **prīncipibus:** especially those belonging to the faction of Indutiomarus.

hōs . . . conciliāvit: thus using his influence to make Cingetorix supreme in the state.

9. **quod:** subject of *fierī*; lit. "which he knew was done in accordance with, etc." Supplying "because" will help the translation; "because he knew that this was, etc."

cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

10. **magnī:** genitive of value; "that it was of great importance."

11. **cuius . . . perspexisset:** a causal clause; "since, etc."

12. **id factum:** explained by its appositive, *suam . . . minuī.*

13. **quī . . . fuisset,** "although he had, etc."; see App. 247: G.-L. 634: A. 535, *e*: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. **hōc dolōre,** "this grievance," "indignation at this treatment."

erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīlia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē

Chap. 5. The fleet, the legions, and the cavalry assemble at port Itius.

3. **tempestāte rēiectās:** probably while sailing from the mouth of the Sequana to Wissant.

4. **eōdem unde,** etc.: i.e. to the mouth of the Sequana.

6. **mīlia:** in apposition with *equitātus*.

9. **locō,** "as."

cum abesset, "while he should be absent"; implied indirect discourse.

Chap. 6-7. The treachery and death of Dumnorix.

Chap. 6. Dumnorix treacherously advises the Gallic Chiefs not to accompany Caesar.

1. **ante:** see especially I, **3**, 13, and I, **18-20**, where Dumnorix is fully described.

4. **animī:** descriptive genitive.

5. **accēdēbat hūc quod,** "and besides."

7. **graviter ferēbant:** because they had no king, and wanted none. They were prepared to believe the statement, because Caesar had set up kings in a few other states; see, for example, IV, **21**, 13.

neque audēbant, "and yet did not dare"; probably because they feared Dumnorix.

9. **petere contendit,** "earnestly begged."

10. **quod timēret:** a quoted reason; "because, as he said, etc."

11. **quod dīceret:** we should expect either the indicative, *dīcēbat*, since the verb of saying is not quoted, or simply *impedīrētur*, with no verb of saying. But a subjunctive verb of saying is often used in quoting a reason.

religiōnibus, "religious scruples." Perhaps he claimed to have religious duties which required his presence in Gaul, or that he had vowed never to leave the country.

dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent, metū territāre: Nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret: fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter XXV in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī

---

15. fierī, esse: indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *territāre*.

18. fidem interpōnere, "he pledged his word." *interpōnere* and *poscere* are in the same construction as *territāre*, depending on *coepit*.

19. intellēxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 7. Dumnorix flees, but is pursued and killed.

1. quod . . . tribuēbat: Caesar had found the Haedui at the head of a powerful league and had increased their influence. It was a serious matter to have so strong a state discontented.

4. prōspiciendum (*esse*), "that he must see to it"; depending on *statuēbat*.

sibi: i.e. Caesar.

13. omnibus rebus, "everything else."

15. retrahī imperat: cf. note on *imperat fierī*, **1**, 11.

16. prō sānō, "like a sane man." **quī,** "since he."

praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse, cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hos-

---

18. **manū:** i.e. with the weapons in his hands.

20. **interficiunt:** this deed must have made a deep impression upon the Gallic nobles, who saw one of their order struck down for asserting his liberty of action. Without doubt it helped to bring on the great revolt described in Book VII.

Chap. 8-11. Though successful in landing and in routing the enemy, Caesar is so delayed by a disaster to his fleet that the enemy have time to unite against him.

Chap. 8. Caesar sails to Britain and lands without opposition.

1. **Labiēnō:** Caesar was leaving only half as many legions in Gaul as he had left there the year before; therefore he left his best lieutenant.

3. **quaeque . . . gererentur:** he may have feared the effect of the death of Dumnorix.

4. **prō . . . rē,** "according to the occasion and circumstances."

5. **parī quem,** "equal (to that) which", "the same as."

6. **ad sōlis occāsum:** about 8 P.M.

It is supposed that the day was July 20. For the course of the voyage and an explanation of the details which follow in the text, see the map and explanation on p. 294.

8. **et,** "but."

sub . . . relictam: i.e. he had got farther away from Britain, and it lay on his left.

12. **virtūs,** "spirit."

vectōriīs . . . nāvigiīs, lit. "with ships built for carrying and heavy," = "though in heavily laden transports."

tis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt

---

18. quisque fēcerat, "individuals had made." Some of his officers were wealthy, and no doubt some of the men who were "following Caesar for friendship's sake" (I, **39**, 10, note) were well-to-do. And probably the slave dealers had ships of their own.

20. superiōra loca: the higher ground some twelve miles inland, just across the Little Stour; see map.

Chap. **9.** Caesar at once marches inland and scatters the enemy.

1. locō: near the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus X: two from each legion.

5. nāvibus: indirect object of *veritus.*

lītore . . . apertō: i.e. the bottom was gravelly and there were no rocky cliffs along the shore. Caesar seems to have thought that the ships might be blown on shore without much harm. It is strange that he did not take warning from his previous experience.

8. ad flūmen: the Little Stour.

11. opere, "by art."

13. arboribus succīsīs: they had probably felled the trees so that their tops lay outward. If piled thickly enough, with their branches shortened and sharpened, they would make an effective defense.

14. rārī, "in small bodies."

15. legiōnis septimae: this legion had met with a reverse on the preceding expedition (IV, **32**), and was eager for revenge.

16. aggere . . . adiectō: they piled

eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat et quod magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

10. Postrīdiē eius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs cognōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit ut quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mū-

---

earth and logs against and over the tops of the felled trees.

20. **castrōrum**: this camp was west of the Little Stour.

Chap. 10. Caesar is recalled by the news that his fleet is wrecked.

1. **tripertītō**: the enemy were scattered, so that it only remained to pursue small bodies and ravage the country.

3. **extrēmī**: only the rear guard of the Romans was now in sight of the camp.

4. **Ātriō**: he had been left in charge of the camp by the sea.

7. **neque subsisterent**, "did not hold."

8. **concursū**, "dashing together."

Chap. 11. The fleet is repaired and beached. In the meantime the Britons unite under Cassivellaunus.

3. **cōram**, "with his own eyes."

sīc ut, "to such an extent that"; i.e. the report was true to this extent.

5. **ex . . . dēligit**: we must understand that Caesar sent for the legions from the camp at the Little Stour. The skilled workmen among the soldiers were detailed to repair the ships, while the rest beached them and built a wall around them.

8. **multae . . . labōris**: the 800 ships, even if drawn up in four lines, would occupy about a mile of the sea front. Merely building a wall around so great a space was no light task.

nitiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab iīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plum-

13. **quās ante:** supply *relīquerat.*

eōdem: to the camp across the Little Stour.

15. **summā . . . administrandī,** "the chief command and the direction of the war."

18. **mīlia . . . LXXX:** Caesar naturally gives the distance by the route which he followed from his landing place to the ford by which he crossed the Thames.

huic . . . intercesserant, "he had carried on incessant wars, etc."

Chap. 12-14. A description of Britain and its inhabitants.

Chap. 12. The origin of the Britons. The natural resources of the island.

1. **quōs nātōs** (*esse*): subject of *prōditum* (*esse*); "whose origin upon the island itself is handed down, they say, by tradition." The meaning is that they were descended from ancestors who sprang from the soil of Britain. A similar belief about themselves was held by other ancient races.

2. **quī . . . trānsiērunt:** this was true. The Celtic invaders had passed over to Britain and partly dispossessed the earlier inhabitants, just as they had in Gaul; see Int. 25.

4. **quibus . . . pervēnērunt,** "from which they have descended and migrated hither." The antecedent is repeated, as often, and must be omitted in translation.

7. **crēberrima:** supply *sunt.*

9. **plumbum album:** the mines are in Cornwall, the extreme southwestern part of the island, so that Caesar is mistaken as to their location. Centuries

bum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est

---

before this time the Phoenicians had obtained tin which came from these mines.

11. exigua cōpia: this accounts for its use as money. It is now found in abundance.

12. praeter . . . abietem: a mistake. Both trees are native to Britain.

14. animī . . . causā, "for amusement"; i.e. as pets.

Chap. 13. The form and size of Britain.

As no Roman had ever sailed around the island or traveled in it, it is not surprising that Caesar's description of it is inaccurate. He comes much nearer the truth than might have been expected.

2. quō: the adverb.

3. īnferior: supply *angulus*.

5. alterum: supply *latus*.

vergit ad Hispāniam: this is a surprising mistake, but one that prevailed long after Caesar's time. The error was much worse than appears on the map, for Caesar thought that Spain extended farther north and nearer Britain. More than a hundred years later Tacitus says that Ireland lies between Britain and Spain.



Caesar's Geography

6. dīmidiō minor, "smaller by half", "half as large."

7. parī . . . atque, lit. "but with an equal length of passage across as." *spatiō* is a descriptive ablative.

8. in . . . cursū, "halfway across."

īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās col-

10. **īnsulae**: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.

12. **nisi**, "except that."

certīs . . . mēnsūrīs, "by exact measurements by the water-clock." The Romans used instruments on the principle of the hour-glass, using water instead of sand; i.e. time was measured by the amount of water that dropped through a small hole in the bottom of a vessel.

13. **breviōrēs**: the longest day at Rome is 15 hours; at London, 16½; in the north of Scotland, 18½ hours.

15. **cui . . . terra**: Caesar knows nothing of Scandinavia.

16. **angulus alter**: this is at Kent, the one first mentioned.

18. **vīciēs . . . passuum**: this is too great, as Caesar has over-estimated the length of each side.

Chap. 14. The customs of the Britons.

1. **hīs**: the tribes of Britain.

3. **interiōrēs**, "the inhabitants of the interior."

6. **aspectū**: ablative of specification.

capillō, parte: descriptive ablatives.

Chap. 15-17. After several skirmishes the Britons are decisively defeated, and they avoid further pitched battles.

Chap. 15. Skirmishes between the Britons and the Romans.

2. **in itinere**: i.e. on the march from the sea to the camp across the Little Stour. This chapter resumes the narrative which was broken off at the end of chap. 11.

3. **fuerint**: notice the exception to sequence; App. 204, *a*.

lēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliāren-

---

6. **imprūdentibus . . . occupātīs**, "while our men were off their guard and engaged."

7. **quī . . . collocātī**: probably a single cohort, stationed just outside the praetorian gate; see the plan of a camp, Int. 51.

9. **atque hīs prīmīs**, "and these the first (cohorts)"; which contained the best officers and men.

10. **perexiguō . . . sē**, "with a very little space between them." Apparently the two cohorts left the camp by the two side gates and got around in the rear of the enemy who were attacking in front of the camp, intending to cut off their retreat. But as the two cohorts did not quite meet, the enemy escaped between them.

11. **novō genere**: evidently these cohorts had not taken part in the first invasion of Britain.

13. **illī . . . repelluntur**: when the enemy escaped from the position in which they were attacked both front and rear, they turned again and attacked the three cohorts. It then required several more cohorts to put them to flight.

Chap. **16.** The tactics of the Britons put the Romans at a disadvantage.

2. **nostrōs**: the infantry.

4. **ab signīs discēdere**, "to break ranks"; because they had been trained to fight only in regular formation.

6. **illī**: the Britons.

7. **nostrōs**: the cavalry.

ex essedīs, etc.: on the tactics of the charioteers, see IV, **33**, and especially the note on l. 4.

tur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus

---

10. **statiōnēs**, "reserves."
aliōs aliī, "one another."

Chap. 17. The Britons attack three legions while foraging. After a decisive defeat they refuse any further pitched battle.

1. **ā castrīs**: Caesar is still in camp just west of the Little Stour.

4. **trēs . . . equitātum**: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the enemy inspired respect.

5. **repente . . . advolāvērunt**: just as they had done in the preceding year; IV, 32.

6. **sīc utī**, "so fiercely that"; i.e. they even attacked the troops which had been kept under arms to protect the foragers.

8. **sequendī**: the enemy were not yet routed, but were retreating slowly.

12. **ex**, "after."
quae . . . auxilia: cf. 11, 15.

14. **summīs cōpiīs**, "in full force."

Chap. 18-21. Caesar marches inland, receives the submission of several tribes, and takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

Chap. 18. Caesar marches to the Thames and forces a passage in the face of the enemy.

1. **cōnsiliō**: i.e. not to fight pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.

2. **dūxit**: see map, p. 294.
ūnō locō: at present there are several fords, and it is uncertain which Caesar used.

3. **atque hōc** (*locō*) **aegrē**, "and even there with difficulty."

praefīxīs mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat, atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnflīgēbat, atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

---

6. **praefīxīs**: i.e. projecting forward from the northern bank.

8. **praemissō equitātū**: they probably swam the stream above or below the ford and attacked the enemy's flank.

9. **iērunt**: how they passed the stakes is not said; but such obstacles could only delay, not stop, a charge. The Romans could not use hatchets under water, as has been supposed; but they could climb over the stakes or perhaps pull them up.

11. **dīmitterent**, "abandoned."

Chap. **19.** Cassivellaunus adopts a plan of systematically harassing the Romans.

1. **suprā**: in **17**, 13.

2. **contentiōnis**, "of winning pitched battles."

3. **itinera servābat**, "kept watching our movements."

4. **locīs . . . silvestribus**: the chariots must have been narrow, to pass among the trees; and their wheels must have been high, to pass over rough ground.

7. **cum ēiēcerat**: for mode, see App. 241, *b*.

10. **hōc metū**, "by fear of this"; cf. *hōc dolōre*, **4**, 14.

relinquēbātur, "the result was."

11. **discēdī** (*ab equitibus*): impersonal; "the cavalry to diverge from."

12. **tantum hostibus nocērētur**, "that only so much damage was inflicted on the enemy."

13. **in . . . itinere**, lit. "in hard work and marching," = "in their toilsome marches." The whole sentence

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum, tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum

---

means that the army could devastate only the narrow strip through which the infantry could march, whereas the cavalry ought to have laid waste the country for miles on each side of the way.

Chap. 20. The Trinovantes voluntarily offer submission.

1. **Trinovantēs**: in Essex; see map.

3. **ad eum . . . vēnerat**: probably among those mentioned in IV, **21**, 10.

4. **ipse**, "(while) he himself"; i.e. Mandubracius.

8. **mittat**: the object is *Mandubracium*.

praesit: supply *eī*, referring to *cīvitātem*.

Chap. 21. Other tribes submit. Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

1. **dēfēnsīs**: from Cassivellaunus.

mīlitum (*nostrōrum*) **iniūriā**: this does not imply that Caesar had marched into their country. The other states saw that Caesar did not march against those who submitted.

4. **eō locō**: where the envoys had come to him apparently on the northern bank of the Thames.

oppidum Cassivellaunī: supposed to be St. Albans.

6. **oppidum . . . vocant cum**, "the Britons call it a town when." The *oppidum* was a place of refuge, not a town in our sense of the word.

nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc acci-

---

Chap. 22-23. Cassivellaunus at last gives hostages, and Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 22. Cassivellaunus instigates an attack on the Roman fleet. When this fails he offers hostages.

2. **suprā:** in **14,** 2.

5. **castra nāvālia:** the camp by the sea, which enclosed the fleet.

10. **dēfectiōne:** cf. **21,** 2.

11. **Commium:** cf. IV, **21,** 13.

12. **propter . . . mōtūs:** there were none as yet, but he feared there would be if he kept so large a part of his army in Britain.

13. **superesset:** it was now late in August or early in September.

id . . . posse, "that this time could easily be wasted"; i.e. if he tried to capture or thoroughly subdue Cassivellaunus.

14. **quid . . . vectīgālis,** "how much tribute each year"; an empty form, since no troops were left to enforce payment. None was paid; nor did any Roman army return to Britain till 43 A.D., nearly a century later.

Chap. 23. Caesar returns to Gaul.

4. **commeātibus,** "voyages," "trips"; the original meaning of the word.

dit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collocāvit ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae reī frūmentāriae sēsē mederī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum

---

5. **tot nāvigātiōnibus**: ablative absolute.

8. **priōris . . . mīlitibus**, "having landed the soldiers from the first trip."

et quās: coördinate with *quae*; the antecedent is *ex iīs*.

9. **faciendās cūrāverat**: for construction, see App. 285, II, *b*; for the fact, see **11**, 6.

locum, "destination."

10. **caperent, rēicerentur**: in the same construction as *dēsīderārētur*.

12. **quod . . . suberat**: it was, therefore, somewhere near Sept. 20, and Caesar had been in Britain two months; see note on *ad sōlis occāsum*, **8**, 6.

angustius . . . collocāvit, "crowded the soldiers rather closely."

13. **secundā vigiliā, prīmā lūce**: the voyage, therefore, occupied about nine hours.

tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

26. Diēbus circiter XV quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, quī, cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque, ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs, equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est:

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod eius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset quod Atuatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse eius modī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppugnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitiō ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium velintne, priusquam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiam referre. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt,

magnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstīnctā. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur, ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; ‘neque is sum,’ inquit, ‘quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear; hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, quī, sī per tē liceat,

perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant.'

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: Facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs.

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et, cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pugnā mīlitis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile omnia per

sē obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: Illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab iīs quī cesserant et ab iīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōri-

tātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompēium, ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Si velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequī

iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs quās accēperint iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptōs victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum CXX excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte, quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē

nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab iīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs incolumibus per sē ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed, nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium pedum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs

maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant quīnam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque

hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēlātus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō fert subsidium Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōcēdit. Crassum

Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpias Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, ne interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur: quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab

eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram

tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant,

tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō de Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant, et quid reliquī cōnsilī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiae decimae praefēcerat, certior factus est magnās cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlia passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar prīncipibus cuiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs aliās territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs firma et magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cuius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad fīnēs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et, missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum maximē quod iī quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē eius opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum

tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tēncterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstīgārī, alterā Nerviōs Atuatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hoc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex iīs novissimus vēnit in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque eius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppugnātūrum. Quae fierī velit praecipit.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret cōgitābat. Itaque, ā Cingetorīge atque eius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomārī cognitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū

Indutiomārus sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cognōsceret, aliās colloquendī aut territandī causā; equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

58. Cum maiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi magnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et magnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, perterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indutiomārum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; magna prōpōnit iīs quī occīderint praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna, et, cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomārus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

BOOK VI. PUNISHMENT OF REBEL STATES. DESCRIPTION OF GAULS AND GERMANS

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompey, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he surprised the Nervii with four legions and ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all sent representatives except the Senones, the Carnutes, and the Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and received hostages from them.

Caesar's chief purpose for the year was the punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones for the slaughter of Sabinus and Cotta with their men. He set about the task methodically, first stripping them of allies and possible places of refuge. To their north lay the Menapii, the only state which had never submitted to Caesar. Hastening thither he burned villages, carried off cattle and men, and received the submission of the state. Then he marched south to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri; but before his arrival Labienus had drawn them into an engagement in which they were defeated with great loss. In order to overawe the Suebi, who had intended to join the Treveri on this occasion, and who might help Ambiorix, Caesar built another bridge across the Rhine, some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. He fought no battle there, because the Suebi withdrew far into the interior and it was no part of his plan to subjugate Germany. Having accomplished his purpose of intimidating the Germans, he withdrew, leaving enough of the bridge standing to suggest to them that he might return.

Caesar had now thoroughly cowed the states all about the Eburones, and was ready to take his vengeance. He marched through the Ardennes into their country, sending cavalry ahead to surprise Ambiorix if possible; but the wily chief eluded his pursuers and disbanded his army. The rest was a man-hunt. Caesar divided his army into three bodies, in order to cover the territory more thoroughly. Even so he could not destroy everything, and he sent out a general invitation to the neighbor-

ing Gauls to come and share in the plunder of the wretched Eburones. A body of German horsemen who had heard of this invitation came over to share in the pillaging. Hearing, however, that Caesar had left all his baggage in charge of Cicero with a weak garrison, they surprised and nearly captured the camp. In spite of all Caesar's efforts, Ambiorix never was caught; but such of his people as escaped death were left without houses or cattle or crops.

Caesar then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of Acco, a chief of the Senones. Making such a disposition of his forces for the winter as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar went to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

Caesar was a keen observer of manners and customs and wished, in some part of his work, to describe those of the Gauls and the Germans. This description might equally well have been given in any other book, since it was necessarily a digression from his narrative. But as there was only a short story to tell in the sixth book, he took the opportunity offered by the uneventful expedition to Germany, and there inserted his interesting and valuable account of the peoples with whom he was fighting.

LIBER SEXTUS.

1. Multīs dē causīs Caesar maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns per M. Sīlānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dīlēctum habēre īnstituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petiit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāvisset ad signa convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret, magnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Ītaliae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam maiōribus augērī cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dīlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indutiomārō, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōnfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Atuatucōs, Menapiōs, adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā proximīs quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvīsō in fīnēs Nerviōrum contendit et, prius-

quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā mīlitibus concessā vāstātīsque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur magnīsque itineribus eō pervenit.

4. Cognitō eius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps eius cōnsilī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnantibus, priusquam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īnstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrātur. Obsidibus imperātīs centum, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā, tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit. Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex huius īrācundiā aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō cīvitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua eius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs

in amīcitiam cognōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficīscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū locī praesidiō frētī in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

6. Caesar partītīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus adit tripertītō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfirmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut eius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recēpissent. Hīs cōnfirmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitātū custōdis locō īn Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius biduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cognōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum XV auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cognitō cōnsiliō spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum vīgintī quīnque cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hoc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur cōnsultō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs rēbus

favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus, nocte tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsilī prōpōnit et, quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dīmitterent: Longum esse, perterritīs Rōmānīs, Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīrī nōn audeant, flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam collocātīs, 'Habētis,' inquit, 'mīlitēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte.' Simul signa ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet et, paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs, reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īnfestīs signīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt ac prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum recēpērunt. Cum hīs propinquī Indutiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus

dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne magnō mīlitum studiō paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse. Silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs civitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus

---

Chap. **11-28.** The customs and manners of the Gauls and the Germans.

Chap. **11-20.** The customs and manners of the Gauls.

Chap. **11.** Party spirit and party leaders in Gaul.

1. locum, "point," in the narrative. Caesar has been describing his second invasion of Germany.

2. quō, "in what (respects)"; an ablative of specification.

4. partibus, "districts."

5. singulīs domibus: an example has been seen in the case of the brothers, Dumnorix and Diviciacus, Book I. It is evident that these *factiōnēs* are not unlike our political parties.

eārum . . . redeat, "of these factions, those who are thought to have . . . are chiefs to whose decision, etc."

6. quī: supply *iī* as the antecedent, and as the subject of *sunt.*

eōrum: i.e. the members of the party.

7. quōrum . . . redeat: i.e. these *prīncipēs* are not state magistrates, but "chiefs of such sort that to their decision all their partisans' private affairs and plans are referred."

8. eius reī: explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret.*

10. auxilī: verbs meaning to be without usually govern the ablative, but *egeō* governs either the genitive or the ablative.

quisque: i.e. each chief. The whole description of these chiefs applies fairly well to some of our political bosses.

12. haec . . . Galliae, "this same system is followed in general by Gaul as a whole."

Galliae is a predicate genitive with *ratiō est.*

13. duās partēs: i.e. those described in the following chapter.

Chap. **12.** The states which play the same part among other states as the chiefs among their fellow citizens.

1. cum . . . vēnit: in 58 B.C. For mode see App. 241, *a*: G.-L. 580: A. 545: B. 288, 1, A: H.-B. 550, *a*: H. 600, I.

2. alterius Sēquanī: but in I, 31, 10, Diviciacus tells Caesar that the Arverni are the head of this faction. The Arverni had long been the head, and nominally may have been still in that

valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

---

position; but in fact the Sequani, helped by Ariovistus, had displaced them.

hī, "the latter."

4. **Germānōs**, etc.: in the next few lines Caesar repeats in brief what Diviciacus told him in I, **31**.

10. **iūrāre**: supply *prīncipēs* as subject.

13. **Rōmam profectus**: cf. I, **31**, 29, and note.

14. **īnfectā rē**, "without accomplishing anything."

commūtātiōne: resulting from Caesar's defeat of Ariovistus. The ablatives absolute may be translated by either principal or causal clauses.

16. **quod . . . vidēbant** gives the reason for *novīs . . . comparātīs*.

17. **eōrum** = *Haeduōrum*.

18. **sē ūtī**, "that they enjoyed."

reliquīs rēbus, "by all other means."

20. **Rēmī**: Caesar favored them because of their assistance in his first campaign against the Belgae; see especially II, **3** and **4**.

quōs . . . intellegēbātur, "because it was understood that they [the Remi] were equal to the Haedui in Caesar's favor."

23. **dicābant**: not *dīcēbant*.

24. **collēctam**, "acquired."

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt, et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs,

Chap. 13. The two higher classes. The position of the common people. The power of the Druids.

1. **aliquō numerō**, "of any account."

4. **cum premuntur**: for mode see App. 240.

6. **quae . . . servōs**, "as masters have over their slaves."

7. **est druidum**, "is that of the Druids." Very little is known of Druidism beyond what Caesar tells us here, though much has been guessed and written about it. Caesar may have got his information from Diviciacus, who was a Druid. If the Druids had the strength which Caesar describes, it is surprising that they did not do more to unify Gaul.

8. **intersunt**, "have charge of."

11. **hī**: the Druids.

eōs: the rest of the people.

12. **cōnstituunt**, "render decisions."

est admissum, "has been committed."

15. **dēcrētō nōn stetit**, "does not abide by the decision."

16. **sacrificiīs interdīcunt**: i.e. they excommunicate the offender.

18. **hīs dēcēdunt**, "avoid them."

20. **neque . . . redditur**: i.e. they cannot appeal to courts of justice if any wrong is done them.

suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque parent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discant litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre,

---

28. dēcrētīs: for case see App. 115.

disciplīna, "the system."

in Britanniā reperta: it is more likely that it originally passed from Gaul to Britain, outgrew some of its barbarism in Gaul, but retained its original features in the less civilized Britain.

Chap. **14.** The doctrines of the Druids.

1. ā bellō: the fact that the Druid Diviciacus once commanded some of Caesar's auxiliaries (II, 5, 4-9) shows that they might be warriors if they liked.

4. versuum: primitive laws, maxims, and religious formulas are usually found to be in verse, because verse is more easily committed to memory than prose.

6. ea: i.e. their teachings.

cum, "although."

7. ratiōnibus, "accounts," "records."

Graecīs litterīs: i.e. the Gallic language written in Greek characters.

8. id: i.e. *neque . . . mandāre.*

9. disciplīnam: including the sacred chants and formulas by which men could approach and communicate with the gods. So long as the Druids kept this knowledge to themselves, they could control the people.

10. minus studēre, "to pay less attention to."

quod: subject of *accidit*, and explained by the appositive, *ut . . . remittant.*

11. praesidiō, lit. "because of the protection of" = "depending on."

12. hoc persuādēre, "to convince men of this"; *hoc* is explained by the infinitive clauses in apposition.

nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere sōlēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs.

---

13. **ab aliīs . . . ad aliōs:** the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which was held by many of the ancients, and which still exists in some eastern nations.

14. **excitārī,** "that men are incited."

Chap. 15. The Knights.

1. **alterum genus:** cf. 13, 7.

cum est: for mode see App. 240.

2. **quod:** subject of *sōlēbat*, and explained by *utī . . . prōpulsārent*.

4. **ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plūrimōs,** "the more distinguished one of them is, the more, etc." The most striking example is that of Orgetorix, I, 4, 5.

6. **hanc ūnam . . . nōvērunt,** "this is the only . . . which they know."

Chap. 16. Human sacrifices.

3. **hominēs:** object of both *immolant* and *immolātūrōs*. Although Caesar does not say that he saw an instance of human sacrifice, there is no good reason to doubt the truth of his statement. The practice seems to have ceased after the Roman conquest.

7. **pūblicē,** "on behalf of the state."

habent īnstitūta, lit. "they have . . . established," = "they regularly perform."

8. **simulācra:** colossal statues in form of men.

9. **contexta vīminibus,** "made of woven osiers," "wickerwork."

Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia

---

12. **sint comprehēnsī:** the mode is due to indirect discourse.

14. **dēscendunt,** "they resort."

Chap. 17. The Gallic gods and their powers.

1. **Mercurium:** the Gallic gods were not the same as the Roman. From what Caesar could learn of the Gallic gods he thought that they corresponded to certain Roman gods, and he gives the Roman names. In the same way the Romans identified their gods with those of the Greeks, though they were not really the same.

2. **ferunt,** "they call."

hunc . . . ducem: i.e. he points out the way (*viārum*) and accompanies them on their journeys (*itinerum*).

7. **trādere,** "teaches."

9. **cēperint:** perfect subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for the future perfect.

14. **capta . . . occultāre:** compare the crime of Achan and its punishment, Josh. 7.

posita, "what has been deposited" in the sacred spots.

Chap. 18. The supposed origin of the Gauls. Their treatment of children.

1. **ab Dīte prōgnātōs:** apparently meaning that they sprang from the soil. See note on V, **12**, 1.

patre, "as their father."

2. **ob eam causam:** i.e. being children of the god who ruled in darkness.

omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

---

3. **nōn numerō . . . fīniunt:** so we speak of a fortnight (fourteen nights).

diēs . . . subsequātur: i.e. each day began at sunset and lasted till the following sunset. So each month began with the night when the new moon was first visible.

5. **ferē ab reliquīs,** "from almost all other peoples."

7. **palam . . . adīre,** "to approach them in public."

Chap. 19. The relations of husband and wife. Funeral customs.

1. **virī, quantās pecūniās accēpērunt, tantās cum dōtibus commūnicant,** "husbands add to the dowry as much property as they have received."

3. **ratiō habētur,** "an account is kept."

4. **frūctūs,** "the profits."

8. **dē morte . . . vēnit:** i.e. if his wives are suspected of murdering him.

9. **uxōribus:** evidently the Gallic nobles practiced polygamy.

in servīlem modum: i.e. by torture, which was the Roman method of examining slaves.

sī compertum est, "if proof is found."

12. **vīvīs cordī fuisse,** "were dear to them when alive." The burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Tombs have been opened which contained vases, rings, armor, and the bones of horses and dogs.

13. **suprā hanc memoriam,** "before our time."

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs ne fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs

---

Chap. 20. How the magistrates control mischievous rumors.

1. **quae cīvitātēs**, "the states which."

commodius, "best."

2. **habent . . . sānctum utī**, "have it established by law that."

4. **nēve**: the regular word for "and not" in substantive volitive clauses.

quō: the proper indefinite after *nēve*, just as after *nē*.

6. **cognitum est**, "it has been found." In IV, 5, Caesar has told us how eager the Gauls were for gossip, and how ready to act hastily on unfounded rumors.

7. **quae vīsa sunt**, "what seems best."

8. **per concilium**: i.e. in a formal meeting of the tribe.

Chap. 21-28. The manners and customs of the Germans.

Chap. 21. The Germans differ from the Gauls in religion and in mode of life.

2. **druidēs**: they had priests, but not organized as the Druids were.

3. **student**, "pay much attention to"; but they did offer sacrifices at times.

5. **reliquōs . . . accēpērunt**: but Tacitus names Mercury, Mars, and Hercules as their principal deities. Caesar's account does not elsewhere contradict that of Tacitus, though he spent very little time in Germany. Perhaps the worship of these gods was introduced after Caesar's time.

6. **cōnsistit**, "is spent."

Chap. 22. There is no private ownership of land.

1. **nōn student**: yet they did practice agriculture. Tacitus says that the cultivation of the soil was left to women and old men; but compare IV, 1, 9-12.

3. **propriōs**, "of his own"; cf. IV, 1, 12.

in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,

---

4. in annōs singulōs, "every year."

gentibus . . . coiērunt, "to families or groups of kinsmen, or to men who have banded together."

5. quantum . . . agrī, "as much land as they see fit, and in whatever locality they see fit."

6. aliō: the adverb.

multās causās: given in the following *nē* and *ut* clauses.

8. agricultūrā, "for agriculture"; App. 147.

12. animī aequitāte, "in a contented frame of mind."

Chap. 23. The relations existing between states. The form of government. Hospitality.

1. maxima laus: cf. IV, 3, 1.

2. fīnibus, "their border lands."

hoc: explained by the infinitive clauses.

proprium virtūtis, "a mark of valor."

4. hōc: explained by *timōre sublātō.*

6. quī . . . habeant: a purpose clause.

9. minuunt, "settle."

10. latrōcinia . . . fīunt: a general opinion among primitive peoples.

13. sē ducem fore: of some pillaging expedition.

quī . . . profiteantur, "let any who wish to follow volunteer"; an indirect quotation of the leader's invitation.

cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim assuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter

---

15. **ex hīs**: i.e. of those who have volunteered.

17. **omnium rērum fidēs**, "all confidence."

Chap. 24. The Gauls, once superior to the Germans in war, are now inferior.

3. **trāns . . . mitterent**: Caesar did not understand the facts. The Gauls originally came from east of the Rhine. The Gallic tribes in Germany were not colonies sent from Gaul, but people who had been left behind.

5. **quibusdam**, "some other."

6. **illī**: the Greeks.

Volcae Tectosagēs: the map shows these people in the Province. That means that the majority of them had long ago crossed into Gaul. The remnant, of whom Caesar is speaking, cannot be located exactly.

10. **quā ante**, "as before."

11. **prōvinciārum**: Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul.

12. **trānsmarīnārum rērum**: imported goods came into Gaul very largely by way of Massilia (Marseilles).

multa . . . largītur, "supply many things for their possession and use."

14. **ipsī**: the Gauls.

illīs: the Germans.

Chap. 25. Description of the Hercynian forest.

2. **lātitūdō**: from north to south.

fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit, excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs arti-

---

expeditō, "for an unencumbered traveler."

3. **mēnsūrās itinerum:** such as paces or miles; therefore they could not tell how far such a traveler could walk in a day.

4. **rēctā . . . regiōne,** "in a course parallel with the river Danube."

5. **Dācōrum et Anartium:** these peoples lived beyond the great southward bend of the Danube, too far east to be shown on the maps in this book.

6. **dīversīs . . . regiōnibus,** lit. "in a direction turned from the river" = "leaving the river."

8. **huius Germāniae,** "of this part of Germany"; i.e. the western part, near Gaul.

initium: the eastern end.

9. **cum,** "although."

12. **memoriae prōdenda,** "worth mentioning."

13. **haec,** "the following."

Chap. 26. The reindeer.

1. **bōs:** the Romans gave this name to any large horned animal with which they were not familiar. Here Caesar seems to mean the reindeer. But the Germans seem to have amused themselves by trying to find out how much they could make Caesar believe about the animals "which are seen nowhere else." Of course the reindeer has a pair of horns.

3. **sīcut,** "as it were," "a kind of."

palmae: i.e. antlers like the palm of the hand, flat and with projecting points.

4. **eadem,** etc.: the female reindeer has smaller horns than those of the male; but female deer of other kinds have no horns at all.

Chap. 27. Description of the elk.

2. **caprīs,** "(that of) goats."

varietās, "varied color."

3. **mutilae . . . cornibus,** "they

culīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflīctae cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricultūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū, partem ultimam pontis quae rīpās Ubi-

have mutilated horns"; i.e. their horns are short and irregular, appearing to be mutilated.

5. **afflīctae,** "thrown down."

9. **ab,** "at."

10. **tantum . . . relinquātur,** lit. "so far that the complete appearance of them standing is left" = "but only so far that a complete resemblance to standing trees is left."

11. **hūc,** "against them."

Chap. 28. Description of the wild ox.

1. **est eōrum,** "consists of those."

2. **speciē,** etc.: descriptive ablatives modified by the genitive, *taurī*, instead of the more usual adjective.

7. **quae sint:** a purpose clause; "to serve as proof."

9. **nē . . . exceptī,** "not even if caught while very young."

11. **ab labrīs,** "at the rim."

ōrum contingēbat in longitūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit magnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtīus Galliae maxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius quīngentīs in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignēs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs procul significātiō fīat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dīcit.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus, tum in rē mīlitārī potest fortūna. Nam ut magnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius afferrētur, sīc magnae fuit fortūnae, omnī mīlitārī īnstrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, raedīs equīsque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsque eius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs pugnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum perīculum et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.

31. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmissīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Ardu-

ennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt, hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere cōnsuērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī eius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

32. Segnī Condrūsīque ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret: Nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar explōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, fīnēs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiīs in trēs partēs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Atuatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hoc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titūrius atque Auruncule̅ius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentīs legiōnem quārtam decimam relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē cōnscrīptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

33. Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Atuatucīs adiacet dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen Sabim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partēs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōnfirmat, quam ad diem eī

legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur dēbērī frūmentum sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūrsus commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium bellī capere possint.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnēs partēs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem praesidī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat cōnsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātibus erant nōta, magnamque rēs dīligentiam requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs ā perterritīs ac dispersīs perīculum accidere), sed in singulīs mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnficī stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs; sī continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in eius modī difficultātibus, quantum dīligentiā prōviderī poterat, prōvidēbātur ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur, simul ut magnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitātis tollātur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs cognōscī potuit. Dissipātīs

ac perterritīs hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tēncterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; prīmōs Eburōnum fīnēs adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, magnō pecoris numerō, cuius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs, 'Quid vōs,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Atuatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Atuatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cuius haec indiciō cognōverant.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs Caesaris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī passus esset, septimō diē diffīdēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illīus patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem ex castrīs ēgredī nōn licēret, nūllum eius modī cāsum exspectāns quō, novem oppositīs legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersīs ac paene dēlētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passuum tribus offendī posset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc

spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter CCC, sub vexillō ūnā mittuntur; magna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, magna vīs iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt vīsī, obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appropinquārent, usque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix prīmum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs cōnfirmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discrīmine; capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfirmant tantum ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in perīculō cognōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo cōnscrīptī atque ūsus mīlitāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī signa procul cōnspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cognōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in signa manipulōsque coniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent: Quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse; aliī ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hoc veterēs nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vexillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī quī in iugō cōnstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ōrdinēs huius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pugnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac

tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum, quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus—nē minimum quidem cāsuī locum relinquī dēbuisse—multum fortūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum maximē admīrandum vidēbātur quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorīgis fīnēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vexandōs hostēs profectus, magnō equitum coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus, in omnēs partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs dīmissō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōnspectū contenderent, ut spē cōnsequendī illātā atque īnfīnītō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiam initūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlīcitātem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē ēriperet et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsque peteret nōn maiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere audēbat.

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps eius cōnsilī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā mōre maiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs ad fīnēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum fīnibus Agedincī in hībernīs collocāvit, frumentōque exercituī prōvīsō, ut īnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK VII. VERCINGETORIX AND THE GENERAL REVOLT OF GAUL

For more than a year Gaul had been ready for revolt: it lacked only an opportunity and a leader. Early in 52 B.C. the opportunity came, and with it the leader appeared. For the first time Caesar had to meet a man who could unite all Gaul against him. In the previous books Caesar has been the hero of the story; in the seventh he shares the honor with Vercingetorix.

In the fall Caesar had quartered his army in the northern half of Gaul, chiefly at Agedincum, and had gone to upper Italy. In the winter the Gauls learned of serious disturbances in Rome, which seemed sure to keep Caesar in Italy. This was their opportunity, for they believed they could cope with the legions if Caesar were absent. The Carnutes struck the first blow by killing some Romans who were at Cenabum. The news reached Vercingetorix at his home in Gergovia, among the Arverni. Since his state would not rise at once, he collected troops, made himself king of the Arverni, and began stirring up revolt in other states. In a short time he was the recognized head of a confederacy which included almost every state north, west, and southwest of the Haedui.

It was still winter when Caesar, summoned by this news, returned to the Province. His army was 200 miles away; the Haedui, who lay between, were suspected; Vercingetorix was in a position which threatened Caesar if he tried to join the army. By skillful maneuvering he drew Vercingetorix out of the way, then with a few horsemen rode night and day to join his legions at Agedincum. Vercingetorix at once attacked a town of the Boii. Although it was too early to move an army comfortably, Caesar had either to relieve the Boii or let his other allies see that he could not protect them. As usual, Caesar chose to act. Marching by a circuit he had taken two towns and was laying siege to a third before Vercingetorix would raise the siege and march to meet him. The Gallic leader arrived just in time to be defeated in a cavalry battle and to witness the surrender of the town. Caesar then marched to Avaricum.

Vercingetorix now showed his mastery over his followers by persuading them to adopt a desperate plan. Caesar had been getting his

supplies from the houses and towns along his line of march. The Gauls decided to burn every house and every town, except those which seemed impregnable, along Caesar's route. Vercingetorix wished to burn Avaricum, but the Bituriges believed that it could not be taken, and he allowed it to stand. Caesar laid siege to it, while Vercingetorix confined himself to cutting off Caesar's supplies. For twenty-five days the defense was stubborn, but at last the town was taken and nearly 40,000 men, women, and children were slaughtered.

Judging by his past experience with the Gauls Caesar believed that this disaster would break up the coalition against him and that he would now have to deal only with single states. Accordingly he divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north, against the Senones and the Parisii, while he himself marched south with the remaining six, against the Arverni. But Caesar had made a mistake. Vercingetorix reminded his followers that he had never wished Avaricum to be defended, promised to extend the revolt, and demanded better discipline in the future. He held the states he already had and won over new ones, so that Caesar with his six legions had to face a more formidable enemy than before, when he had ten.

But Caesar marched to Gergovia, as he had planned, and camped before it in perplexity. The town was situated on a high hill. Vercingetorix had arrived before him and was encamped on the upper part of the hill, under the walls of the town. Against such a position aggers and towers were useless. With so small an army the town could not be invested and starved into submission. Caesar saw that he must withdraw, but he felt certain that if he did not first win some success the Haedui would rise against him. One day he learned that the Gauls had left their camp in order to fortify a weak spot in their lines. Determining to sack the camp, he sent a part of his legions up the hill, under orders not to attempt to take the town. But the soldiers pushed on. Already a few had mounted the walls of the town, when the Gauls hastened up and drove them down the hill with heavy loss. The necessary retreat followed defeat instead of success.

Instantly the Haedui rose: they plundered one of their own towns, in which Caesar had great stores of provisions; there they got possession of Caesar's hostages, his one means of holding the states which had not yet revolted; and they posted guards along the Liger, which they believed unfordable. Nevertheless, with the speed which so often disconcerted his enemies, Caesar marched to the river, found a ford, got supplies from the Haeduan fields, and marched on among the Senones. There he was joined by Labienus, who had extricated himself from a most perilous position by winning a great victory at Lutetia (Paris).

The revolt of the Haedui and their capture of Caesar's hostages was the signal for the revolt of almost all Gaul. Only the Remi and the Lingones remained faithful to Caesar. By the unanimous vote of a council Vercingetorix was made commander-in-chief of the whole country. With 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry he renewed his wise policy of cutting off Caesar's supplies and refusing battle. At the same time he sent an army to invade the Province. So serious was the situation that Caesar decided to march to the Province, partly to defend it, partly to get reinforcements.

Then Vercingetorix made his first mistake. He decided to attack the retreating Romans, hoping either to cut them off or at least to strip them of their baggage. But his own army was defeated and fled for refuge to Alesia, closely pursued by the Romans. There Caesar determined to end the war. The town lay on a hill, as impregnable as Gergovia; but Caesar now had his entire army, and he began a ring of fortifications, within which the Gauls were to be starved into surrender. Before the investment was complete, Vercingetorix sent out all his cavalry with orders to bring every fighting man in Gaul to the rescue. He himself chose to stay with his 80,000 infantry, to hold the town till relief should come. The result shows that this was his second and last mistake, since his leadership was more needed outside than within. Caesar had now to prepare for a double attack, from without and from within. The inner line of works was made eleven miles in circumference, the outer fourteen. These lines were strengthened by every cunning device his ingenuity could suggest.

At last, when the supplies of the besieged were almost exhausted, the great relieving army came into view, 250,000 infantry and 8,000 cavalry. But this great host was crippled by the lack of a capable leader. The supreme command lay in a council of delegates from the several states, under which four generals acted. On the day after their arrival the Gallic cavalry attacked the Romans, while the besieged sallied out to attack the inner line. The cavalry was defeated, and the besieged returned to the town. Then a night attack was directed, both from within and from without, against the works in the plain west of the town. This too proved fruitless.

The third and last attack was almost successful. Sixty thousand picked men attacked the weakest point in the outer line of defense, and the besieged displayed desperate courage at several points in the inner line. If the rest of the relieving army had attacked several parts of the outer line at the same time, the Gauls would surely have won the victory; for the soldiers posted at the points of attack were not sufficient to defend them. But, lacking unity of purpose, the great Gallic army did

nothing, and Caesar was able to send to the rescue troops from other parts of the line. The 60,000 were almost all killed, and the rest of the relieving army dispersed to their homes that night.

The end had come. The besieged were starving and hopeless. Vercingetorix told them that all was lost and they might hand him over, living or dead, to Caesar. They accepted the offer and sent word to Caesar. Vercingetorix rode out from the town alone and bowed himself at Caesar's feet. We are told, though not by Caesar, that six years later he appeared in Caesar's triumphal procession and was then executed.

Caesar's narrative concludes with the submission of the Haedui and the Arverni, which immediately followed the fall of Alesia. In his winter quarters at Bibracte he wrote the seven books of his Commentaries, in which the breaking of the great rebellion forms a fitting climax for his story. But his work was not yet complete. Though concerted resistance was at an end, he spent two years more in quelling smaller revolts here and there, and in conciliating the states which had been conquered. The events of these years are contained in an eighth book, written by Hirtius, one of his officers. Then came the civil war with Pompey, and Caesar left his work so well done that Gaul never revolted, even during the years when Caesar could have spared neither time nor men to subdue her.

LIBER SEPTIMUS.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede, dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrārent, dīlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, qui iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur, et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur petunt, collātīs mīlitāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissimā caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātīs

Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius reī cōnstitūtō ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ab Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dīlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Sum-

mae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam maiōre commissō dēlictō ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat, leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū, Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cognōverint, ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiāverint, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē iīs quidem quī eō tempore quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et magnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīsti-

māvit ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, nē ab hostibus dīripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: Datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum

locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre īnstituit.

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī quam tantā contumēliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppugnāre īnstituit eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sescentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse, ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum allātō nūntiō dē oppugnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs diēī tempore exclūsus in posterum oppugnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar

legiōnēs quās expedītās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorīx, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cognōvit, oppugnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppugnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspexērunt atque in spem auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter CCCC submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

14. Vercingetorīx, tot continuīs incommodīs Vellaunodūnī,

Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs, suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic reī studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere; hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā commūnis salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō quōqueversus quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod, quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum perīculō longius ā castrīs prōcessūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedīmentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam mīlitiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā, ūnō diē amplius XX urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus; in omnibus partibus incendia cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī magnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hoc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorīge, post

concēdente et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum, ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora quae ad Avaricum agerentur cognōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō afficiēbat, etsī quantum ratiōne prōviderī poterat ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vineās agere, turrēs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et īnfirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint et pecore ex longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indigna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: Sīc sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam īnfectā rē discēderent; hoc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppugnātiōnem relīquissent; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitātēs quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captīvīs

Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cognitō carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpias omnēs in locō ēditō atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā. Hōc sē colle interruptīs pontibus Gallī fīdūciā locī continēbant generātimque distribūtī omnia vada eius palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs premerent ex locō superiōre; ut quī propinquitātem locī vidēret parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret, quī inīquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cognōsceret. Indignantēs mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proelī exposcentēs ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam: Quōs cum sīc animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquītātis condemnārī dēbēre, nisi eōrum vītam laude suā habeat cāriōrem. Sīc mīlitēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre īnstituit.

20. Vercingetorīx, cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis īnsimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās relīquisset, quod eius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte et celeritāte vēnissent: Nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respon-

dit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī dēbuisse et illīc fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmicandum impellerētur, cui reī propter animī mollitiem studēre omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae, sī alicuius indiciō vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cognōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint, quī dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallīs explōrāta; quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur. 'Haec ut intellegātis,' inquit, 'ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs.' Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et fame vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; fame et inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrēs sufficere cuiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse; itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. 'Haec,' inquit, 'ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis; cuius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem fame paene cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat ā mē prōvīsum est.'

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cuius ōrātiōnem approbant: Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec maiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs

in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cuiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant, et aggerem cunīculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius, quod apud eōs magnae sunt ferrāriae atque omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbrīs diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī ignem īnferēbant aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur, et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium mālīs adaequābant, et apertōs cunīculōs praeustā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et maximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs efferciuntur. Hīs collocātīs et coagmentātīs alius īnsuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissīs spatiīs singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est, alternīs trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revīncta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impedītā oppugnātione, mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus XXV aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret mīlitēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat; aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitārī potest fundēbant, ut quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui reī ferrētur auxilium vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris semper duae legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deustōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod dignum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratione ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterī successit tertius et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam restīnctō aggere atque omnī parte submōtīs hostibus fīnis est pugnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hoc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfirmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

27. Posterō diē Caesar, prōmōtā turrī dērēctīsque operibus quae facere īnstituerat, magnō coortō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit et quid fierī vellet ostendit; legiōnibusque in occultō expedītīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, iīs quī prīmī mūrum ascendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque signum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō ac locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partēs continentī impetū petīvērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn

aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsōlātus cohortātusque est nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cuius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī. Errāre, sī quī in bellō omnēs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cuius reī testēs ipsōs habēret; sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hoc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter maiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cuius cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc huius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant eius affirmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; primumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt; et sīc erant

animō cōnfirmātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda exīstimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat. Huic reī idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expugnātō refūgerant armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittāriōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permagnus numerus in Galliā, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum magnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut maximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat: Summō esse in perīculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illūstrem adulēscentem, alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognātiōnis, cuius frāter Valetiācus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs; dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum, suās cuiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat. Id nē accidat positum in eius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.

33. Caesar, etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōnfīderet auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic reī praevertendum exīstimāvit, et, quod lēgibus Haeduōrum iīs quī summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex fīnibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficīscī statuit senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucīs clam convocātīs aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit, frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolitāvem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis intermissīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Haeduōs ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis oblivīscerentur atque omnibus omissīs rēbus huic bellō servīrent eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē, dēvictā Galliā, exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi celeriter mitterent quae in praesidiīs reī frūmentāriae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvīsit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cognitā Vercingetorīx, omnibus interruptīs eius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōnspectū ferēque ē regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat, dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent. Erat in magnīs Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē maiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum

Elaver vadō trānsīrī sōlet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs ē regiōne ūnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedīmentīs, ut cōnsuērat, mīsit, distractīs quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredī iussīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars īnferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cognitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, magnīs itineribus antecessit.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnit equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedīsset. At Vercingetorīx, castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque, omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātīs quā dēspicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat, prīncipēsque eārum cīvitātum quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquā magnam partem et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn īnfirmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō, potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā maiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut

tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitāvis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus colloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps Litaviccus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortāturque ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: Ūnam esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem quae certissimam Galliae victōriam dētineat; eius auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōnsistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī lībertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant? Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs eius cōnsilī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātrēsque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōnstituunt.

38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter XXX ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns, 'Quō proficīscimur,' inquit, 'mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōditiōnis ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cognōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meīs propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.' Prōdūcuntur iī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitūdinī expōnunt: Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum

occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse. Conclāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi vērō,' inquit ille, 'cōnsilī sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indignissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus.' Ostendit cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī eius praesidī fīdūciā ūnā erant; continuō magnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit, ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit, eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

39. Eporēdorīx Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dignitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitāve, alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pugnāverant. Ex hīs Eporēdorīx cognitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvīs adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit.

40. Magnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat, nūllā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expedītās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit, nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante

reperit ad hostēs profūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus, prōgressus mīlia passuum XXV agmen Haeduōrum cōnspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit interdīcitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorīgem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cognitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā Haeduī manūs tendere, dēditiōnem significāre et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profūgit.

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Haeduōrum missīs quī suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppugnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter magnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vāllō permanendum. Multitūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda magnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cognōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae maximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitāvis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem fidē datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere

cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs maiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

43. Interim nūntiō allātō omnēs eōrum mīlitēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt, Litaviccī frātrumque bona pūblicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem suī pūrgandī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: Nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvitāte iūdicāre neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere. Ipse maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ā timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Mīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cognōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

45. Hāc rē cognitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum tur-

mās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce magnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus equitum speciē ac simulātiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs, quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō certī quid esset explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspīciō, atque omnēs illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus, tēctīs īnsignibus suōrum occultātīsque signīs mīlitāribus, rārōs mīlitēs, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex maiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit lēgātīsque, quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat, quid fierī velit ostendit; in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs, nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: Hoc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī. Hīs rēbus expositīs signum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

46. Oppidī mūrus ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō signō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō signa cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi esse exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent, neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō, ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās

augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō depulsōs vīdisset, quōminus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsigne pācātōrum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.' Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, 'Frūstrā,' inquit, 'meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.' Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.

51. Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostēs signīs cōnstitērunt.

Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus septingentī dēsīderātī.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur neque signō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantopere eōrum animī magnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantopere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmum cōnfirmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō, atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum exīstimāns in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdōrīge Haeduīs appellātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum: Opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfirmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem

cīvitātis exīstimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus iīs breviter sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit, quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs sociīs impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs, et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dignitātem et grātiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum magnam partem contulerat; hūc magnum numerum equōrum huius bellī causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptum mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitātis cognōvissent, Litaviccum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maximae auctōritātis, Convictolitāvem magistrātum magnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs, nōn praetermittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat, quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

56. Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēn-

suit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut priusquam essent maiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciendum exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia atque indignitās reī et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum maximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum magnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma līberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret atque hostibus prīmō aspectū perturbātīs, incolumem exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus, eō supplēmentō quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat relictō Agedincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum, positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cognitō magnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam reī mīlitāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fierī animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs et reī novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum magna pars erat

ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs, rē cognitā ab iīs quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutetiam incendī pontēsque eius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs afferēbantur, Gallīque in colloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōnfirmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat, neque iam ut aliquid acquīreret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā maximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat, singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā quattuor mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs, quās minimē firmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat, castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīnque eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine magnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrēs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iusserat.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod magna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus, quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et magnum īre agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

62. Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus, mīlitēs cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductū saepe numerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat signum proelī. Prīmō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duodecima legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. Incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt signaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At iī quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fugien-

tibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relicta erant; inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervēnit.

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requīrunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī parent.

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs diemque eī reī cōnstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quīndecim mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem anteā habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex

parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magic futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant,

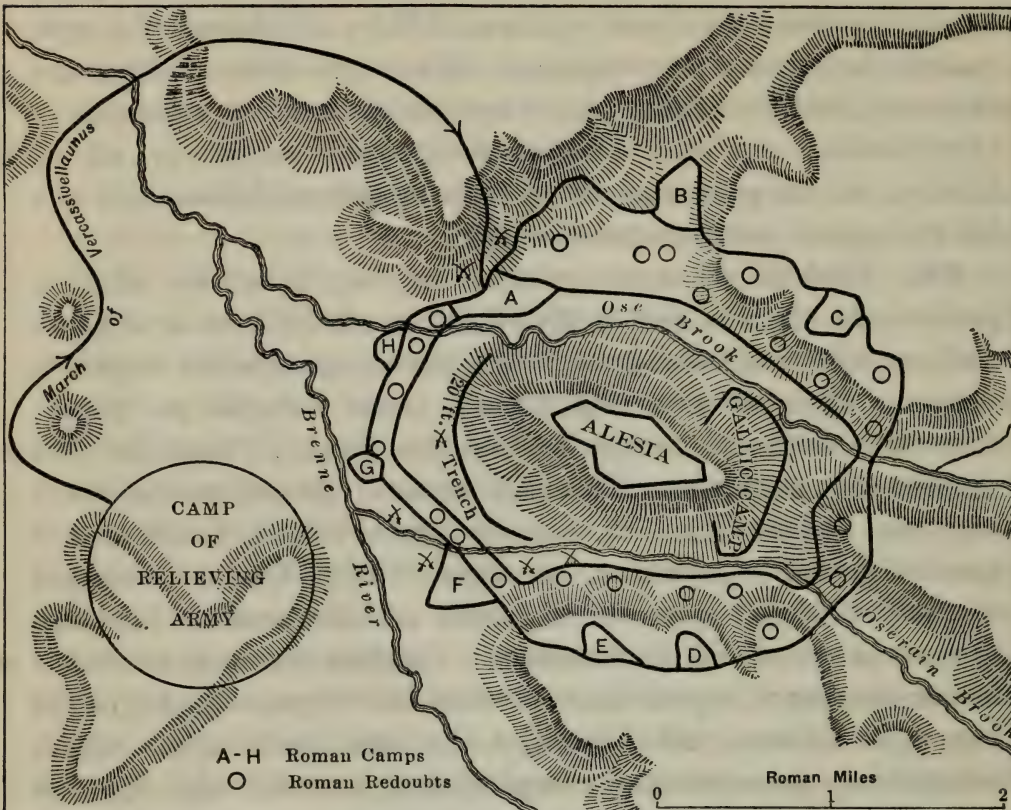
et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī; nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs, sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitāve proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

The siege of Alesia was the climax of the war, and the greatest of Caesar's military operations against the Gauls. The position was one of remarkable strength, and the number of the enemy was enormous.

The location of the town at Alise Ste. Reine was made entirely certain by Colonel Stoffel, who, acting under the orders of the Emperor Napoleon III, spent three years in excavating the works described by Caesar. At the present time further excavations are going on at the same place. The town occupied the summit of a hill whose base is six miles in circumference. The slopes rise gradually to a wall of rock which is broken in a few places, especially at the

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut



CAESAR'S LINES AROUND ALESIA

A simplified form of plans which are based on the actual results of excavation.

eastern end. Above this wall, 500 feet above the plain, is a flat summit, one and a quarter miles long and a half mile wide. Springs and wells furnished abundant water. On the north, east, and south other hills of equal height surround this one, but on the west is an open plain.

Caesar had ten legions, containing perhaps 40,000 men, and some cavalry. As only two Gallic states now remained faithful to him, his Gallic cavalry were few. He had therefore hired some German cavalry, who were superior to the Gallic in fighting ability, though far inferior in number. He must also have had some auxiliary infantry. Vercingetorix had 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry. After the siege began, more than 250,000 Gauls came to help Vercingetorix.

Chap. 68-74. Caesar pursues Vercingetorix to Alesia and lays siege to the town. Knowing that an army will come to relieve the town, he constructs a double line of works about it.

Chap. 68. Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, pursued by Caesar.

1. **fugātō . . . equitātū:** as Caesar was marching toward the province, Vercingetorix attacked him with his cavalry, while his infantry stood in battle array before their camp, taking no part in the fight. Vercingetorix was

prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar, impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque

---

defeated chiefly by Caesar's German cavalry.

ut . . . collocāverat: i.e. without returning to camp for the baggage.

7. **alterō diē**, "on the next day."

9. **equitātū:** ablative of specification.

Chap. 69. The situation of Alesia, and Caesar's fortifications around it.

2. **locō:** ablative of place. On the whole description, see the plan, p. 392, and the long note on p. 391.

3. **duo flūmina:** the Ose and the Oserain.

4. **ante oppidum:** i.e. on the west.

in longitūdinem: this is the greatest length of the plain, measuring south from the hill northwest of the town to a point not shown on the plan.

6. **parī fastīgiō:** descriptive ablative.

7. **mūrō:** the wall of the town.

quae pars, hunc omnem locum, "all that part which."

8. **māceriam:** traces of this wall may still be seen. The camp protected the low ridge which connects the hill of Alesia with the one to its east,—the only point at which the town could possibly have been stormed.

9. **eius mūnītiōnis:** this probably refers only to the ring of camps and redoubts; but he may have already traced out and begun the inner wall and ditch, represented on the plan as completely encircling the town. This line is somewhat less than eleven Roman miles in circumference.

11. **tenēbat**, "extended"; so that

XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmoverī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum

mīlia is an accusative of extent of space.

castra VIII: traces of all these have been discovered.

castella XXIII: traces of five have been discovered; the rest are located on the plan only by conjecture.

Chap. 70. The Gauls are defeated in a cavalry battle.

1. **opere**: the building of redoubts and camps.

2. **intermissam collibus**, "unbroken by hills."

4. **Germānōs**: the German cavalry.

5. **prō castrīs**: those near the plain.

6. **praesidiō**, "support."

8. **angustiōribus . . . relictīs**, "in the gates, which had been made too narrow." The cavalry fled up the Ose and the Oserain to the western walls of the Gallic camp.

11. **prō vāllō** = *prō castrīs*, l. 5.

12. **nōn minus**: than the horsemen, who had just been routed.

quī . . . Gallī: the Gallic infantry, who had been in the camp all the time.

15. **portās**: of the town.

Chap. 71. Vercingetorix sends out all his cavalry to appeal for help.

1. **perficiantur**: App. 236, *b*.

2. **equitātum dīmittere**: they were useless in the city, and would only help to consume the limited supply of provisions.

cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

72. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs, Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum vīgintī dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent; reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā passūs CCCC redūxit hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam

---

5. **cōgant:** plural because all the cavalry are thought of as a subject; *omnēs* is the object.

6. **sē . . . meritum,** "him, the man who had done most for the liberty of all."

9. **ratiōne initā,** "according to his calculations."

10. **tolerārī posse:** impersonal; "they could hold out."

12. **dīmittit:** they probably escaped up the valleys of the Ose and the Oserain.

15. **virītim distribuit:** in order that they might be eaten first, since there was nothing to feed them on.

Chap. 72. Caesar's works of investment.

2. **haec genera:** excavations show that the complete works, as described in this and the following chapter, were constructed only in the plain west of the town. When the line ran over hills it did not need so much artificial protection.

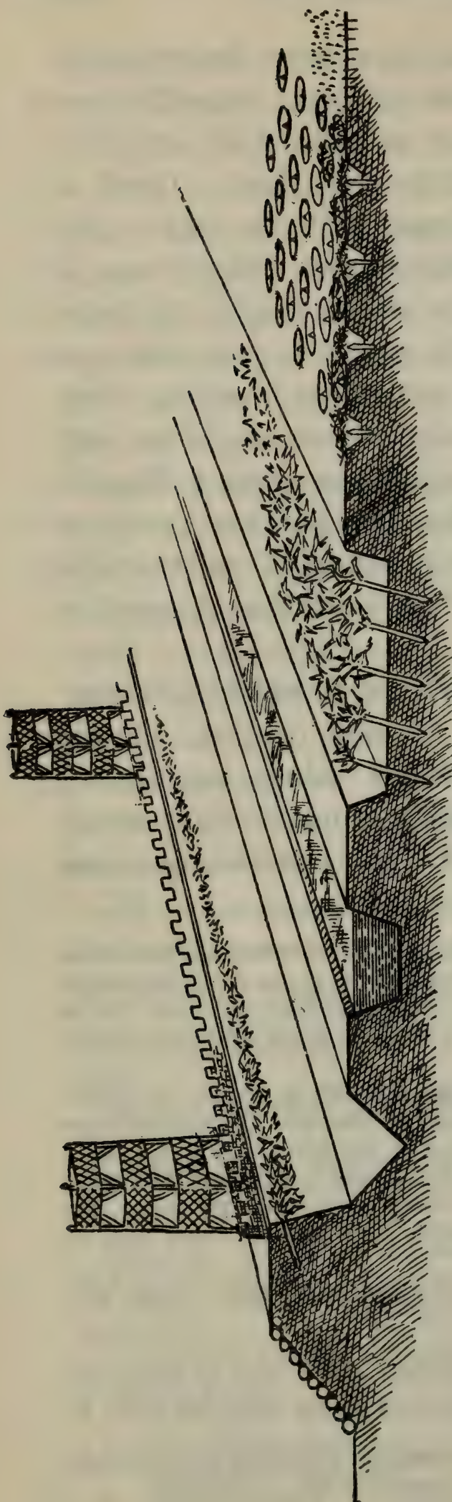
pedum vīgintī: in width; the depth was eight or nine feet. This trench was dug only in the plain, and was no part of the real line of investment. As Caesar says later, it merely protected the men while they were working back of it.

3. **dērēctīs lateribus,** "with perpendicular sides."

solum: not *sōlum.*

5. **passūs CCCC:** this is about the real distance at the ends: see plan, p. 392.

hōc cōnsiliō: explained by the clauses *nē . . . advolāret aut . . . possent.*



DETAILS OF FORTIFICATIONS AROUND ALESIA

tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās XV pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiē-

---

6. **tantum spatium:** the distance around the hill of Alesia.

7. **nec . . . cingerētur:** i.e. Caesar could not spare men enough to form a line of protection for those who were working.

15. **eādem altitūdine:** i.e. the two trenches were of the same depth, which the excavations show was eight or nine feet.

16. **interiōrem:** the one nearer the town.

18. **ex flūmine:** chiefly the Oserain. The gravel washed into the trench was traced for some distance by the excavators.

19. **post eās:** Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia.

20. **XII pedum:** this was the combined height of the earthwork (*aggerem*) and the palisades (*vāllum*).

21. **lōrīcam pinnāsque:** these were made of interwoven osiers, and were used as a facing for the palisades. The *lōrīca* was continuous, furnishing some protection, but low enough to allow the Romans to throw missiles over it; the

cit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revīnctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōr-

---

pinnae were battlements, high enough to shield the whole person.

22. **cervīs:** tree tops, with the branches sharpened. They projected horizontally, and were held in place by the lower ends of the palisades.

pluteōrum: here referring to the entire parapet, including *vāllum*, *lōrīca*, and *pinnae*.

23. **tōtō opere:** ablative of place.

24. **quae distārent:** a clause of characteristic; "so that they were, etc."

Chap. 73. The devices by which Caesar strengthened his lines of investment.

1. **erat . . . prōgrediēbantur,** lit. "to get timber and provisions and for . . . to be made was necessary for our diminished troops, which, etc." = "our troops, reduced in number by having to go farther and farther from the camp, had to, etc." *fierī* is best translated by the active. The soldiers had to go farther and farther from the camp as they exhausted the supplies near at hand; this reduced the number of men actually at work at any one time.

5. **rūrsus addendum,** "that he must still add."

6. **quō,** "in order that."

7. **truncīs,** etc.: a tree top or a great limb with many branches was lopped off, and each branch was peeled and sharpened. Five rows of these were set upright in a trench which ran parallel with the trenches described in **72,** 10. Apparently there were several of these trenches, although the illustration, p. 396, shows but one.

9. **hūc** = *in hās fossās.*

10. **ab rāmīs,** "with their branches only."

11. **quīnī:** five rows in each trench.

coniūnctī . . . implicātī: the rows were set so closely together that their projecting branches interlaced.

12. **quō quī intrāverant,** "whoever got among them."

vāllīs: the sharpened branches, which were like palisades.

13. **ante hōs:** i.e. on the side toward Alesia.

oblīquīs . . . dispositīs: i.e. as checkers are arranged on a board.

dinibus in quīncuncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum XXX pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

---

15. paulātim fastīgiō: i.e. the pits were funnel-shaped. They were about six feet in diameter at the top. Many of them have been found.

16. crassitūdine: descriptive ablative.

17. praeustī: to harden the point.

18. singulī . . . exculcābantur, "each stake was trodden in at the bottom with earth a foot deep."

22. haec: i.e. the *līlia*.

23. tāleae: wooden stakes with barbed hooks of iron set in their tops. The hooks were so short that they would not be seen among the grass. Several of them have been found.



STIMULUS

Chap. **74.** Caesar constructs a similar line of works as a defense against attacks from without.

1. regiōnēs . . . aequissimās, "keeping on as level ground as possible." This outer line ran over the tops of the hills (see plan, p. 392); but Caesar avoided, as far as he could, places where an outside enemy could charge downhill on the works.

2. XIIII . . . passuum: the line included all of Caesar's camps and redoubts, and of course was longer than the inner line; but it was somewhat less than fourteen miles in length.

3. dīversās ab hīs, "facing in the opposite direction."

4. ut . . . possent: i.e. that the garrisons of single camps might not be surrounded and cut off from the others. Between the two lines troops could move back and forth so as to concentrate at points of danger.

7. habēre convectum, "bring in and keep."

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs X; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; V mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassibus; Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Bōiīs bīna; X ūniversīs cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ab Commiō prō eius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

Chap. **75-79.** A great Gallic army arrives at Alesia just when the supplies of the town are exhausted.

Chap. **75**. The Gallic states raise a great army.

2. ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx: cf. **71**, 4. The decision to send a fixed quota from each state, instead of all the fighting men, was wise. The total of the quotas given in this chapter is 259,000. If that army could not conquer Caesar, no army of Gauls could.

5. ratiōnem habēre, "have any means."

6. imperant, etc.: forty-two states are named in the following list. No Aquitanian state is mentioned; the Remi and the Lingones were faithful to Caesar; the Treveri were threatened by the Germans. With these exceptions the list includes all the important states of Gaul.

10. duodēna mīlia, "twelve thousand each"; translate the following distributives similarly.

19. suum numerum, "their full quota."

20. quod dīcerent: cf. note on *quod dīceret*, V, **6**, 11.

suō . . . arbitriō, "on their own account and according to their own ideas." The Bellovaci were strong and proud (II, **4**, 12-15), and they kept their promise by taking up arms against Caesar the following year.

22. prō, "in consideration of."

76. Huius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur: Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā

Chap. 76. The Gallic army marches to Alesia under divided leadership.

1. **anteā**: cf. IV, 21, 13; V, 22, 11.

3. **cīvitātem eius**: the Atrebates.

immūnem, "free from tribute." This implies that the other conquered states paid tribute, though Caesar has not said so.

iūra . . . reddiderat: i.e. had allowed the state to live under its old form of government, instead of appointing a governor to rule it.

4. **ipsī**: i.e. Commius. As a punishment for their obstinate resistance, the Morini had been deprived of their *iūra lēgēsque* and were governed by Commius.

5. **cōnsēnsiō lībertātis vindicandae**, "unanimity in demanding liberty."

7. **movērētur**: the subject is *Gallia*.

13. **dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus**, "representatives of the several states." The fatal weakness of the Gauls was their inability to unite effectively. The states were so jealous of one another that they could not agree on a single commander, now that Vercingetorix was out of the question. It was bad enough to have four commanders-in-chief; but it was worse to hamper them with a council of representatives.

14. **ad**: cf. App. 131, *a*.

15. **aspectum modo**, "the mere sight."

17. **ancipitī proeliō**, "in a battle with double front"; explained by the following clauses.

pugnārētur, cernerentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

Chap. 77. The besieged are in such distress that desperate measures are proposed in a council.

1. **diē quā exspectāverant**: Vercingetorix had told the cavalry that he had supplies for thirty days; at the end of that time he expected relief. For the gender of *diē* see App. 30, *a*.

auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod

---

3. **in Haeduīs:** where the army of relief had gathered.

5. **suppeterent:** implied indirect discourse for the present indicative.

6. **nōn praetereunda,** "to deserve not to be passed over."

12. **cum hīs . . . est,** "I am concerned with those."

14. **ista** is the subject, and is explained by the infinitives which follow. It is attracted from the neuter into the gender of the predicate noun, *mollitia.*

15. **quī . . . ferant,** "men are more easily found to offer . . . than to, etc."

17. **probārem sī vidērem:** App. 254.

tantum potest, "has so much weight."

dignitās, "the authority," of those who wished to make a sally.

18. **nūllam . . . iactūram,** "no loss except (that) of our lives."

19. **respiciāmus:** App. 217.

20. **quid propinquīs nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis,** lit. "what of courage do you think there will be to our relatives?"

23. **nōlīte exspoliāre, prōsternere, subicere:** App. 219.

ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

---

28. ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus: the outer line of works, which showed that the Romans expected an attack from that side.

29. illōrum: the Gauls outside.

30. hīs: the Romans.

31. testibus, "as witnesses."

32. quid . . . est, "what, then, is my advice?"; lit. "belongs to my advice."

33. parī: i.e. equal to the present war.

34. Cimbrōrum Teutonumque: see Int. 27.

38. pulcherrimum: predicate adjective with *esse* understood; "I should think it most glorious for this precedent to be established."

39. quid . . . fuit, "what likeness had that war (to this one)?"; *illī bellō* is a dative of possessor.

dēpopulātā: passive in meaning, though the verb is deponent.

41. aliās . . . petiērunt: after ravaging Gaul, instead of settling there they marched into Spain.

43. quōs: the antecedent is *hōrum*.

48. fīnitimam Galliam: i.e. the Province.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre dēmōnstrāvimus complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

Chap. 78. The non-combatants vainly endeavor to leave Alesia.

2. **oppidō excēdant:** although Caesar tells us (**77**, 2) that the grain was already eaten up, there must have been some scanty supply of food left. None of this could be spared for the non-combatants.

3. **experiantur:** the subject is the same as that of *cōnstituunt*, not that of *excēdant*.

4. **ūtendum,** "that they must adopt."

10. **recipī prohibēbat:** this was not purposeless cruelty, but an attempt to force the Gauls to use up their supplies. According to another writer, the non-combatants perished of hunger between the Roman lines and the town.

Chap. 79. The Gallic army arrives and encamps outside Caesar's lines.

1. **quibus . . . permissa erat:** cf. **76**, 10.

3. **colle . . . occupātō:** see plan p. 392.

7. **ab eō locō:** i.e. from the plain. They expected to support the cavalry if it became necessary.

9. **fit . . . eōs,** "they congratulated one another."

10. **ante oppidum:** on the west.

11. **proximam fossam:** the twenty-foot trench.

crātibus: here apparently a kind of bridge, made of interwoven boughs.

aggere, "earth."

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs quae summum undique iugum tenēbant dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō, Gallī, atque hōc spatiō magnō

Chap. 80-82. The Gauls are defeated in two battles.

Chap. 80. The Gallic cavalry is defeated.

1. **exercitū:** i.e. the infantry.

utramque . . . mūnītiōnum: the two lines of defense, the one facing the town and the other the relieving army.

2. **sī ūsus veniat,** "if there should be need."

6. **rārōs . . . armātūrae:** an imitation of the German arrangement; see I, **48**, 11-19.

9. **complūrēs:** of Caesar's cavalry.

10. **Gallī:** the spectators.

14. **neque . . . factum,** "and no brave or cowardly act"; *factum* is used as a noun, but is modified by adverbs because it is really a participle.

16. **cum pugnārētur,** "when the battle had been going on."

17. **dubiā victōriā,** "without decisive result."

Germānī: they had saved the day for Caesar in former battles; see **70**, 4.

20. **cēdentēs:** accusative.

Chap. 81. A night attack is made on both the Roman lines.

1. **Gallī:** the relieving army.

crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercinget

2. **harpagōnum**: hooks fastened to long poles, with which they intended to pull down the breastworks on the Roman ramparts.

3. **campestrēs**: in the plain west of the town.

4. **quā . . . possent**: a purpose clause.

9. **ut . . . attribūtus**: cf. 80, 1.

11. **sudibus**: stakes with sharpened points hardened by fire, used as javelins.

12. **glandibus**: for throwing in slings.

14. **Antōnius**: Mark Antony, afterwards triumvir.

15. **hae partēs**: the defenses in the plain.

16. **ex . . . dēductōs**, "troops brought from, etc."

Chap. 82. The night attack is repelled.

1. **dum aberant**: for tense see App. 234, *b*.

longius, "at a considerable distance."

3. **stimulīs**: see 73, 22-25.

scrobēs: see 73, 13-22.

7. **ex . . . castrīs**: especially the ones marked D and E on the plan

8. **interiōrēs**: the besieged.

orīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī, necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

---

9. **priōrēs fossās**: probably the twenty-foot trench and the trenches in which the *cippī* were placed.

Chap. 83-88. The relieving army makes a final and desperate attack, and then disappears.

Chap. 83. The relieving army finds a weak point and attacks it.

1. **quid agant**: this question would require the subjunctive in the direct form; App. 210.

4. **opere**: the outer line of defense.

5. **locō inīquō**: explained by *lēniter dēclīvī*. The camp is marked A on the plan. Because the ground sloped down to its outer wall, missiles could easily be thrown into it, and a sloping mound of earth could be built up to its rampart.

7. **duābus legiōnibus**: a strong garrison, to compensate for the weakness of the position.

10. **quid quōque pactō**: English cannot well compress the two questions into one, as the Latin does; "what they want done, and in what way."

12. **videātur**: implied indirect discourse for the future; they said in effect, "we will attack when it shall seem, etc."

19. **reliquae cōpiae**: they amounted

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum.

---

to 190,000 men, less those who may have been killed in battle; but they were so poorly commanded that Caesar says nothing more of them. They probably made a feeble attack in the plain. If they had made vigorous attacks at several other points, Caesar could not have sent reënforcements to camp A. Their bad generalship saved Caesar.

Chap. 84. Vercingetorix attacks the inner line.

2. **longuriōs:** for bridging the trenches.

3. **prōfert:** his first attack was somewhere in the plain, perhaps near camp A.

7. **post tergum:** as the Romans formed two lines placed back to back, each line had the enemy behind it.

8. **pugnantibus,** "as they fought"; App. 120.

suum . . . cōnstāre: their own peril (we should say "safety") depended on the line behind them.

Chap. 85. Both sides fight desperately, the Gauls gaining some advantage.

1. **idōneum locum:** supposed to have been on the hill-side, a little west of camp E.

quāque in parte, "everywhere"; i.e. wherever there was fighting. He could not see all parts of his lines.

2. **utrīsque . . . occurrit,** "both sides realized."

5. **sī rem obtinuerint,** "if they won the victory."

6. **maximē . . . labōrātur:** at this point hundreds of Gallic coins were found. Millstones, broken water jars, and similar things found in the trenches seem to show that the Romans were forced to use as missiles whatever they could lay their hands on.

7. **inīquum . . . fastīgium,** "the unfavorable downward slope of the ground."

Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, post-

---

10. **agger,** etc.: earth was thrown over the *stimulī*, *scrobēs*, etc.; and a sloping mound of earth was thrown against the rampart of the camp.

Chap. 86. Caesar sends re-enforcements to the camp and encourages those fighting in the plain.

3. **dēductīs:** from the rampart.

ēruptiōne: this plan had once saved Galba under similar circumstances; III, 5 and 6.

id: i.e. make a sally.

4. **reliquōs:** those defending the works in the plain. Caesar galloped down from his position on the hill.

7. **loca praerupta:** near the bottom of the hill on which camp E lay. The fortifications were less formidable here because of the nature of the ground. There were no *cippī* to cross.

Chap. 87. Labienus decides on a sally and Caesar hastens to take part in it.

1. **mittit:** to the *loca praerupta*, where the besieged were trying to break through.

4. **eō . . . contendit:** he rode across the plain, between his lines, to camp A.

6. **equitum:** cavalry followed him from camps F, G, and H. He sent a mounted aide to camp B, ordering the cavalry stationed there to ride around outside his outer line and take the Gauls in the rear.

quam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa mīlitāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium

---

9. **XI cohortibus:** originally two legions defended the camp; Labienus had brought six cohorts; Caesar was bringing four; Labienus now secures eleven more: more than two-fifths of the whole army were concentrated at this one point. This was the opportunity for the rest of the Gallic army, if it had been capably led.

10. **quid . . . existimet:** i.e. a sally.

Chap. 88. The sixty thousand are slain, and the rest of the relieving army disperses.

1. **vestītūs:** a scarlet cloak.

2. **dē locīs superiōribus:** the hill above camp A.

3. **haec . . . dēvexa:** the slopes below camp E, from which Caesar started.

hostēs . . . committunt: apparently the Romans have sallied out and the Gauls have withdrawn a little in surprise; now the Gauls attack with greater vigor, hoping to win the victory before Caesar can arrive.

4. **excipit . . . clāmor:** everyone who has seen a football game will understand how the soldiers at other parts of the line watched and cheered on their men.

6. **post tergum:** of the Romans who have sallied out. The *equitātus* and *cohortēs* are those who have followed Caesar.

8. **equitēs occurrunt:** these are the cavalry from camp B.

12. **ex oppidō,** "the Gauls from the town."

14. **ex castrīs:** the camp of the relieving army. The Gauls feared an immediate attack.

quod nisi, "and unless."

subsidiīs: their marches back and forth to relieve points of danger.

cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter XX mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium

---

Chap. 89-90. Vercingetorix surrenders, and the Gallic league is broken up.

Chap. 89. Vercingetorix and the besieged army surrender.

3. **ad utramque rem**, "for either purpose"; explained by the following clauses. The conduct of Vercingetorix in defeat shows that he was of the true heroic mould.

7. **Vercingetorīx dēditur**: he was kept a prisoner till the year 46, that he might appear in Caesar's triumphal procession in Rome; then he was executed.

8. **Haeduīs atque Arvernīs**: since these were the leading states of Gaul, their submission would effectually break up all concerted rebellion.

9. **sī posset**, "to see whether."

10. **capita singula**, "a man apiece."

Chap. 90. The Haedui and the Arverni submit. The army goes into winter quarters.

6. **huic . . . attribuit**: i.e. Rutilus was placed under the orders of Labienus.

8. **nē . . . accipiant**: the Remi had remained faithful to Caesar, while the Bellovaci had announced their intention of fighting him.

Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs, Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

15. supplicātiō: cf. IV, **38**, 12. One might have expected that the number of days would be increased, since this was by far the greatest of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, **13**, 7-19. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvētiī* ubi eōs *tū cōnstitueris* atque esse *volueris;* sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis*, *reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum iī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere; nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut īnsidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut *hīc* locus ubi *cōnstitimus* ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.

I, **14**, 1-20. Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī *accidērunt;* quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellegēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest?* Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam īnsolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās intulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. *Cōnsuēvērunt* enim *dī immortālēs*, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, utī ea quae *pollicēminī vōs* factūrōs *intellegam*, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs

sociīsque *intulistis*, item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbīscum* pācem *faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētiī* ā maiōribus suīs *īnstitūtī sunt* utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; *huius* reī *populus Rōmānus est testis*.

I, **17**, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nūllī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōnferant quod *dēbent:* [these men say] "Praestat, sī (Haeduī) iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī." Ab īsdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī ā mē* coërcērī nōn *possunt;* quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus *tibi ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum perīculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*.

I, **18**, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, *cupidus* rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta *habet*, propterеā quod illō licente contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit;* magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet;* neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris *est* restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit;* imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, **20**, 2-12. *Sciō ista* esse vēra, nec *quisquam* ex eō plūs quam *ego* dolōris *capit*, propterea quod, cum *ego* grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā *possem*, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per *mē crēvit;* quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem *meam ūtitur*. *Ego* tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī *commoveor*. Quod sī quid eī ā *tē* gravius *acciderit*, cum *ego hunc* locum amīcitiae apud *tē teneam*, *nēmō exīstimābit* nōn *meā* voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā *mē āvertentur*.

I, **30**, 3-10. *Intellegimus*, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō *repetierīs*, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī *relīquērunt*, utī . . . habērent.

I, **31**, 5-8. Nōn minus id *contendimus* et *labōrāmus*, nē ea quae *dīxerimus ēnūntientur* quam utī ea quae *volumus impetrēmus*, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum *erit*, summum in cruciātum *nōs ventūrōs vidēmus*.

8-56. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs *sunt duae:* hārum alterius prīncipātum *tenent Haeduī*, alterius *Arvernī*. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum *est* utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum *trānsiērunt;* posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī *adamārunt*, *trāductī sunt* plūrēs. Nunc *sunt* in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs *Haeduī* eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs *contendērunt;* magnam calamitātem *pulsī accēpērunt*, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum *āmīsērunt*. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque *frāctī*, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā *potuerant*, *coāctī sunt* Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. *Ūnus ego sum* ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn *potuerim* ut *iūrārem* aut līberōs *meōs*

obsidēs *darem*. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte *profūgī* et Rōmam ad senātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus *tenēbar*. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs *accidit*, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet*, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum *vēnērunt*, quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur*. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt;* neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* vīctūs cum illā *comparanda. Ariovistus* autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vīcit*, quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter *imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs *poscit* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta *est*. *Homō est barbarus*, *īrācundus*, *temerārius;* nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubitō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium sūmat. *Tū* vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre *potes* nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, **32**, 8-15. Hōc *est miserior* et *gravior fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram *adsit*, *horrent*, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur*, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt*, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt*, omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, **34**, 5-12. Sī quid *mihi* ā Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *vēnissem;* sī quid ille *mē vult*, illum ad *mē* venīre *oportet*.

Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mīrum *vidētur* quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, **35**, 2-18. Quoniam tantō *meō* populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū *meō* rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus *est*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiam *refert*, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus *gravētur* neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum *putet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcat;* deinde, obsidēs quōs *habet* ab Haeduīs *reddat* Sēquanīsque *permittat* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte eius reddere illīs *liceat;* nēve Haeduōs iniūriā *lacessat*, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īnferat*. Sī ita *fēcerit*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia* cum eō *erit;* sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, **36**. Iūs *est* bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent;* item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuēvit*. Sī *ego* populō Rōmānō nōn *praescrībō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impedīrī. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortūnam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stīpendiāriī sunt factī*. Magnam *Caesar* iniūriam *facit*, quī suō adventū vectīgālia *mihi* dēteriōra *facit*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īnferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stīpendiumque quotannīs *pendent;* sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi* Caesar *dēnūntiat* sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volet*, *congre-*

diātur: intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn *subiērunt*, virtūte *possint*.

I, **40**, 3-47. Prīmum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō *dūcāminī vōbīs* quaerendum aut cōgitandum *putātis*. *Ariovistus mē* cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam *appetiit;* cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum *iūdicet? Mihi* quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī?* aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* dīligentiā *dēspērētis?* Factum *est* eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum *est* etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs *accēperant sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest* quantum *habeat* in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā *timuistis*, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*. Dēnique *hī sunt īdem Germānī* quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn *potuērunt*. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet*, *hī*, sī *quaerent*, reperīre *possunt* . . . vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus *fuit*, hāc nē *ipse* quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris *cōnferunt faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere *videantur*. Haec *mihi sunt* cūrae: frūmentum *Sēquanī*, *Leucī*, Lingonēs *subministrant*, iamque *sunt* in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī *dīciminī*, nihil eā rē *commoveor; sciō* enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē

gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia* perpetuā vītā, *fēlīcitās* Helvētiōrum bellō *est perspecta.* Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus *fuī repraesentābō* et *hāc* nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam prīmum intellegere *possim* utrum apud *vōs* pudor atque officium an timor plūs *valeat.* Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur*, tamen *ego* cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ībō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō*, *mihique ea praetōria cohors erit.*

I, **44**. *Trānsiī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque *relīquī;* sēdēs *habeō* in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium *capiō* iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere *cōnsuērunt.* Nōn *ego* Gallīs, sed *Gallī mihi* bellum *intulērunt;* omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad *mē* oppugnandum *vēnērunt* ac contrā *mē* castra *habuērunt; eae* omnēs *cōpiae* ā *mē* ūnō proeliō *pulsae* ac *superātae sunt.* Sī iterum experīrī *volunt*, iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī *volunt*, inīquum *est* dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus *pependērunt.* Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī *mihi* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse *oportet*, atque hāc spē *petiī.* Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium *remittētur* et dēditiciī *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter *recūsābō* populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam *appetiī.* Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id *meī* mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā *faciō;* eius reī testimōnium *est* quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnī* et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī. Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus.* Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus *ēgressus est.* Quid *tibi vīs?* Cūr in *meās* possessiōnēs *venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia*, sīcut *illa vestra.* Ut *mihi* concēdī nōn *oporteat*, sī in *vestrōs* fīnēs impetum *faciam*, sīc item *vōs estis inīquī*, quod in *meō* iūre *mē interpellātis.* Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs *dīcis*, nōn tam *barbarus* neque tam *imperītus sum* rērum ut nōn *sciam* neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs

auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī *mēcum* et cum Sēquanīs *habuērunt* auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. *Dēbeō* suspicārī simulātā *tē* amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā *habēs*, *meī* opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs* atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, *tē* nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste *habēbō*. Quod sī *tē interfēcerō*, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam;* id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum *habeō*, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod sī *dēcesseris* et līberam possessiōnem Galliae *mihi trādideris*, magnō *tē* praemiō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī *volēs* sine ūllō *tuō* labōre et perīculō *cōnficiam*.

I, **45**, 2-11. Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō patitur* utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque *ego iūdicō* Galliam potius esse *tuam* quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī sunt Arvernī* et *Rutēnī* ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit* neque in prōvinciam *redēgit* neque stīpendium *imposuit*. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *lībera dēbet* esse *Gallia*, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī *voluit*.

II, **3**, 4-14. *Nōs nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus*. Neque (*nōs*) cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus*, *parātīque sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre. *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt*, *Germānīque* quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt* sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt; tantusque* est eōrum omnium *furor* ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nobīscum habent*, dēterrēre *potuerīmus* quīn cum hīs consentīrent.

II, **4**, 2-28. *Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus *trāductī* propter locī fertilitātem ibi *cōnsēdērunt*, Gallōsque quī ea loca *incolēbant expulērunt*, *sōlīque*

sunt quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē *fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī *sūmant.* Dē numerō eōrum omnia (*nōs*) *habēmus* explōrāta, propterea quod propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognōvimus.* Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent; hī possunt* cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; *pollicitī sunt* ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant.* Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt fīnitimī;* fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident.* Apud eōs *fuit rēx nostrā* etiam memoriā *Dīviciācus*, tōtīus Galliae *potentissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtinuit;* nunc *est rēx Galba;* ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque *summa* tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII; *pollicentur* mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem *Nerviī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt;* quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, *Ambiānī* decem mīlia, *Morinī* XXV mīlia, *Menapiī* VII mīlia, *Caletī* X mīlia, Veliocassēs et *Viromanduī* totidem, *Atuatucī* XIX mīlia; *Condrūsī*, Eburōnēs, *Caerōsī*, *Caemānī*, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* ad XL mīlia.

II, **14**, 2-13. *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae *fuērunt; impulsī* ab suīs prīncipibus, quī *dīcēbant* Haeduōs ā *tē* in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt.* Quī eius consilī prīncipēs *fuerant*, quod *intellegēbant* quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt. Petunt* non sōlum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō hīs *Haeduī* ut *tuā* clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs *ūtāris.* Quod sī *fēceris*, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis;* quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuērunt.*

II, **15**, 8-15. *Nūllus aditus est* ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil *patiuntur* vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem *exīstimant. Sunt* hominēs *ferī* magnaeque virtūtis; *increpitant* atque *incūsant* reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō *dēdiderint* patriamque virtūtem *prōiēcerint; cōnfirmant* sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

II, **16**, 2-9. *Sabis* flūmen ā castrīs *tuīs* nōn amplius mīlia passuum X *abest;* trāns id flūmen omnēs *Nerviī cōnsēdērunt* adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum *exspectant* ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; *exspectantur* etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum *cōpiae* atque *sunt* in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs *vidēbantur* in eum locum *coniēcērunt* quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

II, **31**, 3-13. Nōn *exīstimāmus* Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre *possint. Nōs nostraque* omnia eōrum potestātī *permittimus.* Ūnum *petimus* ac *dēprecāmur:* sī forte prō *tuā* clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam *nōs* ab aliīs *audīmus*, *statueris nōs* esse cōnservandōs, *nōlī nōs* armīs *dēspoliāre. Nōbīs* omnēs ferē *fīnitimī sunt inimīcī* ac *nostrae* virtūtī *invident;* ā quibus *nōs* dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn *possumus. Nōbīs praestat*, sī in eum cāsum *dēdūcēmur*, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī *cōnsuēvimus.*

II, **32**, 1-6. Magis cōnsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* cīvitātem *cōnservābō*, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs *attigerit vōs dēdideritis;* sed dēditiōnis *nūlla est condiciō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nerviīs *fēcī faciam* fīnitimīsque *imperābō* nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam *īnferant.*

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of Bellum Helveticum (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as **eō, nihil.**
   b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as **laudandus, laudant.**
   c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than **s**; as **laudem, laudat.**
2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before **nf, ns, nx,** and **nct**; as **īnferō, cōnsul, iūnxī, iūnctum.**
   b. When it results from contraction; as **īsset,** for **iisset.**
3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. In monosyllables not ending in **b, d, l, m,** or **t**; as **mē, hīc,** but **ab, ad.**

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a =	*a* in *Cuba*	**ā** =	*ah!*
e =	*e* in *net*	**ē** =	*e* in *they*
i =	*i* in *pin*	**ī** =	*i* in *machine*
o =	*o* in *for* (not as in *got*)	**ō** =	*oh!*
u =	*oo* in *foot*	**ū** =	*oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*; it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh′-oo.*

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo′-ee.* The diphthong appears in **cui, huic, cuius,** and **huius.**

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **maior, eius, Troia,** and **cuius,** though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior, eiius, Troiia,** and **cuiius.** The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet.* The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = *ai* in *aisle*
ei = *ey* in *they*
oi = *oi* in *oil*
ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*
i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*
n before **c, g, q,** and **x** = *ng* in *sing*
r pronounced distinctly
s as in *this,* never as in *these*
t as in *tin,* never as in *nation*
v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
qu = *qu* in *quart*
ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*
su = *sw* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō, annus,** both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk, pen-knife.* We sound only one consonant in *ditty, penny.*

7. i is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō,** the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant *i* was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō,** pronounced as if **dēiiciō; abiciō,** as if **abiiciō.**

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as **fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.**

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (**b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph,** or **th,** followed by **l** or **r**) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as **pa-tris, a-grī.** But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as **pat-ris, ag-rī.**

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as **mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of **laudō,** and the first syllable of **eius** (5, *a*).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants **x** and **z.** The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: **est** is **est,** not **ēst.** The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, *c*), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in **mit-tō** (6, *a*), **an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.**

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then **pat-ris, ag-rī** (8, *b*). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as **om′nis.**

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as **dīvī′ sa, appel′ lō, in′ colunt.**

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as **Gallia′que.**

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine.*

b The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine.*

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter.*

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	**ā**	**-ae**
II.	**o**	**-ī**
III.	{ **consonant** / **i**	**-is**
IV.	**u**	**-ūs**
V.	**ē**	**-ēī** or **-eī**

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in **-ā**; the nominative in **-a.** The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, F., *tongue, language*

	SINGULAR		ENDINGS
Nominative	**lingua**	a language (*as subject*)	**-a**
Genitive	**linguae**	of a language, language's	**-ae**
Dative	**linguae**	to *or* for a language	**-ae**
Accusative	**linguam**	a language (*as object*)	**-am**
Vocative	**lingua**	O (*or* thou) language	**-a**
Ablative	**linguā**	by, from, in, *or* with a language	**-ā**

PLURAL

Nominative	linguae	languages (*as subject*)	-ae
Genitive	linguārum	of languages, languages'	-ārum
Dative	linguīs	to *or* for languages	-īs
Accusative	linguās	languages (*as object*)	-ās
Vocative	linguae	O (*or* ye) languages	-ae
Ablative	linguīs	by, from, in, *or* with languages	-īs

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as **Belgae,** M., *the Belgae;* **Matrona,** M., *the* (*river*) *Marne.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ae**; as **Samarobrīvae,** *at Samarobriva.*

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in **-o**; the nominative masculine in **-us, -er, -ir**; the nominative neuter in **-um.**

	animus, M., *mind*	**puer,** M., *boy*	**ager,** M., *field*	**vir,** M., *man*	**bellum,** N., *war*
			SINGULAR		
N.	animus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
G.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
D.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
A.	animum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
V.	anime	puer	ager	vir	bellum
A.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
			PLURAL		
N.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
G.	animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
D.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
A.	animōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
V.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
A.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

	fīlius, M., *son*	**Gāius,** M., *Gaius*	**Bōī,** M., *the Boii*	**deus,** M., *god*	
	SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	fīlius	Gāius	Bōī	deus	diī, dī
G.	fīlī	Gāī	Bōiōrum	deī	deōrum
D.	fīliō	Gāiō	Bōīs	deō	diīs, dīs
A.	fīlium	Gāium	Bōiōs	deum	deōs
V.	fīlī	Gāī	Bōī	deus	diī, dī
A.	fīliō	Gāiō	Bōīs	deō	diīs, dīs

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). **Vulgus,** *crowd,* is usually neuter. **Locus,** M., *place,* has plural **loca,** N., *places.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī**; as **Agedincī,** *at Agedincum.*

c. Nouns in **-ius** regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī,** instead of **-iī** and **-ie,** and nouns in **-ium** form the genitive in **-ī.** The words are accented as if the longer form were used; **cōnsi'lī,** *of a plan;* **ini'tī,** *of a beginning.*

d. Proper names ending in **-āius, -ēius,** and **-ōius** are declined like **Gāius** and **Bōī.**

e. A few words have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies.*

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i.** Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p.** The nominative ending is **-s.**

prīnceps, M., *chief*
Stem **prīncip-**

	SING.	PLUR.
N.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
G.	prīncipis	prīncipum
D.	prīncipī	prīncipibus
A.	prīncipem	prīncipēs
V.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
A.	prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t.** The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is **-s,** and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

	laus, F., *praise* — Stem **laud-**		**mīles,** M., *soldier* — Stem **mīlit-**		**caput,** N., *head* — Stem **capit-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
G.	laudis	laudum	mīlitis	mīlitum	capitis	capitum
D.	laudī	laudibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	capitī	capitibus
A.	laudem	laudēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	caput	capita
V.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
A.	laude	laudibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	capite	capitibus

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, **g** or **c**. The nominative ending is **-s**, which unites with the final **g** or **c** of the stem to form **x**.

	lēx, F., *law* Stem **lēg-**		**dux**, M., *leader* Stem **duc-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
G.	lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
D.	lēgī	lēgibus	ducī	ducibus
A.	lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
V.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
A.	lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, **l** or **r**. There is no nominative case-ending.

	cōnsul, M., *consul* Stem **cōnsul-**		**pater**, M., *father* Stem **patr-**		**aequor**, N., *sea* Stem **aequor-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
G.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
D.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	patrī	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
A.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
V.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
A.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, **m** or **n**. There is no nominative case-ending, except in **hiems**, the only stem in **-m**. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final **n** and changes the preceding vowel to **ō**.

	homō, M., F., *human being* Stem **homin-**		**ratiō**, F., *reason* Stem **ratiōn-**		**flūmen**, N., *river* Stem **flūmin-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
G.	hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
D.	hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
A.	hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
V.	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
A.	homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in s (apparently r, because s changes to r between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in **s**, sometimes in **r**.

	mōs, M., *custom* Stem **mōs-**		**honor**, M., *honor* Stem **honōs-**		**tempus**, N., *time* Stem **tempos-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
G.	mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
D.	mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	temporī	temporibus
A.	mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
V.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
A.	mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs** if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.

25. Theoretically the **i** should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., **-em**, abl., **-e**, acc. plural either **-ēs** or **-īs**. Neuters have abl. **-ī**.

	turris, F., *tower* Stem **turri-**	**hostis**, M., F., *enemy* Stem **hosti-**	**caedēs**, F., *slaughter* Stem **caedi-**
		SINGULAR	
N.	turris	hostis	caedēs
G.	turris	hostis	caedis
D.	turrī	hostī	caedī
A.	turrim *or* -em	hostem	caedem
V.	turris	hostis	caedēs
A.	turrī *or* -e	hoste	caede
		PLURAL	
N.	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
G.	turrium	hostium	caedium
D.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus
A.	turrīs *or* -ēs	hostēs *or* -īs	caedēs *or* -īs
V.	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
A.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus

	cubīle, N., *couch* Stem **cubīli-**	**vectīgal**, N., *tax* Stem **vectīgāli-**
	SINGULAR	
N.	**cubīle**	**vectīgal**
G.	**cubīlis**	**vectīgālis**
D.	**cubīlī**	**vectīgālī**
A.	**cubīle**	**vectīgal**
V.	**cubīle**	**vectīgal**
A.	**cubīlī**	**vectīgālī**
	PLURAL	
N.	**cubīlia**	**vectīgālia**
G.	**cubīlium**	**vectīgālium**
D.	**cubīlibus**	**vectīgālibus**
A.	**cubīlia**	**vectīgālia**
V.	**cubīlia**	**vectīgālia**
A.	**cubīlibus**	**vectīgālibus**

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis. Arar** (for **Araris**), M., *the Saone,* and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), M., *the Loire,* are declined in the singular like **turris. Ignis**, M., *fire,* and **nāvis**, F., *ship,* often have abl. **-ī. Mare**, N., *sea,* is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs.** Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās, -tātis.**

	cliēns, M., *retainer* Stem **client-**		**urbs**, F., *city* Stem **urb-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	**cliēns**	**clientēs**	**urbs**	**urbēs**
G.	**clientis**	**clientium**	**urbis**	**urbium**
D.	**clientī**	**clientibus**	**urbī**	**urbibus**
A.	**clientem**	**clientēs** *or* **-īs**	**urbem**	**urbēs** *or* **-īs**
V.	**cliēns**	**clientēs**	**urbs**	**urbēs**
A.	**cliente**	**clientibus**	**urbe**	**urbibus**

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

	senex, M., *old man*	**os**, N., *bone*	**vīs**, F., *force*	**bōs**, M., F., *ox, cow*	**Iuppiter**, M., *Jupiter*
			SINGULAR		
N.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
G.	senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
D.	senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
A.	senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
V.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
A.	sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove
			PLURAL		
N.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
G.	senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum *or* boum	
D.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus	
A.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
V.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
A.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. *Masculine* are nouns in ō (except those in **-dō, -gō, -iō**) **-or, -ōs, -er, -es.**

b. *Feminine* are nouns in **-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x,** and in **-s** when preceded by a consonant.

c. *Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in **-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.**

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in **-u**; nominative masculine in **-us**, nominative neuter in **-ū.**

	passus, M., *pace* SING.	PLUR.	**cornū**, N., *horn* SING.	PLUR.
N.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
G.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus
A.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
V.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
A.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

a. **Domus,** *house,* **manus,** *hand,* **Īdūs,** *Ides,* are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in **-us** sometimes ends in **-ū.**

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in **-ubus.**

d. **Domus**, F., *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs	domuum
Dat.	domuī *or* domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs
Voc.	domus	domūs
Abl.	domō *or* domū	domibus
Loc.	domī (*at home*)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in **-ē**; nominative in **-ēs**. Usually feminine.

	diēs, M., *day*		**rēs**, F., *thing*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
A.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
A.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Diēs** in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is **-ēī** after a vowel, **-eī** after a consonant. **-ē** is sometimes used instead of either.

c. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. **Aciēs, spēs,** and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
G.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
D	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
A.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
V.	magne	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
A.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

līber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
G.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
D.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
A.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
V.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
A.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

noster, *our*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
A.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
V.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
A.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -īus.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **ūllus**, *any*, **nūllus**, *no*, **ūnus**, *one*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **magnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**.

SINGULAR

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
A.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
A.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
A.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
A.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and **i**-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

fortior, *braver*

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter*
N.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
A.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
A.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but **plūs,** *more,* is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

	SING.	PLUR.	
	Neuter	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter*
N.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	....	plūribus	plūribus
A.	plūs	plūrēs *or* -īs	plūra
A.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

35. One termination.

vetus, *old*

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
A.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
V.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
A.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs **prīnceps**, *chief.* **Dīves**, *rich,* also belongs here, but has **dītia** for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

ācer, *sharp*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
G.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**
D.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**
A.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**	**ācrēs** *or* **-īs**	**ācrēs** *or* **-īs**	**ācria**
V.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
A.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**

a. Here belong **celeber**, *famous,* **equester**, *equestrian,* **pedester**, *pedestrian;* names of months in **-ber**; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, *all*

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**omnis**	**omne**	**omnēs**	**omnia**
G.	**omnis**	**omnis**	**omnium**	**omnium**
D.	**omnī**	**omnī**	**omnibus**	**omnibus**
A.	**omnem**	**omne**	**omnēs** *or* **-īs**	**omnia**
V.	**omnis**	**omne**	**omnēs**	**omnia**
A.	**omnī**	**omnī**	**omnibus**	**omnibus**

a. Here belong all adjectives in **-is, -e.**

38. One termination.

audāx, *bold*

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	**audāx**	**audāx**	**audācēs**	**audācia**
G.	**audācis**	**audācis**	**audācium**	**audācium**
D.	**audācī**	**audācī**	**audācibus**	**audācibus**
A.	**audācem**	**audāx**	**audācēs** *or* **-īs**	**audācia**
V.	**audāx**	**audāx**	**audācēs**	**audācia**
A.	**audācī**	**audācī**	**audācibus**	**audācibus**

oriēns, *rising*

	SING.		PLUR.	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
G.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
D.	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
A.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs *or* -īs	orientia
V.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
A.	oriente *or* -ī	oriente *or* -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -ī only when used as adjectives, in -e when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are **-ior, -ius**; superlative, **-issimus, -a, -um**. They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: **altus**, *high;* **altior, -ius**, *higher;* **altissimus, -a, -um**, *highest;* **fortis**, *brave;* **fortior**, *braver;* **fortissimus**, *bravest.*

40. Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: **ācer**, *sharp* (base, **ācr-**), **ācrior, ācerrimus**.

41. Most adjectives in **-ilis** are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the *base* of the positive. They are **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **humilis**, *low;* **gracilis**, *slender.* Example: **facilis, facilior, facillimus**.

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, *good, better, best.*
malus, peior, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst.*
magnus, maior, maximus, *great, greater, greatest.*
parvus, minor, minimus, *small, less, least.*
multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most.*
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *on the right. dexterous*, **etc.**

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(**citrā**, adv., *on this side*) **citerior, citimus,** *hither, hithermost.*
(**dē**, prep., *down*) **dēterior, dēterrimus,** *worse, worst.*
(**intrā**, prep., *in, within*) **interior, intimus,** *inner, inmost.*
(**prae**, prep., *before*) **prior, prīmus,** *former, first.*
(**prope**, adv., *near*) **propior, proximus,** *nearer, next.*
(**ultrā**, adv., *beyond*) **ulterior, ultimus,** *farther, farthest.*

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), *outer, outmost.*
īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus (īmus), *lower, lowest.*
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), *latter, last.*
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), *higher, highest.*

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **maximē,** *most.* Example: **idōneus,** *suitable*; **magis idōneus,** *more suitable*; **maximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base; as **lātus,** *wide,* **lātē,** *widely*: from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in **nt** add only **-er**; as **audāx, audācis,** *bold,* **audācter,** *boldly*; **fortis,** *brave,* **fortiter,** *bravely*; **prūdēns, prūdentis,** *prudent,* **prūdenter,** *prudently.* But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as **multum,** *much,* **facile,** *easily.*

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as **lātius,** *more widely,* **audācius,** *more boldly,* **fortius,** *more bravely,* **prūdentius,** *more prudently,* **plūs,** *more,* **facilius,** *more easily.*

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as lātissimē, *most widely*, audācissimē, *most boldly*, fortissimē, *most bravely*, prūdentissimē, *most prudently*, plūrimum, *most*, facillimē, *most easily*.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*	*Distributive*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter	bīnī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī *or* trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	duodētrīcēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus	ūndētrīcēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī

LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī
C.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singulī
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending **-ēnsimus** is often used for **-ēsimus.**

48. Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** are declined; **quattuor to centum,** inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī,** inclusive, are declined like the plural of **magnus** (31); **mīlle** as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of **cubīle** (25) and generally spelled **mīlia.** Ordinals are declined like **magnus, distributives** like the plural of **magnus.**

49. For the declension of **ūnus** see **32.** Its plural usually means *only* or *alone,* but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, **ūna castra,** *one camp.* **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	duo, *two*			**trēs,** *three*	
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by **et**; as **trēs et quadrāgintā,** *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an **et**; as **quadrāgintā trēs,** *forty three* In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without **et**; as **ducentī** (et) **vīgintī,** *two hundred and twenty.* In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without **et**; as **duo mīlia sescentī vīgintī sex,** *two thousand six hundred and twenty six.*

PRONOUNS

51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, ego, *I*			Second person, tū, *you (thou)*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
A.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it,* 57; or, when *him, them,* etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. **nostrum** and **vestrum** are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); **nostrī** and **vestrī,** as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, **nōbīscum,** *with us.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

	First person, **meī,** *of myself*		Second person, **tuī,** *of yourself*		Third person, **suī,** *of himself, etc.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
A.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

a. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, **sēcum,** *with himself.*

53. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

		Singular	Plural
1st pers.		**meus, -a, -um,** *my*	**noster, -tra, -trum,** *our*
2d pers.		**tuus, -a, -um,** *your* (of one)	**vester, -tra, -trum,** *your* (of more than one)
3d pers.		**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)	**suus, -a, -um,** *their* (when referring to the subject)
		eius (gen. sing. of **is**) *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)	**eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. **hīc,** *this* (near the speaker)

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, **hoc,** is pronounced **hocc** when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See **6,** *a.*

55. **iste,** *that* (near the person spoken to)

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. **Ille,** *that* (something more remote) is declined like **iste.**

57. **is,** *this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs eīs	iīs, eīs
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
A.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs eīs

58. **Idem**, *the same*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
A.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

59. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

60. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quīcumque** and **quisquis**, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The **quī** of **quīcumque** is declined regularly. **Quisquis, quicquid (quidquid),** and **quōquō** are the only common forms of **quisquis.**

b. The preposition **cum** is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

61. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, quae, quod, the adjective *what?* is declined like the **relative. Quis, quid,** the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SING.

	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quid
G.	cuius	cuius
D.	cui	cui
A.	quem	quid
A.	quō	quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis, quī,** and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
quis, quid, *any one*	**quī, quae (qua), quod,** *any*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one*	**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some*
quispiam, quidpiam, *some one*	**quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** *some*
quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), *any one* (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**)	(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet** } *any one* etc., *you like*	**quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs** / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet** } *any you like*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain man*	**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** *a certain*
quisque, quidque, *each*	**quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua.**

b. In the declension of **quīdam, m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam.**

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	**ā**	**-āre**
II.	**ē**	**-ēre**
III.	**e (i, u)**	**-ere**
IV.	**ī**	**-īre**

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive,*—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active,*—present participle; gerund: *passive,*—gerundive.

b On the perfect stem are formed: *active,*—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive,*—future infinitive; *active,*—future participle; supine: *passive,*—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of **laudō** are:

laudō, laudāre (present stem, **laudā**).
laudāvī (perfect stem, **laudāv**).
laudātum (supine stem, **laudāt**).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
sum	**sumus**	**sim**	**sīmus**
es	**estis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
est	**sunt**	**sit**	**sint**
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
eram	**erāmus**	**essem** (*or* **forem**)	**essēmus** (*or* **forēmus**)
erās	**erātis**	**essēs** (*or* **forēs**)	**essētis** (*or* **forētis**)
erat	**erant**	**esset** (*or* **foret**)	**essent** (*or* **forent**)
Future			
erō	**erimus**		
eris	**eritis**		
erit	**erunt**		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
fuī	**fuimus**	**fuerim**	**fuerīmus**
fuistī	**fuistis**	**fuerīs**	**fuerītis**
fuit	**fuērunt** *or* **-ēre**	**fuerit**	**fuerint**
Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
fueram	**fuerāmus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fuerās	**fuerātis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerat	**fuerant**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**
Future Perfect			
fuerō	**fuerimus**		
fueris	**fueritis**		
fuerit	**fuerint**		

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	es	este

Future

2d pers.	estō	estōte
3d pers.	estō	suntō

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse

Perf. fuisse

Fut. futūrus (esse) *or* fore

67.

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

Imperfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Future

SING.	PLUR.
laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

Future Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

Imperfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudāverim	laudāverīmus
laudāverīs	laudāverītis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Pluperfect

SING.	PLUR.
laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d *pers.*	laudā	laudāte

Future

2d *pers.*	laudātō	laudātōte
3d *pers.*	laudātō	laudantō

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudāre

Perf. laudāvisse

Fut. laudātūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. laudāns

Fut. laudātūrus

SUPINE

Acc. laudātum

Abl. laudātū

GERUND

Gen. laudandī

Dat. laudandō

Acc. laudandum

Abl. laudandō

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum**

INDICATIVE / SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

INDICATIVE SING.	PLUR.	SUBJUNCTIVE SING.	PLUR.
laudor	laudāmur	lauder	laudēmur
laudāris *or* -re	laudāminī	laudēris *or* -re	laudēminī
laudātur	laudantur	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudābar	laudābāmur	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudābāris *or* -re	laudābāminī	laudārēris *or* -re	laudārēminī
laudābātur	laudābantur	laudārētur	laudārentur

Future

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis *or* -re	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus es	laudātī estis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt	laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant	laudātus esset	laudātī essent

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2*d pers.*	laudāre	laudāminī

Future

2*d pers.*	laudātor	
3*d pers.*	laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudārī
Perf. laudātus esse
Fut. laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. laudātus
Fut. laudandus

68. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
moneō	monēmus	moneam	moneāmus
monēs	monētis	moneās	moneātis
monet	monent	moneat	moneant
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monērem	monērēmus
monēbās	monēbātis	monērēs	monērētis
monēbat	monēbant	monēret	monērent
Future			
monēbō	monēbimus		
monēbis	monēbitis		
monēbit	monēbunt		

Perfect		*Perfect*	
monuī	monuimus	monuerim	monuerīmus
monuistī	monuistis	monuerīs	monuerītis
monuit	monuērunt *or* -ēre	monuerit	monuerint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
monueram	monuerāmus	monuissem	monuissēmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monuissēs	monuissētis
monuerat	monuerant	monuisset	monuissent

Future Perfect	
monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d *pers.* monē monēte

Future

2d *pers.* monētō monētōte

3d *pers.* monētō monentō

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns *Fut.* monitūrus

SUPINE

Acc. monitum *Abl.* monitū

GERUND

Gen. monendī

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

INDICATIVE — *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneor	monēmur
monēris *or* -re	monēminī
monētur	monentur

SUBJUNCTIVE — *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
monear	moneāmur
moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
monēbar	monēbāmur	monērer	monērēmur
monēbāris *or* -re	monēbāminī	monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monēbātur	monēbantur	monērētur	monērentur

Future

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect		*Perfect*	
monitus sum	monitī sumus	monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus es	monitī estis	monitus sīs	monitī sītis
monitus est	monitī sunt	monitus sit	monitī sint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
monitus eram	monitī erāmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus erat	monitī erant	monitus esset	monitī essent

Future Perfect

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d *pers.* monēre monēminī

Future

2d *pers.* monētor

3d *pers.* monētor monentor

INFINITIVE

Pres. monērī

Perf. monitus esse

Fut. monitum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. monitus

Fut. monendus

69. THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**

INDICATIVE / SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
dūcō	dūcimus	dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcis	dūcitis	dūcās	dūcātis
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcat	dūcant

Imperfect

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

Future

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

Perfect

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt
	or -ēre

Pluperfect

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

Future Perfect

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

Imperfect

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

Perfect

dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis
dūxerit	dūxerint

Pluperfect

dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d *pers.* dūc* dūcite

Future

2d *pers.* dūcitō dūcitōte

3d *pers.* dūcitō dūcuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere

Perf. dūxisse

Fut. ductūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. dūcēns

Fut. ductūrus

SUPINE

Acc. ductum

Abl. ductū

GERUND

Gen. dūcendī

Dat. dūcendō

Acc. dūcendum

Abl. dūcendō

* Irregular for dūce.

THIRD CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
dūcor	**dūcimur**	**dūcar**	**dūcāmur**
dūceris *or* **-re**	**dūciminī**	**dūcāris** *or* **-re**	**dūcāminī**
dūcitur	**dūcuntur**	**dūcātur**	**dūcantur**
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
dūcēbar	**dūcēbāmur**	**dūcerer**	**dūcerēmur**
dūcēbāris *or* **-re**	**dūcēbāminī**	**dūcerēris** *or* **re**	**dūcerēminī**
dūcēbātur	**dūcēbantur**	**dūcerētur**	**dūcerentur**
Future			
dūcar	**dūcēmur**		
dūcēris *or* **-re**	**dūcēminī**		
dūcētur	**dūcentur**		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
ductus sum	**ductī sumus**	**ductus sim**	**ductī sīmus**
ductus es	**ductī estis**	**ductus sīs**	**ductī sītis**
ductus est	**ductī sunt**	**ductus sit**	**ductī sint**
Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
ductus eram	**ductī erāmus**	**ductus essem**	**ductī essēmus**
ductus erās	**ductī erātis**	**ductus essēs**	**ductī essētis**
ductus erat	**ductī erant**	**ductus esset**	**ductī essent**
Future Perfect			
ductus erō	**ductī erimus**		
ductus eris	**ductī eritis**		
ductus erit	**ductī erunt**		

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. **dūcere** **dūciminī**

Future

2d pers. **dūcitor**

3d pers. **dūcitor** **dūcuntor**

INFINITIVE

Pres. **dūcī**

Perf. **ductus esse**

Fut. **ductum īrī**

PARTICIPLE

Perf. **ductus**

Fut. **dūcendus**

70. FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
audiō	**audīmus**	**audiam**	**audiāmus**
audīs	**audītis**	**audiās**	**audiātis**
audit	**audiunt**	**audiat**	**audiant**
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audīrem**	**audīrēmus**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audīrēs**	**audīrētis**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audīret**	**audīrent**
Future			
audiam	**audiēmus**		
audiēs	**audiētis**		
audiet	**audient**		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audīverim**	**audīverīmus**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**	**audīverīs**	**audīverītis**
audīvit	**audīvērunt** *or* **-ēre**	**audīverit**	**audīverint**
Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
audīveram	**audīverāmus**	**audīvissem**	**audīvissēmus**
audīverās	**audīverātis**	**audīvissēs**	**audīvissētis**
audīverat	**audīverant**	**audīvisset**	**audīvissent**
Future Perfect			
audīverō	**audīverimus**		
audīveris	**audīveritis**		
audīverit	**audīverint**		

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE
Present		*Pres.* **audīre**
2*d pers.* **audī**	**audīte**	*Perf.* **audīvisse**
Future		*Fut.* **audītūrus (esse)**
2*d pers.* **audītō**	**audītōte**	
3*d pers.* **audītō**	**audiuntō**	

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns *Fut.* audītūrus

SUPINE

Acc. audītum *Abl.* audītū

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audior, audīrī, audītus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audior	audīmur
audīris *or* -re	audīminī
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

SING.	PLUR.
audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiēmur
audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

SING.	PLUR.
audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

SING.	PLUR.
audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

SING.	PLUR.
audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

SING.	PLUR.
audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE		
	Present	
2d pers.	audīre	audīminī
	Future	
2d pers.	audītor	
3d pers.	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīrī
Perf. audītus esse
Fut. audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. audītus
Fut. audiendus

71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IŌ*

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
capiō	capimus	capiam	capiāmus
capis	capitis	capiās	capiātis
capit	capiunt	capiat	capiant
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	caperem	caperēmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis	caperēs	caperētis
capiēbat	capiēbant	caperet	caperent
Future			
capiam	capiēmus		
capiēs	capiētis		
capiet	capient		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
cēpī	cēpimus	cēperim	cēperīmus
cēpistī	cēpistis	cēperīs	cēperītis
cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre	cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2*d pers.* cape	capite

Future

2*d pers.* capitō	capitōte
3*d pers.* capitō	capiuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere
Perf. cēpisse
Fut. captūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns *Fut.* captūrus

SUPINE

Acc. captum *Abl.* captū

GERUND

Gen. capiendī
Dat. capiendō
Acc. capiendum
Abl. capiendō

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IŌ*

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **capior, capī, captus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur
caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī
caperētur	caperentur

Perfect		*Perfect*	
captus sum	captī sumus	captus sim	captī sīmus
captus es	captī estis	captus sīs	captī sītis
captus est	captī sunt	captus sit	captī sint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
captus eram	captī erāmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
captus erās	captī erātis	captus essēs	captī essētis
captus erat	captī erant	captus esset	captī essent

Future Perfect	
captus erō	captī erimus
captus eris	captī eritis
captus erit	captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2*d pers.* capere capiminī

Future

2*d pers.* capitor

3*d pers.* capitor capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capī

Perf. captus esse

Fut. captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus

Fut. capiendus

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in **v**, the **v** is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and **-ōvī**, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop **ve**, **vē**, or **vi** before **r** or **s**.

Examples: **laudāstī** for **laudāvistī**; **laudāsse** for **laudāvisse**; **dēlērunt** for **dēlēvērunt**; **nōrim** for **nōverim**.

b. Perfects in **-īvī**, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop **v** in all forms. When the resulting combination is **iis** it usually contracts to **īs**.

Examples: **audiī** for **audīvī**; **audieram** for **audīveram**; **audīsse** for **audīvisse**.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

	hortor, *urge*	**vereor,** *fear*	**sequor,** *follow*	**partior,** *share*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	secūtūrus (esse)	partītūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
Fut. Pass.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partītum, -tū

74. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. **laudātūrus sum,** *I am about to praise, I intend to praise,*
Imp. **laudātūrus eram,** *I was about to praise, I intended to praise,* etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity.* It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. **laudandus sum,** *I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.*
Imp. **laudandus eram,** *I was to be praised, I had to be praised,* etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of **sum** see **66.** **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.** **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns.**

78. In **absum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f,** giving **āfuī, āfutūrus,** etc. There is a present participle **absēns.**

79. In **prōsum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam.** The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.**

80. **Possum,** *be able, can,* is a compound of **pot-** and **sum.**

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**possum, potes, potest**	**possim**
	possumus, potestis, possunt	
Imp.	**poteram**	**possem**
Fut.	**poterō**	
Perf.	**potuī**	**potuerim**
Plup.	**potueram**	**potuissem**
Fut. Perf.	**potuerō**	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	*Pres.* potēns
Perf.	potuisse	

81. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** *bear*

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
Imp.	ferēbam	ferrem
Fut.	feram	
Perf	tulī	tulerim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. fer	ferte	*Pres.* ferre	*Pres.* ferēns
Fut. fertō	fertōte	*Perf.* tulisse	*Fut.* lātūrus
fertō	feruntō	*Fut.* lātūrus (esse)	

GERUND	SUPINE
ferendī, etc.	lātum, -tū

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	ferar
Imp.	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	ferar	
Perf.	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. ferre,	feriminī	*Pres.* ferrī	*Perf.* lātus
Fut. fertor		*Perf.* lātus esse	
fertor,	feruntor	*Fut.* lātum īrī	*Fut.* ferendus

82. **volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

83. Fīō, *be made, be done, become, happen,* is the irregular passive of **faciō,** *make.* Note the **ī** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er.**

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit	fīam
	fīmus, fītis, fīunt	
Imp.	fīēbam	fierem
Fut.	fīam	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
Fut. Perf.	factus erō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. fī, fīte	*Pres.* fierī	*Perf.* factus
	Perf. factus esse	*Fut.* faciendus
	Fut. factum īrī	

84. **eō, īre, iī, itum,** *go*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	eō, īs, it,	eam
	īmus, ītis, eunt	
Imp.	ībam	īrem
Fut.	ībō	
Perf.	iī *for* īvī	ierim
Plup.	ieram	iissem *or* īssem
Fut. Per.	ierō	

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	ī,	īte	*Pres.* īre	*Pres.* iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
Fut.	ītō,	ītōte	*Perf.* iisse *or* īsse	*Fut.* itūrus
	ītō,	euntō	*Fut.* itūrus (esse)	

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, etc.	itum, -tū

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, **ii** usually contracts to **ī** before **s**.

85. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give,* is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short **a**. **ā** appears only in the following active forms,—**dās, dā, dāns.**

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī,** *I remember*; **ōdī,** *I hate*; and **coepī,** *I have begun.* Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

	INDICATIVE		
Perf.	meminī	ōdī	coepī
Plup.	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
Fut. Perf.	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
Plup.	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing.	mementō
Plur.	mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf.	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
Fut.		ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Perf.		ōsus	coeptus
Fut.		ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: **laudārī coeptus est,** *he began to be praised.*

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it.* They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are: —

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit,** *it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet,** *it becomes*; **libet,** *it pleases*; **licet,** *it is permitted*; **miseret,** *it causes pity*; **oportet,** *it is right*; **paenitet,** *it repents*; **piget,** *it displeases*; **pudet,** *it shames*; **rēfert,** *it concerns*; **taedet,** *it wearies.* All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit,** *it is added,* from **accēdō,** *I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur,** *it is fought.*

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: **Caesar vēnit,** *Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or.* Example: **Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt,** *Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate* or *dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before.* Example: **ubi Caesar vēnit, Gallī fūgērunt,** *when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword,* only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin **mīles** would be used in the first sentence, **mīlitem** in the second, and **mīlitī** in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but **mīlitem,** *a soldier,* could not be used in this sense, while **multōs annōs,** *many years,* is quite probably so used. **Dīcit pīlum mīlitem vulnerāvisse** might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier,* or *a soldier wounded the javelin,* but the latter makes no sense. **Persuāsit,** *he persuaded,* needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: **ā mīlite interfectus est,** *he was killed by a soldier*; **cum mīlite vēnit,** *he came in company with a soldier.*

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. RULE: A predicate noun is connected with the subject by* sum *or a verb of similar meaning.

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded,* and the like. Examples: **Pīsō fuit cōnsul,** *Piso was consul*; **Pīsō factus est cōnsul,** *Piso became consul*; **Pīsō appellātus est cōnsul,** *Piso was called consul.* For the predicate accusative with verbs of *calling,* etc., see 126.

b. RULE: An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

EXAMPLES: **Pīsō, cōnsul, mīlitī Pīsōnī gladium dedit.** *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

96. NOMINATIVE

RULE: The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).

EXAMPLE: **Gallia est dīvīsa** (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. ***GENERAL RULE: A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.***

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98–105.

A genitive may be either (*a*) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as **domus Caesaris,** *Caesar's house*; or (*b*) *predicative*, connected by **sum** or a verb of similar meaning; as **domus est Caesaris,** *the house is Caesar's.*

a. **Appositional Genitive.** [But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: **tuōrum comitum sentīna** (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades.*

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as **amor,** *love,* **amō,** *I love.* The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: **amor patris,** *the love of the father,* may imply that *the father loves,* (subjective), or that some one *loves his father* (objective); **occāsum sōlis** (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); **rēgnī cupiditāte** (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: The genitive may express the possessor.

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: **fīnibus Belgārum** (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; **fīnibus vestrīs,** *by your territory.*

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede **causā** or **grātiā**, *for the sake of.* Examples: **huius potentiae causā** (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; **meā causā,** *for my sake.*

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: **huiusce modī senātūs cōnsultum** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; **trium mēnsium molita cibāria** (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months.*

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: **eōrum ūna pars** (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; **hōrum omnium fortissimī** (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; **ubinam gentium sumus** (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in* (not *of*) *the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on **satis** used substantively. Examples: **quantum bonī** (I, 40, 17), *how much* (*of*) *good*; **satis causae** (I, 19, 6), *sufficient* (*of*) *reason.*

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with **quīdam.** Example: **ūnus ē fīliīs captus est** (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured.*

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: **hī omnēs** (I, 1, 3), *all of these.*

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.

Example: **aciem legiōnum quattuor** (I, 24, 3), *a battle line* (*consisting*) *of four legions.*

Predicative

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as **est hominis,** *it is the part* (*duty, characteristic*) *of a man*. Example: **est hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis** (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.*

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: **senātūs cōnsultum est huiusce modī,** *the decree is of this kind.*

105. The Genitive of Value. With **sum** and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are **magnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris**. Example: **tantī eius grātiam esse ostendit** (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value.*

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. ***RULE: Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.*** They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious* (*of*), *desirous* (*of*), *mindful* (*of*), *sharing* (*in*), *skilled* (*in*), and their opposites, and **plēnus,** *full* (*of*). Examples: **bellandī cupidī** (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; **reī mīlitāris perītissimus** (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science.*

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), **similis,** *like*; **dissimilis,** *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: **tuī similis** (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; **vērī simile** (III, 13, 11), *probable* (*like the truth*).

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: **locum medium utrīusque** (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them.*

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: **Meminī,** ***bear in mind,*** **reminīscor,** ***remember, and*** **oblīvīscor,** ***forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.***

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: **reminīscerētur veteris incommodī** (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; **veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī** (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult.*

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE:* *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: **mē inertiae condemnō** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE:* *The impersonal verbs* miseret, *pity,* paenitet, *repent,* piget, *dislike,* pudet, *be ashamed,* taedet, *be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.

The personal verb **misereor,** *pity,* also takes the genitive. Examples: **mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit** (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds*; **mē eius miseret** or **eius misereor,** *I pity him.*

110. Interest and Rēfert.

RULE:* *The impersonal verbs* interest *and* rēfert, *it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, **interest** is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: **reī pūblicae intersit** (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state*; **meā interest,** *it is to my interest.*

111. ***RULE:*** **Potior** ***occasionally governs the genitive.***

For **potior** with the ablative see 145. Example: **Galliae potīrī** (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

GENERAL RULE:* *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

RULE:* *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: **eī fīliam dat** (I, 3, 15), *he gives* (*to*) *him his daughter.*

a. **Dōnō,** *give, present,* and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: **eī librum dōnō,** *I give* (*to*) *him a book*; **eum librō dōnō,** *I present him with a book.*

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially **cōnsulō,** *consult* or *consult for,* and **metuō,** *fear* or *fear for.* Examples: **sī mē cōnsulis** (Cic. Cat I, 13), *if you consult me* (*ask my advice*); **cōnsulite vōbīs** (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves* (*for your own interests*).

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: **eī fīlia datur,** *his daughter is given to him.*

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.

EXAMPLES: **cīvitātī persuāsit** (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; **novīs rēbus studēbat** (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; **Allobrogibus imperāvit** (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges.*

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as **audiēns sum,** *obey,* and **fidem habēre,** *trust.* Example: **cui fidem habēbat** (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted.*

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: **prōvinciae mīlitum numerum imperat** (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; **id iīs persuāsit** (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs **dēlectō,** *delight,* **iubeō**

command, **iuvō,** *please,* **vetō,** *forbid,* which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: **Labiēnum iubet** (I, 21, 5), *he commands Labienus.*

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, *b*), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: **Caesarī persuādeō,** *I persuade Caesar,* becomes **Caesarī ā mē persuādētur,** *Caesar is persuaded by me* (literally, *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from,* it is sometimes called the *dative of separation.*

***RULE: The dative is required with many compounds of* ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; *and with some compounds of* ab, circum, *and* ex.**

EXAMPLES: **cum omnibus praestārent** (I, 2, 5), *since they excelled all;* **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre** (I, 2, 12), *to make war upon their neighbors;* **mūnītiōnī Labiēnum praeficit** (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works;* **scūtō mīlitī dētractō** (II, 25, 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier.*

***II. RULE: The dative is used with compounds of* satis *and* bene.**

EXAMPLE: **sī Haeduīs satisfaciant** (I, 14, 19), *if they should make restitution to the Haedui.*

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, **aggredior,** *attack;* **incendō,** *burn;* **interficiō,** *kill;* **oppugnō,** *assault;* but there are many others. Example: **eōs aggressus** (I, 12, 9), *having attacked* (or *attacking*) *them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: **illum in equum intulit** (VI, 30, 15), *he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: **mūnītiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur,** *Labienus is put in command of the works.*

117. Dative of Possessor.

RULE: ***The dative is used in the predicate with* sum *to denote the possessor.***

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: **mihi est liber,** *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); **dēmonstrant sibi nihil esse** (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: ***The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.***

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: **nōn exspectandum sibi statuit** (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: **cīvitātī ā tē persuādendum est,** *the state must be persuaded by you.*

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: ***The dative may express purpose or tendency.***

This dative is especially common with **sum.** It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: **quem auxiliō Caesarī mīserant** (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; **quī novissimīs praesidiō erant** (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear,* lit. *who were for a guard to the rear.*

120. Dative of Reference.

RULE: ***The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.***

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: **cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent** (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; **sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt** (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet.*

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit** (Cic. Cat. II, 4,), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius,* or simply *he took out Tongilius.*

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.

Examples: **plēbī acceptus** (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; **proximī sunt Germānīs** (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; **castrīs idōneum locum** (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp.*

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: **ad amīcitiam idōneus,** *suitable for friendship.*

b. The adjectives **propior** and **proximus** and the adverbs **propius** and **proximē** sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition **prope.** Example: **proximī Rhēnum** (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine.*

c. For **similis** and **dissimilis** see 106, *b.*

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Example: **certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse** (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.*

124. Direct Object.

RULE: The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.

The direct object may be either (*a*) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as **puerum laudat,** *he praises the boy*; or (*b*) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as **coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** *he made a conspiracy.*

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: **puer laudātur,** *the boy is praised*; **coniūrātiō facta est,** *a conspiracy was made.*

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trāns,** have transitive meanings. Example: **īre,** *to go,* intransitive; but **flūmen trānsīre,** *to cross* (*go across*) *the river.*

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially **115.**

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125–127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. RULE: Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also* cēlō, *I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab.** Examples: **Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; **eadem ab aliīs quaerit** (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others.*

b. RULE:* Moneō, *I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, *a*). Examples: **eōs hoc moneō** (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; **sī quid ille sē velit** (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him.*

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: **Haeduī frūmentum flāgitābantur,** *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; (iī) **hoc monentur,** *they are given this advice.*

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: **quem rēgem cōnstituerat** (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; **Caesarem certiōrem fēcit,** *he informed Caesar* (*made Caesar more certain*).

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, *a*). Examples: **quī rēx cōnstitūtus erat,** *who had been appointed king*; **Caesar certior factus est** (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed* (*made more certain*).

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: Transitive verbs compounded with* trāns *may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.

Example: **trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt** (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river.*

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: **trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt,** *three parts were led across the river.*

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Examples: **eam vītam vīvere,** *to live that life*; **trīduī viam prōcēdere** (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march.*

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative.* Examples: **id iīs persuāsit** (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); **multum posse,** *to have much power.*

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under *a*. The most common adverbial accusatives are **multum,** *much,* **plūs,** *more,* **plūrimum,** *most,* **plērumque,** *for the most part,* and **nihil,** *not at all.* Here belong also **id temporis** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time,* and **maximam partem** (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part.* Example: **multum sunt in vēnātiōne** (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting.*

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.

Example: **O fortūnātam rem pūblicam** (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

130. Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE: The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, **diēs**, *day*; **pēs**, *foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: **rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat** (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; **mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant** (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with* ad *or* in, *but names of towns and* domus *and* rūs *omit the preposition.

Compare 134, *a*, and 151. Examples: **ad iūdicium coēgit** (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial;* **in agrum Nōricum trānsierant** (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory;* **sē Massiliam cōnferet** (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles;* **domum reditiōnis** (I, 5, 6), of a return home.

a. **Ad** is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: **ad Genavam pervenit** (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.*

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: **dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs** (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades.*

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

***RULE: Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without* ab, dē, *or* ex.**

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: **suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent** (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; **quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent** (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; **ā Bibracte aberat** (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte.*

a. Place from which: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: Place from which is expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē,** ***or*** **ex,** ***but names of towns and*** **domus** ***and*** **rūs** ***omit the preposition.***

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: **ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent** (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; **quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province;* **Rōmā profūgērunt** (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; **domō exīre** (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home.*

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of.*

b. RULE: With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.

Examples: **magnō mē metū līberābis** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; **proeliō abstinēbat** (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles **nātus** ***and*** **ortus,** ***to express parentage or rank.***

Examples: **amplissimō genere nātus** (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; **sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)** (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side.*

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with **ex,** ***less often*** **dē.**

Example: **nāvēs factae ex rōbore** (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak.*

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with **ab.**

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: **exercitum ab Helvētiīs pulsum** (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii.*

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.

Examples: **grātiā et largītiōne** (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; **quod suā victōriā glōriārentur** (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory.*

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by **causā** and the genitive (99, *a*); by the accusative with **ob, per,** or **propter**; and by **dē** or **ex** with the ablative. Examples: **propter angustiās** (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; **quā dē causā,** (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason.*

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.

Examples: **lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia** (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; **nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum** (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare *b*).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When **quam** is used for *than,* the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negatived.

b. **Plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius** are often used instead of **plūs quam,** etc. Example: **quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore** (V, 8, 19), *of which more than* 800 *had been in sight at one time.*

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

***RULE: Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with* cum.**

Example: **ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent** (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops.*

In military phrases **cum** is sometimes omitted.

Example: **Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs** (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops.*

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: **hominēs inimīcō animō** (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; **nōndum bonō animō vidērentur** (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem* (*to be*) *well disposed* (*of a good spirit*).

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either* cum *or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Examples: **pars cum cruciātū necābātur** (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; **magnīs itineribus** (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches.*

a. **Ablative of Accordance.**

RULE: In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—**cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū** (**iniussū**), **lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte.** Examples: **iniussū suō** (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; **mōribus suīs** (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; **suā voluntāte** (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish.*

b. **Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.**

RULE: Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: **imperiō populī Rōmānī** (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; **intervāllō pedum duōrum iungēbat** (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet.*

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus** (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power.*

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except **plēnus**, 106); **fīdō, cōnfīdō**, *trust in*; **nītor**, *rely upon*; **lacessō (proeliō)**, *provoke (to battle)*; **assuēfactus, assuētus**, *accustomed to*; **frētus**, *relying upon*. Examples: **nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant** (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; **nūllō officiō assuēfactī** (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience.*

144. Ablative of the Way. by which

RULE: The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.

Examples: **frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat** (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; **eōdem itinere contendit** (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road.*

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with **ūtor**, *use*, **fruor**, *enjoy*, **fungor**, *perform, fulfill*, **potior**, *get possession of*, **vēscor**, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō** (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; **imperiō potīrī** (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government.*

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: The ablative of means is used with* opus est *and* ūsus est, *meaning there is need of.

Example: **Caesarī multis auxiliīs opus est**, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries.*

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with **opus** as predicate noun. Example: **sī quid opus esset** (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything.*

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with **opus est**. Example: **sī opus factō esset** (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action.*

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: **parvō pretiō redēmpta** (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price.*

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

RULE: The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.

Compare 139. Examples: **nihilō minus** (I, 5, 1), lit. *less by nothing,* = *nevertheless*; **paucīs ante diēbus,** (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

a. **Eō . . . quō,** in this construction, may be translated *the . . the.* Example: **eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent** (I, 14, 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly,* = *he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.*

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.

Examples: **linguā inter sē differunt** (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; **maior nātū,** *older* (*greater in birth*).

a. The ablative is used with **dignus,** *worthy,* and **indignus,** *unworthy.* Example: **ipsīs indignum** (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves.*

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.

RULE: Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) **remōtis equīs proelium commīsit** (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) **M Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of,* etc.; **eō dēprecātōre** (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) **omnibus rēbus comparātīs diem dīcunt** (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; **Sēquanīs invītīs īre nōn poterant** (I, 9, 1), *if the Sequani should refuse they could not go*; **monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat** (I, 22, 11), *though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men*; (translated by coordinate clause) **locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . . conantur** (I, 10, 12), *they occupied advantageous positions and tried*, etc.

151. Place in Which.

***RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with* in.**

Compare 131 and 134, *a*. Example: **in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt** (I, 1, 13), *they fight in their territory.*

a. RULE: Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives **domī**, *at home*, and **rūrī**, *in the country*, are also in regular use. Examples: **Samarobrīvae** (V, 24, 1), *at Samarobriva*; **domī largiter posse** (I, 18, 13), *he had great influence at home.*

***b. RULE: No preposition is regularly used with* locō, locīs, parte, partibus *when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by* tōtus.**

Examples: **nōn nūllīs locīs trānsītur** (I, 6, 8), *is crossed in several places*; **vulgō tōtīs castrīs** (I, 39, 17), *everywhere throughout the entire camp.*

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So **ab** and **ex** are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with **in** if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: **ūnā ex parte** (I, 2, 7), *on one side*; **cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt** (I, 1, 12), *they contend in (by means of) daily battles*; **memoriā tenēbat** (I, 7, 12), *he held in (by means of) memory.*

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: **eō tempore** (I, 3, 14), *at that time*; **id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant** (I, 13, 4), *a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.*

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: **eā tōtā nocte iērunt** (I, 26, 13), *they marched during that whole night.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, tenus.**

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h.** It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. **In** and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, *a*); as, **flūmen est lātum,** *the river is wide.* An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, **flūmen lātum,** *the wide river.*

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Examples: **homō bonus,** *a good man;* **mulierī bonae,** *to a good woman;* **bellōrum magnōrum,** *of great wars.*

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier,** *a good man and woman;* **bella et victōriae magnae,** *great wars and victories.*

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī,** *the men and their characters are good;* **hominēs et arma sunt magnī,** *the men and their arms are large;* **montēs et flūmina sunt magna,** *the mountains and rivers are large.*

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, *a*). Examples: **multī**, *many men*; **multōrum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multārum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multārum rērum**, *of many things*.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invītus vēnit**, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **prīmus vēnit**, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, **īmus**, **īnfimus**, *the bottom of*; **medius**, *the middle of*; **summus**, *the top of*; **prīmus**, *the first part of*; **extrēmus**, *the last part of*; **reliquus**, *the rest of*. Examples: **in colle mediō** (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summus mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **prīmā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidius īnsecūtī** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**. Examples: **quam maximum numerum** (I, 3, 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: **ego maneō, tū abīs,** *I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: **utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus** (II, 1, 1), *as I* (lit. *we*) *have said before.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. ***GENERAL RULE: Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.***

They correspond to *myself, himself,* etc., in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself,* etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him,* where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE:* Suī *and* suus *are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

Example: **eum videō quī sē laudat,** *I see the man who praises himself.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject* suī *and* suus *are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of **suī** or **suus.** Example: **Caesar dīcit mē sē laudāvisse,** *Caesar says that I praised him* (Caesar).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with **inter** to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Examples: **inter nōs laudāmus,** *we praise one another* or *each other*; **obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent** (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: **Caesar exercitum dūxit,** *Caesar led (his) army.*

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **suī,** and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hīc refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: **hīc liber,** *this book* (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: **iste liber,** *that book* (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: **ille liber,** *that book* (yonder).

a. **Ille** and **hīc** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter.* **Hīc** is usually *the latter,* as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When is is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—*the man, a man, such a man, that,* etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. Ipse emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self,* and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: **ipse Caesar eum laudat,** *Caesar himself praises him;* **ipse Caesar sē laudat,** *Caesar himself praises himself.*

a. **Ipse** is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: **meus ipsīus liber,** *my own book* (*the book of me myself*); **vester ipsōrum liber,** *your own book* (*the book of you yourselves*).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. ***RULE: A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.***

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, *a*, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: **Caesar, quem laudō,** *Caesar, whom I praise*; **ego, quī eum laudō,** *I, who praise him*; **Caesar et Cicerō, quī mē laudant,** *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me.*

a. **Coordinate Relative.** It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and, but,* etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: **relinquēbātur ūna via, quā īre nōn poterant** (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go.* Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: **quī** (I, 15, 5), *they.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. ***RULE:*** **Quis,** ***anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after*** **sī, nisi, nē,** ***and*** **num.**

Example: **sī quis laudat,** *if anyone praises.*

175. ***RULE:*** **Aliquis (aliquī)** ***is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.***

Example: **aliquis dīcat,** *some one may say.*

176. Quispiam has almost exactly the same meaning as **aliquis,** but is rare. Example: **quispiam dīcat,** *some one may say.*

177. ***RULE:*** **Quisquam** ***and*** **ūllus** ***are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with*** **nē*), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.***

Examples: **neque quemquam laudō,** *nor do I praise anyone;* **cur quisquam iūdicāret** (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. Nesciō quis (nesciō quī), originally meaning *I know not who,* is often used in a sense very much like that of **aliquis,** but with even more indefiniteness. Example: **nesciō quis laudat,** *some one or other praises.*

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. ***RULE: A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.***

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: **Caesar laudātus est,** *Caesar was praised;* **mulierēs laudātae sunt,** *the women were praised.*

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: **multitūdō vēnērunt,** *a great number came;* **duo mīlia occīsī sunt,** *two thousand were killed.*

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, *a,* 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: **homō et mulier occīsī sunt,** *the man and the woman were killed;* **ego et tū vēnimus,** *you and I came.*

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor.* Example: **Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus,** *Caesar and Labienus came;* **neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit,** *neither Caesar nor Labienus came;* **fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est** (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken.*

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: **Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit** (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: **laudat,** *he praises;* **laudātur,** *he is praised;* **eī crēditur** (115, *d*) lit. *it is believed to him = he is believed.*

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. **The Indicative** speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: **laudat,** *he praises*; **nōn laudat,** *he does not praise*; **laudatne?** *does he praise?*

184. **The Subjunctive** has **three classes** of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: **laudet,** *let him praise* or *may he praise*; **imperō ut laudet,** *I command that he praise,* i. e., *I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential.* Examples: **laudet,** *he would praise* (if there should be reason); **is est quī laudet,** *he is a man who would praise.*

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: **laudātur cum laudet,** *he is praised because he praises.* Compare **laudātur quod laudat,** *he is praised because he praises.*

185. **The Imperative** is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: **laudā,** *praise* (*thou*); **dēsilīte** (IV, 25, 11), *jump down.*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. **The Infinitive** is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: **dīcit Caesarem laudārī,** *he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: **Nōn,** ***not, and*** **neque,** ***and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.***

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, *b*), the subjunctive of fact (184, *c*), and the infinitive. Examples: **nōn laudat,** *he does not praise*; **nōn laudet,** *he would not praise*; **nōnne laudat?** *does he not praise?*

b. RULE: **Nē,** ***not, and*** **nēve,** ***and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).***

But **nē . . . quidem,** *not even*, is used in statements. Examples: **nē laudet,** *let him not praise*, or *may he not praise:* **nē laudat quidem,** *he does not even praise.*

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: **laudāvit,** *he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; **laudāverat,** *he had praised,* means that the action was already completed in the past time; **laudābat,** *he was praising,* means that the action was going on in the past time; and **laudātūrus erat,** *he was going to praise,* means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: **laudat,** *he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: **oppida sua omnia incendunt** (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns.*

b. With such expressions as **iam diū, iam prīdem,** *for a long time,* **multōs annōs,** *for many years,* the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē moneō,** *I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with **dum,** etc., see 234, *a.*

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example; **laudābat,** *he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as **laudābat,** *he used to praise,* or *he kept praising.* It is less often used of attempted past action; as **laudābat,** *he tried to praise.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, *b,* the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē monēbam,** *I had been warning you for many years.*

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: **laudābō,** *I shall* or *will praise,* or *be praising.*

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have.* It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: **laudāvī,** *I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, **vēnī,** *I have come,* is nearly equivalent to *I am here.* A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially **nōvī, cognōvī,** *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and **cōnsuēvī,** *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "*I've got it,*" for "*I have it.*"

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: **laudāvī,** *I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: **laudāveram,** *I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, *a,* are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: **vēneram,** *I had come,* i. e., *I was there*; **nōveram,** *I knew*; **cōnsuēveram,** *I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: **laudāverō,** *I shall* or *will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, *a,* are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: **vēnerō,** *I shall have come,* i. e., *I shall be there*; **nōverō,** *I shall know*; **cōnsuēverō,** *I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of **sum.** Examples: **laudātūrus est,** *he is about to praise*; **laudātūrus erat,** *he was about to praise*; **laudātūrus erit,** *he will be about to praise.*

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived........, planned......... But Caesar went........." Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived........, had planned......... But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After **postquam, ubi,** etc. (see **237**), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also **235,** *a,* and **236,** *a.*

2. After **dum,** *while* (see **234,** *a*) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see **256.**

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (**184,** *c*), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, *a*, *b*), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: **laudet,** *let him praise,* is a command to praise in the future; **imperāvit ut laudāret,** *he commanded that he praise,* is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	=	present *or* future
Imperfect	=	imperfect *or* future to a past
Perfect	=	perfect *or* future perfect
Pluperfect	=	pluperfect *or* future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So **rogō quid faciās** regularly means *I ask what you are doing,* and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do.* Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by **rogō quid factūrus sīs.**

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come,* or *I shall come, that I may praise,* **laudem**; *I came that I might praise,* **laudārem.** In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses,* can be followed.

RULE: In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

Principal Tenses

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	**rogō,** *I ask*	Present	**quid faciat,** *what he is doing*
Future	**rogābō,** *I shall ask*	Perfect	**quid fēcerit,** *what he has done* (or *did*)
Present perfect	**rogāvī,** *I have asked*		
Future perfect	**rogāverō,** *I shall have asked*		

Historical Tenses

Imperfect	**rogābam,** *I was asking*	Imperfect	**quid faceret,** *what he was doing*
Historical perf.	**rogāvī,** *I asked*	Pluperfect	**quid fēcisset,** *what he had done*
Pluperfect	**rogāveram,** *I had asked*		

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high,* is to be put into Latin, **cum sint** would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction **quod sunt.**

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: **temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dēfuerit** (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity.*

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: **diem dīcunt quā diē conveniant** (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; **omne frūmentum combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad perīcula subeunda essent** (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.*

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. ***RULE: The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.***

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dīcō eum	**laudāre**	**laudātūrum esse**	**laudāvisse**
lit. *him*	*to be praising*	*to be about to praise*	*to have praised*
I say that he	*is praising*	*will praise*	*has praised,* or *praised*
dīcam eum,			
I shall say that he	*is praising*	*will praise*	*has praised,* or *praised*
dīxī eum,			
I said that he	*was praising*	*would praise*	*had praised*

a. With such perfects as **dēbuī, licuit, oportuit, potuī,** Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: **laudāre potuī** lit. *I was able to praise,* = *I could have praised.*

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by **fore (futūrum esse) ut,** *it will* (*would*) *be that,* with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: **dīcit fore ut timeat,** lit. *he says that it will be that he fears,* = *he says that he will fear*; **dīxit fore ut laudārētur,** lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised,* = *he said that he would be praised.*

STATEMENTS

206. **The Indicative** is used to state facts. Examples: **Caesar vēnit,** *Caesar came;* **Caesar nōn veniet,** *Caesar will not come.*

207. **The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity** (184, *b*) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential.* Examples: **Caesar veniat,** *Caesar would come;* **Caesar nōn vēnissēt,** *Caesar would not have come;* **velim,** *I should like.*

208. **The Potential Subjunctive** (184, *b*) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase **aliquis dīcat,** *some one may say.* In an independent sentence the student should always express *may, might, can, could,* by such words as **possum** and **licet.** Example: **nēmō dubitet,** but usually **nēmō dubitāre potest,** *no one can doubt.*

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: **quis veniet?** *who will come?* **quis veniat?** *who would come?* **quis dubitet?** *who can doubt* (implying that no one can)*?*

210. **A Deliberative Question** is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: **quid faciam?** *what shall I do? what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: **cūr dubitem?** *why should I doubt?*

211. *A rhetorical question* is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: **quis vēnit?** *who came?* **quālis est?** *what sort of man is he?* **ubi est?** *where is he?*

213. ***RULE: Questions which can be answered by yes or no are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.***

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. ***RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic*** **-ne** ***is added to the first word.***

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: **scrībitne epistulam?** *is he writing a letter?* **epistulamne scrībit?** *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. ***RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is*** **nōnne.**

Example: **nōnne epistulam scrībit?** *is he not writing a letter?*

c. ***RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is*** **num.**

Example: **num epistulam scrībit?** *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. **Utrum** may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or **-ne** may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by **an**; *or not* is **annōn.** Examples: **utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? pugnāvitne an fūgit? pugnāvit an fūgit?** *did he fight or run away?* **pugnāvit annōn?** *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use **ita, sānē,** etc., for *yes,* **nōn, minimē,** etc., for *no.* Example: **epistulamne scrībit? scrībit,** *yes*; **nōn scrībit,** *no.*

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is **nē** (188, *b*).

217. ***RULE: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.***

Examples: **laudēmus,** *let us praise*; **nē eāmus,** *let us not go.*

218. ***RULE: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.***

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: **venīte,** *come* (*ye*); **mementō,** *remember.*

219. ***RULE: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by*** nōlī, nōlīte, ***be unwilling, and the present infinitive.***

A prohibition is less often expressed by **cavē** (with or without **nē**), *take care,* and the present subjunctive; or by **nē** and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: **nōlī dubitāre,** *do not doubt;* less often **cavē** (**nē**) **dubitēs,** or **nē dubitāverīs.**

220. ***RULE: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.***

Examples: **eat,** *let him go*; **nē veniant,** *let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and are usually introduced by **utinam** (not to be translated).

a. ***RULE: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without*** utinam.

Example: (**utinam**) **adsit,** *may he be here!*

b. ***RULE: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with*** utinam.

c. ***RULE: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with*** utinam.

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: **utinam adesset,** *would that he were here!* **utinam affuisset,** *would that he had been here!*

COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction.* The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for,* and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that,* and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, *a–c*).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233–242), causal clauses (243–245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive **quod** clauses (248), conditional clauses (249–259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262–264), indirect discourse (265–273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277–280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, *c*) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the **ut** clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. ***RULE: Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with*** **ut, nē, quō,** ***or a relative.***

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: **hominēs mīsit quī vidērent,** *he sent men to see,* lit. *who were to see.*

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, quō is used. Example: **vēnit quō facilius vidēret,** *he came that he might see more easily,* lit. *by which the more easily he might see.*

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction **ut** is used. Example: **vēnit ut vidēret,** *he came to see, that he might see,* or *in order to see*; **venit ut videat,** *he comes to see.*

b. In negative clauses the conjunction **nē** is always used. Example: **hoc fēcit nē quis** (not **ut nēmō**) **vidēret,** *he did this that no one might see,* or *to keep anyone from seeing.*

RESULT CLAUSES

226. ***RULE: Result is expressed by the subjunctive with* ut *or* ut nōn.**

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a.* For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: **mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent** (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; **incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit** (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; **tam fortis est ut pugnet,** *he is so brave that he would fight,* or *as to fight,* or *that he fights.*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses,* because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command, I hinder, the result is.*

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses.* The older name, *substantive purpose clauses,* is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: **imperō ut eās,** *I command you to go,* does not mean *I command in order that you may go,* but rather *I give the command "go".*

***a. RULE: Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with* ut *or* nē.**

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command, permit, persuade, request, resolve, strive, urge, wish,* and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after **iubeō,** *command,* **cōnor,** *attempt,* **patior, sinō,** *permit.* See 280, *a.* **Ut** is often omitted after verbs of *asking, commanding,* and *wishing,* especially after **volō.** The subjunctive, usually without **ut,** is often used with **oportet,** *it is right,* and **licet,** *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: **cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent** (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; **cīvitātī persuāsit nē exīrent,** *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; **oportet eat,** *he ought to go*; **eī licet eat,** *he may go*; **obsidēs utī dent perficit** (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages.*

b. RULE: Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with* nē *meaning that, or* ut *meaning that not.

But **nē nōn,** *that not,* is often used instead of **ut.** Examples: **timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that he will come* (originally **timeō: nē veniat,** *I am afraid: let him,* or *may he, not come*); **timeō ut** (or **nē nōn**) **veniat,** *I fear that he will not come* (originally **timeō: veniat,** *I am afraid: let him* or *may he, come*; **ut** or **nē nōn** was then used as the opposite of **nē**).

***c. RULE: Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse may take the subjunctive with* nē, quīn, *or* quōminus.**

But the infinitive may be used instead **Nē** is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, **quīn** after a *negative*, **quōminus** after *either* positive or negative. Examples: **eum impediō nē**, or **quōminus, veniat**, *I hinder him from coming*; **eum nōn impediō quīn**, or **quōminus, veniat**, *I do not hinder him from coming*; **neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset** (I, 31, 24), *and that they would not refuse to be.*

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called **ut** clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, *c*) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. RULE: Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn** ***when the subject is not a conscious agent.***

Compare 228, *a*. Example: **montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint**, *the mountains make* (*that they can not*) *it impossible for them to leave.*

b. RULE: Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn.**

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative **quod** clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: **hīs rēbus fīēbat ut vagārentur** (I, 2, 11), *the result was that they wandered.*

c. RULE: Such phrases as **mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est** ***(it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn.**

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with **ut** or **nē**) may be used with such phrases, especially with **iūs est, lēx est.** Example: **mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent**, *it is their custom to fight on horseback.*

d. RULE: Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with **quīn.**

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with **num, an,** or **sī** is used, as *whether* is in English. **Dubitō** with the infinitive means *hesitate.* Example: **nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit**, *there is no doubt that he did this.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. ***GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.***

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to* ut *clauses of result.

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like **is** = (*such*) *a man* (171, *a*), **eius modī,** *such,* or an adjective modified by **tam.** Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses.* Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: **is est quī pugnet,** *he is a man who fights*; **secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent** (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp* (= *such storms . . . . . .that they kept*); **tam improbus quī nōn fateātur** (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

b. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.

So after **est quī,** *there is a man who*; **nōn** or **nēmō** or **nūllus est quī,** *there is no one who;* **quis est quī?** *who is there who?* **sōlus** or **ūnus est quī** *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: **nūllī sunt quī putent,** *there are none who think*; **erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre possent** (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can, could,* or by *should, ought.* Examples: **ūnum** (iter) **vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur** (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved*; **neque commissum intellegeret quārē timēret** (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.*

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. ***RULE: Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.***

Example: **ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam** (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. ***RULE: A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.***

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: **Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat, persuādet** (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by **Dumnorīgī (is prīncipātum obtinēbat) persuādet.**

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is **cum** which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. **Cum** with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: **Dum** ***meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.***

See 198, *a*, 2. Example: **dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est** (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. RULE: **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** ***and*** **quam diū,** ***as long as, while (i. e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.***

Example: **quoad potuit, restitit** (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

Until

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. ***RULE:*** **Dum, dōnec,** ***and*** **quoad** ***meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.***

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: **Gallī fuērunt līberī dum Caesar vēnit,** *the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. ***RULE:*** **Dum, dōnec,** ***and*** **quoad** ***meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.***

Examples: **Gallī exspectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret,** *the Gauls waited until Caesar should come,* or *for Caesar to come,* or *until Caesar came.*

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. ***RULE:*** **Priusquam** ***and*** **antequam** ***are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.***

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: **Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit,** *the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. ***RULE:*** **Priusquam** ***and*** **antequam** ***are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.***

Example: **Gallī magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret,** *the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive,* or *arrived,* or *in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the **prius** or **ante** standing in the principal clause, and the **quam** at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where **quam** does. Example: **Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit,** translated as in *a.*

After

237. ***RULE:*** **Postquam,** ***after,*** **ut, ubi,** ***when (after,*** not ***while),*** **simul ac, cum prīmum,** ***as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.***

Example: **ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt** (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

Cum

238. Cum has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when, after*;
causal, *since, because*;
adversative (concessive), *although.*

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time,* sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with **cum** is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.***

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: **quae cum ita sint, perge** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; **hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt** (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; **cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit** (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening.*

240. Temporal cum. Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.***

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.***

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.

a. **Clauses of Date.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.***

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like **tum** or **eō tempore** is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: **tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciēbam** (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Haeduī** (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

b. **Clauses of Repeated Action.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning whenever is usually followed by the indicative.***

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of **cum**; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, *b*.

Example: **haec cum dēfīxerat, contrāria duo statuēbat** (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly* (in each of several cases) *he put two others opposite.*

c. **Inverted Cum Clauses.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the*** **cum** ***clause.***

In the most common type of **cum** clauses (242, *a*) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the **cum** clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: **vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē** (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another* (for **cum......prōcessisset,......cohortātī sunt,** *when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged*, etc.).

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

a. **Situation and Narrative Clauses.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.***

RULE:* Cum *meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: **cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur** (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); **cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est** (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this **cum** clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE:* Cum *meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, *b*. Example: **cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere poterant** (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent* (in each of many cases), *they could neither draw it out,* etc.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **cum, quod, quia, quoniam,** and **quandō**, or by the relative. The conjunctions **nam, enim, etenim,** *for,* introduce coordinate clauses.

244. ***RULE:* Quod, quia, quoniam, *and* quandō, *because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.***

When the writer wishes to imply because (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) **reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt** (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight*; (with the subjunctive) **quod sit dēstitūtus queritur** (I, 16, 18), *he complained because* (as he said) *he had been deserted.*

245. ***RULE:* Cum, *since, because, and often* quī, *since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.***

But the indicative is often used with **quī**, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If **praesertim**, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive **quī** or **cum** clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) **illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentīrent, negōtium suscēpērunt** (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) **fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt** (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who* (= since they) *kept up with*, etc. For example with **cum**, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. ***RULE:*** **Quamquam**, ***although, and*** **etsī, tametsī**, ***even if, although, are used with the indicative.***

Example: **etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur** (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.* But **quamquam** sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet.*

247. ***RULE:*** **Cum**, ***although, and less commonly*** **quamvīs** ***(in Cicero), however much, however, although,*** **quī**, ***although he, etc.,*** **ut**, ***although, are used with the subjunctive.***

Examples: (for **cum** see 239) **quamvīs senex sit, fortis est**, *however old he may be, he is brave*; **ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent** (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* But the indicative is sometimes used with **quī** when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE *QUOD* CLAUSES

248. ***RULE: Substantive clauses with*** **quod**, ***that, employ the indicative.***

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: **illa praetereō, quod Maelium occīdit** (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the **quod** clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas.* Example: **quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere** (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions **sī**, *if*, **sī nōn**, *if not*, **nisi**, *if not* or *unless*, **sīn**, *but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see,* means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say,* means *if at any time I saw him he used to say.* Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. **Undetermined Present or Past** (253). **sī pugnat, vincit,** *if he fights he conquers*; **sī pugnāvit, vīcit,** *if he fought he conquered.*

b. **Present or Past Contrary to Fact** (254). **sī pugnāret, vinceret,** *if he were fighting he would be conquering*; **sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset,** *if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. **More Vivid (Confident) Future** (256). **sī pugnābit, vincet,** *if he fights* (*shall fight*) *he will conquer.*

d. **Less Vivid (Confident) Future** (257). **sī pugnet, vincat,** *if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. ***Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.***

Examples: **sī fortis est eum laudō,** *if he is brave I praise him*; **quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat,** *whoever is brave fights for his country*; **nisi prō patriā pugnāvit nōn fortis fuit,** *unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

254. ***Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.***

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time Examples: **sī fortis esset eum laudārem,** *if he were brave I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he is not, and I do not*); **nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem,** *unless he had* (*if he had not*) *fought for his country I should not have praised him* (implying *but he did, and I do*; the contrary of the negative supposition); **sī pugnāvisset eum laudārem,** *if he had fought I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he did not, and I do not*; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought,* or such expressions as *it would be hard,* or *just,* the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: **sī fortis esset pugnāre poterat,** *if he were brave he could fight* (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); **sī fortis fuisset pugnāre dēbuit** or **dēbuerat,** *if he had been brave he ought to have fought* (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. ***More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.***

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him,* means *if I shall see him I shall tell him,* and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him,* means *if he shall have arrived first,* and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: **sī pugnābit eum laudābō,** *if he fights* or *is fighting* (*shall fight* or *shall be fighting*) *I shall praise him*; **quī pugnāverit laudābitur,** *whoever fights or has fought* (*shall have fought*) *will be praised.*

257. ***Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive***

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: **sī pugnet vincat,** *if he should fight,* or *were to fight, he would conquer*; **quī pugnet laudētur,** *whoever should fight,* or *should be fighting, would be praised*; **sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem,** *if he should not fight,* or *should not have fought, I should not praise him.*

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: **sī veniat hīc adsumus,** *if he should come we are here.*

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: **damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat** (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; **dīcat,** *he would say* (if he should be asked); **velim,** *I should like.* The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. ***RULE:*** **Dum, modo,** ***and*** **dummodo** ***in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.***

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often **nē.** This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come*: *I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*). Examples: **magnō mē metū līberābis dummodo mūrus intersit** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be* (*only let there be*) *a wall between us*; **modo nē** (or **nōn**) **discēdat eum vidēbō,** *if only he do not leave I shall see him.*

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. ***RULE: The subjunctive is used with*** **ac sī, quam sī, quasi ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī,** ***as if, just as if.***

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: **currit quasi timeat,** *he runs as if he were afraid*; **cucurrit quasi timēret,** *he ran as if he were afraid.*

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. ***GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.***

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I* (or *he*) *was going.* In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. ***RULE: Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.***

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) **quis veniat?** *who would come?* (indirect) **rogō quis veniat,** *I ask who would come*; (direct) **quid faciam?** *what am I to do?* (indirect) **rogāvī quid facerem,** *I asked what I was to do.*

264. ***RULE: All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.***

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) **quis vēnit?** *who came?* (indirect) **rogō quis vēnerit,** *I ask who came*; (direct) **ubi est?** *where is he?* (indirect) **mihi dīxit ubi esset,** *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by **num** or **-ne,** *whether* (no difference in meaning). **Sī** is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether,* Examples: (direct) **venitne?** *is he coming?* (indirect) **rogō num veniat,** or **rogō veniatne,** *I ask whether he is coming*; **exspectāvit sī venīrent,** *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by **necne,** instead of **annōn.** Examples: **rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset,** *I asked whether he had fought or run away*; **rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset necne,** *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave." Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave.*

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking,* which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

Principal Clauses

266. ***Declarative Sentences. RULE: Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).***

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: **mīles est fortis,** *the soldier is brave,* becomes **dīxit mīlitem esse fortem,** *he said that the soldier was brave.*

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. ***Imperative Sentences. RULE: Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.***

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is **nē.** Examples: **ad Īd. Apr. revertiminī,** *return about the thirteenth of April,* becomes **respondit:....ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur** (I, 7, 19), *he replied....: (that) they should return,* etc.; **is ita ēgit:....nē....dēspiceret** (I, 13, 14), *he should not despise* (from an original **nōlī dēspicere** (219), *do not despise*).

268. ***Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.***

Example: **respondit:....quid sibi vellet** (I, 44, 24), *what did he want* (for an original **quid tibi vīs,** *what do you want?*)*?*

II. RULE. An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: **respondit:....num memoriam dēpōnere posse** (I, 14, 8), *could he forget* (for an original *I can not forget* [*can I?*])*?*

III. RULE. A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: **incūsāvit:....cūr quisquam iūdicāret** (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose* (for an original **iūdicet.** See 210. *a*)*?*

269. ***Subordinate Clauses. RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.***

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: **incūsāvit:....ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod ....superāssent** (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original **iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis**).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, *a*), being equivalent to a clause connected by **et,** or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since **quō** connects with the preceding sentence **posse** might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking.*

a. **Repraesentātiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: **respondit:....cum ea ita sint ....sēsē pācem esse factūrum** (I, 14, 16), *he replied....that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: **dīcit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset,** *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after **dīcit,** imperfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after **dīcit,** pluperfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of **suī** or **suus** (rarely of **ipse**). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: **hunc mīlitem laudō,** *I praise this soldier,* may become **dīcō mē hunc mīlitem laudāre,** *I say that I praise this soldier,* or **dīcit sē illum mīlitem laudāre,** *he says that he praises that soldier.* Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now* to *then, here* to *there,* etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to **266,** *a.* The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in **-ūrus esse.** The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in **-ūrus fuisse.**

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. **Sī pugnāret eum laudārem,** *if he were fighting I should praise him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem,** *if he had fought I should have praised him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.**

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. ***RULE: The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.***

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with **quod,** etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: **Caesar frūmentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitāre** (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; **erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsīus cōpiae vīsae essent** (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said **nisi meae copiae visae erunt,** *unless my forces shall be seen*).

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. ***RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.***

Example: **cum certissimae rēs accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset** (I, 19, 1), *since the most clearly proven facts were added* (namely) *that he had led the Helvetii.*

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. ***RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.***

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish,* and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, *a*. Examples: **īre potest,** *he can go*; **īre potuit,** *he could have gone,* literally *he was able to go*; **īre dēbet,** *he ought to go*; **cōnstituērunt comparāre** (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: **fortis esse cōnātur,** *he tries to be brave.*

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With **licet,** *it is permitted,* the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: **īre oportet,** *one must go,* literally *to go is right*; **īre oportuit,** *one ought to have gone* (205, *a*), literally *to go was right;* **eī īre licuit,** *he might have gone,* literally *to go was permitted to him*; **īre necesse est,** *one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-

sative. But with **licet** a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: **fortem esse oportet,** *one ought to be brave*; **virō licet esse fortī (fortem),** *a man may be brave,* lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave.*

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. ***RULE: The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as*** **decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, vīsum est,** ***and of*** **est** ***with a predicate noun or adjective.***

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a*, and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with **licet** the dative is much more common. Examples: **mē īre oportet,** *I ought to go*; **Caesarem īre oportuit,** *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); **mē īre necesse est,** *I must go.*

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. ***RULE: The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.***

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) **Caesar vēnisse fertur,** *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) **Caesarem vēnisse dictum est,** *it has been said that Caesar came.*

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with **iubeō,** *order*, **vetō,** *forbid,* **patior, sinō,** *permit,* which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*). Example: **mīlitēs pugnāre iussit,** *he ordered the soldiers to fight.*

b. With **volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō,** regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: **volō eum īre,** *I wish him to go*; **cupiō mē esse clēmentem** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful.*

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But **posse** may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because **possum** implies futurity. Examples: **id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant** (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; **sēsē potīrī posse spērant** (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession.*

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. ***Historical Infinitive. RULE: The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.***

Example: **cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre** (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain.*

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: **victus fūgit** may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled*, or *because he had been conquered he fled*; **victus fugiet** may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee.* See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated **hōc vīsō** (150) **fūgit**, lit. *this having been seen.*

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses **dum** with the present indicative (234, *a*,) or **cum** with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, *a*). Examples: *he was killed* (*while*) *fighting*, sometimes **pugnāns occisus est**, usually either **dum pugnat occīsus est**, or **cum pugnāret, occīsus est**; *seeing this he fled*, **cum hoc vīdisset fūgit.**

b. Remember that *he is running* is always **currit**, never **est currēns.**

285. FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. **The future active participle** is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of **sum**, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: **praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant** (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. **The future passive participle** has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as **laudandus est**, *he is to be praised, he must* (*ought, deserves to*) *be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: **Caesar est mihi laudandus**, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; **mihi pugnandum fuit** (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight.*

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially **cūrō**, *cause, have* (literally *take care*), **dō**, *give over*, **suscipiō**, *undertake*. Examples: **pontem faciendum cūrat** (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; **cōnsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit**, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls.*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see *a*), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: **vīsus fūgit,** *having been seen he fled*; **Caesare vīsō fūgit,** *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled.* See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōnspicātus fūgit,** *having seen Caesar he fled.*

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habeō.** The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: **magnās cōpiās coāctās habet,** *he has great forces* (*which he has*) *collected,* or *he has collected great forces* (and still has them); while **magnās cōpiās coēgit,** *he* (*has*) *collected great forces,* leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam,** *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded.*

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: **fugiendī causā** (99, *a*), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum eī** (115), *for persuading him;* **urbem videndī causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city.*

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā, videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā,** and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī.** In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā, urbis** is the genitive mod-

ifying **causā** and **videndae** agrees with **urbis,** literally *for the sake of the city to be seen.* Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city.*

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. ***I. RULE: If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.***

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: **eī crēdendī causā,** *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** (145) is used. Example: **spēs potiundī oppidī** (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town.*

II. RULE: If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) **ad effēminandōs animōs** (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) **urbis videndae causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes **urbem videndī causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city.*

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With **causā** and **grātiā** it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: **bellandī cupiditās,** *a desire of fighting*; **Caesaris** (or **Caesarem**) **videndī cupidus,** *desirous of seeing Caesar*; **bellandī causā vēnit,** *he came to fight* (*for the sake of fighting*).

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—**meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** or **vestrī** with a genitive in **-ī** (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: **suī cōnservandī causā,** *for the sake of saving themselves* The usual gerund would be **sē cōnservandī**; the gerundive **suī cōnservandōrum.**

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially **ad** expressing purpose. Examples: **parātus ad proficīscendum,** *ready to set*

out; **ad Caesarem videndum** (gerundive, see 289, II), **venit**, *he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex, in,** and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: **in quaerendō reperiēbat,** *in questioning* (*them*) *he learned*; **lapidibus subministrandīs** (III, 25, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

THE SUPINE

295. ***RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.***

It may govern a direct object. Examples: **grātulātum vēnērunt** (I, 30, 2), *they came to offer congratulations*; **lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium** (I, 11, 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. ***RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).***

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs **audiō, cognōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō,** is most commonly found; and with the adjectives **facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mīrābilis,** and the expressions **fās est, nefās est, opus est.** Example: **perfacile factū** (I, 3, 16) lit. *very easy as to the doing,* = *very easy to do.*

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were **Iānuārius (-a, -um), Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis (-e), Maius, Iūnius, Quīntīlis, Sextīlis, September (-bris, -bre), Octōber, November,** and **December.** Later **Quīntīlis** was changed to **Iūlius,** in honor of Julius Caesar, and **Sextīlis** to **Augustus,** in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (**Kalendae,—ārum,** *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (**Nōnae, -ārum,** *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (**Īdūs, -uum,** *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example **a. d. IV. Īd. Iān.** = **ante diem quārtum Īdūs Iānuāriās.** The logical, but less usual form is **diē quārtō ante Īdūs Iānuāriās,** *on the fourth day before the Ides of January.* For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH) (ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = **Kal. Iān.**

(13 + 1 − 4 = 10) Jan. 10 = **a. d. iv. Īd. Iān.** (13 + 1 − 10 = 4).
(28 + 2 − 8 = 22) Feb. 22 = **a. d. viii. Kal. Mār.** (28 + 2 − 22 = 8).
(7 + 1 − 4 = 4) July 4 = **a. d. iv. Nōn. Iūl.** (7 + 1 − 4 = 4).

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of **laudō, moneō,** and **audiō,** respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of **hortor, vereor,** and **partior** (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in Italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

ă = a in m*a*t.	ē = e in m*e*.	ō = o in n*o*te.
ā = a in m*a*te.	ẽ = e in f*e*rn.	ô = o in *o*r.
ä = a in *a*rm.	ĭ = i in *i*s.	ŭ = u in *u*p.
ạ = a in Cub*a*.	ī = i in *i*ce.	ū = u in *u*se.
ĕ = e in m*e*t.	ŏ = o in not.	ụ = u in r*u*de.

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in youth), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in Lūcius = lū′shyŭs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark (′), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark (″).

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

VOCABULARY

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus** (aw′lŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **6.**

a., *abbr. for* **ante.** I, **6.**

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before* **tē**, *and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation;* (1) *of place, persons, time, etc.*, from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) *denoting position, in some phrases*, at, in, on, on the side of; **ā tergō**, in the rear: (3) *with expressions of measure*, away, off; **ab mīlibus passuum duōbus**, two miles away: (4) *with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes*, by: (5) *variously translated in other relations*, from, by, in respect to, after. I, **1.**

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, **12.**

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead away, draw *or* carry off, withdraw. I, **11.**

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw away *or* down; hurl. IV, **15.**

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], disjoin, detach.

abs, *see* **ā.**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut *or* lop off, tear off *or* away. III, **14.**

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum,** be absent], absent, at a distance. I, **32;** III, **17.**

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis,** like], unlike. III, **14.**

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [**teneō,** hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, **22.**

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III, **2.**

absum, abesse, āfuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 78], be away from, be absent *or* distant, be wanting *or* free from. **I, 1.**

abundō, 1, *intr.* [**unda,** wave], overflow; abound.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**ad+cēdō,** go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; **accēdēbat,** it was added. I, **19.**

accelerō, 1, *intr.* [**ad+celerō,** hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accipiō,** accept], acceptable, beloved *by* (*with dative*). I, **3.**

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**ad+cadō,** fall], fall to *or* upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit,** it happens. I, **14.**

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ad+caedō,** cut], cut into.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad+capiō,** take], take *or* receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, **14.**

acclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**ad+clīvus,** a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, **29.**

acclīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**acclīvis,** ascending], ascent, slope. II, **18.**

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (ăk′ō), *a chief of the Senones.*

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accommodō,** adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, **13.**

accommodō, 1, *tr.*, adjust *or* adapt to one's self, fit *or* put on. **II, 21.**

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -currī *or* **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**ad+currō,** run], run *or* hasten to. I, **22.**

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+causa,** cause, case], *bring a case or charge against;* blame, censure, accuse. **I, 16.**

acerbē, *adv.* [**acerbus,** harsh], harshly, with pain.

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.* [**acerbus,** harsh], harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, *adj.,* harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, *see* **ācriter.**

acervus, -ī, *m.,* a heap, mass. II, **32.**

aciēs, -ēī (*old gen.,* **aciē**), *f.,* sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; **prīma,** the van; **media,** the centre; **novissima,** the rear. I, **22.**

acquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**ad+quaerō,** seek], seek *or* gain in addition, win, acquire.

ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer,** sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius;** *sup.* **ācerrimē** (App. 40). I, **26.**

āctuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**agō,** move, drive], fitted with oars.

āctus, *see* **agō.**

acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **acuō,** sharpen], sharpened, pointed.

ad, *prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward:* (1) *denoting motion,* to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) *denoting position,* at, by, near; (3) *denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive,* to, for; (4) *with numerals,* up to, about; (5) *of time,* up to, until; at, on; (6) *variously translated in other relations,* at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. **I, 1.**

adāctus, *see* **adigō.**

adaequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequō,** make equal], make level with *or* equal to, equal; keep up with. I, **48;** II, **32.**

adamō, 1, *tr.* [**amō,** love], love strongly, covet. I, **31.**

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], place on; add.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw to, bring to; induce, influence. **I, 3.**

adēmptus, *see* **adimō.**

adeō, *adv.* [**eō,** thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, **7.**

adeptus, *see* **adipīscor.**

adequitō, 1, *intr.* [**equitō,** ride; **equus,** horse], ride up. I, **46.**

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesum, *intr.* [**haereō,** stick], cling *or* stick to.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, **20.**

adhortor, 1, *tr.* [**hortor,** encourage], encourage, incite.

adhūc, *adv.* [**hūc,** hither], hitherto, as yet. III, **22.**

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, ——, *intr.* [**iaceō,** lie], lie near *or* close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.,* Adiatunnus (ā″dī-a-tŭn′ŭs), *the leader of the Sotiates.* III, **22.**

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, **1.**

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** move], drive *or* bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). II, **21.**

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** take], take away, remove.

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus sum, *tr.,* attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, *m.* [**adeō,** go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, **43;** II, **15.**

adiūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdicō,** judge], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, **2.**

adiūtor, -ōris, *m.* [**adiuvō,** aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *tr.* [**iuvō,** aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, **17.**

administer, -trī, *m.* [**minister,** servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, 1, *tr.* [**minister,** servant],

serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [**mīror,** wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). I, 22.

admodum, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *up to the measure;* very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. III, 13.

admoneō, 2, *tr.* [**moneō,** warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum, *intr.*, grow up.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.* [**orior,** arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

adsum, adesse, affuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be near *or* present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

adulēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of* **adolēscō,** grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.* [**adulēscēns,** youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns,** youth], a very young man. III, 21.

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [**veniō,** come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversārius, -rī, *m.* [**adversus,** turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **advertō,** turn to], turned to *or* against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; **adversō flūmine,** up the river; **in adversum ōs,** full in the face. I, 18.

adversus, *prep. w. acc.* [**adversus,** turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly to *or* against, rush on *or* at.

aedificium, -cī, *n.* [**aedificō,** build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1, *tr.* [**aedēs,** house + **faciō,** make], build, construct. III, 9.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger,** ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, **aegrius;** *sup.*, **aegerrimē** (App. 40). I, 13.

Aemilius, -lī, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mĭl′ĭ-ŭs), I, 23.

aequāliter, *adv.* [**aequālis,** equal; **aequus,** equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [**aequus,** equal + **nox,** night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [**aequus,** equal], equality; fairness, equity; **animī aequitās,** contentment. I, 40.

aequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequus,** equal], make even *or* equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; **aequus animus,** equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

aerāria, -ae, *f.* [**aes,** copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aes, aeris, *n.* copper; *anything made of copper*, coin, money; **aes aliēnum,** *another's money*, debt. IV, 31.

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aestimō,** value], valuation.

aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

aestīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aestus,** heat; **aestās,** summer], of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [**aestus,** tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; **minuente aestū,** at ebb tide. III, 12.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad**+**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring, take *or* carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad**+**faciō,** do], do to, treat, affect; **magnō dolōre afficere,** to annoy greatly. I, 2.

affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**ad**+**fīgō,** fix], fasten to. III, 14.

affingō, -fingere, -fīnxī, -fictum, *tr.* [**ad + fingō,** invent], invent in addition.

affīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. I, **18.**

affirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**affirmō,** affirm; **ad+firmus,** strong], declaration, assertion.

affīxus, *see* **affīgō.**

afflīctō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afflīgō,** strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, **12.**

afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, **31.**

affore, *fut. inf. of* **adsum.**

Āfricus, -ī, *m.*, Africus (ăf′rĭ-kŭs), the southwest wind.

āfuī, *see* **absum.**

Agedincum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Agedincum (ăj″ē-dĭng′kŭm), *now* Sens.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land; district, territory. I, **2.**

agger, aggeris, *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. II, **12.**

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**ad+gradior,** step], advance to *or* against; attack. I, **12.**

aggregō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+grex,** flock], *unite in a flock;* assemble; join, attach. IV, **26.**

agitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **agō,** move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [**agō,** move], *a moving body;* a marching column; army; **in agmine,** on the march; **prīmum agmen,** the van; **novissimum** *or* **extrēmum agmen,** the rear. I, **15.**

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead (**causam** *or* **rem**); **quod agitur,** the matter in hand; **rēs agitur,** something is at stake. I, **13.**

agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [**ager,** land + **colō,** cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, **17.**

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, **19.**

alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [**alacer,** lively], liveliness, ardor. I, **41;** IV, **24.**

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla,** wing], on the wing; *pl. as noun,* auxiliaries. I, **51.**

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk.

Alesia, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Alesia (ạ-lē′zhyạ), *now* Alise Ste. Reine.

aliās, *adv.* [**alius,** another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another. II, **29.**

aliēnō, 1, *tr.* [**aliēnus,** of another], make another's *or* foreign; estrange, alienate; **aliēnātā mente,** maddened.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius,** other], of *or* belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum,** debt; **aliēnissimī,** entire strangers. I, **15.**

aliō, *adv.* [**alius,** other], to another place, person *or* thing, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [**aliquis,** some + **diū,** long], for some time. I, **40.**

aliquandō, *adv.* [**aliquis,** some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, *adv.* [**aliquantus,** some], somewhat, a little. III, **13.**

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, considerable; *neut. as noun with partitive gen.*, a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, *and* **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *indef. pron.* [**quis,** who. App. 62, *a*], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, **14.**

aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [**quot,** how many], some, a few, several. III, **1.**

aliter, *adv.* [**alius,** other], otherwise; **aliter . . . ac,** otherwise . . . than. II, **19.**

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alīus** (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another; *in pl.*, some . . . others. I, **1.**

allātus, *see* **afferō.**

alliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, *tr.*, attract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allo-

broges (ă-lŏb′rō-jēz), *a powerful Gallic people in the Province.* I, **6.**

alō, alere, aluī, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, **18.**

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* (Cghi), the Alpes (ăl′pēz), *better*, the Alps. I, **10.**

alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* **alterius** (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī,** the one party . . . the other. I, **2.**

alternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alter,** the other], one after another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus,** high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). I, **8.**

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. I, **2.**

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. III, **13.**

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, vassal.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ăm-băr′ī), *clients of the Haedui.* I, **11.**

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ăm″bĭ-ā′nī). II, **4.**

Ambibariī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bbc), the Ambibarii (ăm″bĭ-bā′rĭ-ī).

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ăm″bĭ-lĭ′a-tī), III, **9.**

Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Ambiorix (ăm-bī′-ō-rĭks), *king of the Eburones.*

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Ambivareti (ăm″bĭ-văr′ē-tī), *clients of the Haedui.*

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ăm″bĭ-văr′ĭ-tī). IV, **9.**

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, **40.**

āmentum, -ī, *n.*, strap *or* thong, *fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.*

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [**amīcus,** friend], friendship. I, **3.**

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**amō,** love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *as noun, m.*, a friend, an ally. I, **3.**

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, **28.**

amor, -ōris, *m.* [**amō,** love], love. I, **20.**

amplē, *adv.* [**amplus,** large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius,** more, farther. I, **35;** II, **16.**

amplificō, 1, *tr.* [**amplus,** large+**faciō,** make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, **14.**

amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**amplus,** large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, **3.**

amplius, *see* **amplē** *and* **amplus.**

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius,** *comp. as noun*, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, **15.**

an, *conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions*, or, or rather. I, **40;** IV, **14.**

Anartēs, -ium, *m.*, the Anartes (a-när′-tēz), *a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.*

Ancalitēs, -um, *m.* (Ac), the Ancalites (ăn-kăl′ĭ-tēz).

anceps, ancipitis, *adj.* [**ambō,** both+**caput,** head], two headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double. I, **26.**

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; **in ancorīs,** at anchor. III, **13.**

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (ăn″dē-brō′jyŭs). II, **3.**

Andēs, -ium, *or* **Andī, -ōrum,** *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ăn′dēz) *or* Andi (ăn′dī). II, **35.**

ānfrāctus, -ūs, *m.*, circuitous route.

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner.

angustē, *adv.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, **23.**

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, **9.**

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; **in angustō,** in a critical condition. I, **2.**

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, soul.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [**animus,** mind+**ad** +**vertō,** turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in,** punish. I, **19.**

animal, -ālis, *n.* [**anima,** breath of life], a living creature, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animī causā,** for amusement; **in animō habēre,** intend. I, **1.**

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], of last year.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year. I, **3.**

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], yearly. I, **16.**

ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. I, **3.**

anteā, *adv.* [**ante,** before+**eā,** this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, **17.**

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, **8.**

antecursor, -ōris, *m.* [**currō,** run], forerunner; *pl.*, vanguard.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear. App. 81], bear *or* carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, **14.**

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before; prefer. IV, **22.**

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], put before, prefer.

antīquitus, *adv.* [**antīquus,** ancient], from early *or* ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, **4.**

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ante,** before], former, old, ancient. I, **18.**

Antistius, -tī, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gā′yŭs ăn-tĭs′tĭ-ŭs rē-jī′nŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mär′kŭs ăn-tō′nĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.*

Ap., *abbr. for* **Appius** (ăp′ĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.*

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertum, *tr.*, open, expose.

apertē, *adv.* [**apertus,** open], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **aperiō**], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō,** on the unprotected flank. I, **25.**

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ạ-pŏl′ō),

apparō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+parō,** prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, **1.**

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**ad+pellō,** drive], bring to land; bring together. III, **12.**

appetō, -petere, -petīvī (-petiī), -ītum, *tr. and intr.* [**ad+petō,** seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, **40.**

applicō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+plicō,** fold], apply; **sē applicāre,** lean.

apportō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+portō,** carry], bring.

approbō, 1, *tr.* [**ad+probō,** approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [**ad+propinquus,** near], come near *or* close, approach. II, **10.**

appulsus, *see* **appellō.**

Aprīl., *abbr. for* **Aprīlis, -e,** *adj.*, of April, April. I, **6.**

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, **13.**

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, **2.**

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, **17.**

aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aqua,** water], getting water. IV, **11.**

aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard, (*as the* **aquila** *was the chief standard of the legion*). IV, **25.**

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (ăk″wĭ-lē′-yạ), *a city of Cisalpine Gaul.* I, **10.**

aquilifer, -erī, *m.* [**aquila,** eagle+**ferō,** bear], standard-bearer.

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (ăk″wĭ-tā′nĭ-ạ), *Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.* I, **1.**

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun,* the Aquitani (ăk″wĭ-tā′nī), *possibly* Aquitanians, *inhabiting southwestern Gaul.* I, **1.**

Arar, Araris (*acc.* **-im**), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā′rạr), *the modern* Saone. I, **12.**

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [**arbiter,** umpire], decision *or* judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, **36.**

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**arbiter**, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17.
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.
ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsum, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.
Arduenna, -ae, *f.* (ABfg), Arduenna (är″dū-ĕn′a), *better* the Ardennes, *a vast forest of northeast Gaul.*
arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, 33.
Arecomicī, Arecomici (ăr″ē-kŏm′ĭ-sī), *see* **Volcae.**
Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.* (Bbcd), *adj.*, *maritime,* Aremorican.
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silver plate *or* coin.
argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.
āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āreō,** be dry], dry; *neut. as noun,* dry land. IV, 24.
ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, *a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head;* brace, buttress.. II, 32.
Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā′′rĭ-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* I, 31; IV, 16.
Aristius,-tī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mär′-kŭs a-rĭs′tĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune.*
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; *by metonomy,* battle, war. I, 4.
armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [**armō,** arm], implements, gear; tackle *or* rigging *of a ship.* III, 14.
armātūra, -ae, *f.* [**armō,** arm], armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae,** light-armed. II, 10.
armō, 1, *tr.* [**arma,** arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; **armātus,** *pf. part.*, *as adj.*, armed; **armātī,** *as noun,* armed men. I, 40; II, 4.
Arpīnēius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Arpineius (gā′-yŭs är″pĭ-nē′yŭs), *a knight in Caesar's army.*
arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**ad+rapiō,** seize] take *or* seize hurriedly.
arroganter, *adv.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.
arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.
ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.
artē, *adv.* [**artus,** close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.
articulus, -ī, *m.*, joint.
artificium, -cī, *n.* [**ars,** art + **faciō,** make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.
artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.
Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (är-vĕr′nī), *possibly* the Arvernians. I, 31.
arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**ad+scandō,** climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.
ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ascendō,** climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.
ascīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**ad+scīscō,** approve], approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). I, 5.
aspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**aspiciō,** look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.
asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.
assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ad+sedeō,** sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.
assistō, assistere, astitī, ——, *intr.* [**ad+sistō,** stand], stand by *or* near.
assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, 1.
assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [**suēscō,** become accustomed], become accustomed.
at, *conj.*, but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.
atque, ac, (**ac** *only before consonants,* **atque** *before vowels and consonants*), *conj.*, *usually adds something especially important, while* **et** *usually associates objects of equal importance;* and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison or difference,* than, as, from. I, 1.
Atrebās, -bātis, *m.*, (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (ăt″rē-bā′tēz). II, 4.
Ātrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Atrius (kwĭn′-tŭs ā′trĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's officers.*

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**ad+texō,** weave], weave on.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad+tangō,** touch], touch *or* border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, **1.**

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**ad+tribuō,** assign], assign, allot. III, **1.**

attulī, *see* **afferō.**

Atuatuca, -ae, *f.* (Af), Atuatuca (ăt″ū-ăt′ū-kạ), *a stronghold of the Eburones.*

Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatuci (ăt″ū-ăt′ū-sī). II, **4.**

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [**augeō,** increase], one who produces, creates, *or* originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; **auctor esse,** advise. III, **17.**

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* [**auctor,** producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, **3.**

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **augeō,** increase], increased, advanced. I, **43.**

audācia, -ae, *f.* [**audāx,** bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. **I, 18.**

audācter, *adv.* [**audāx,** bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, **audācius;** *sup.*, **audācissimē.** I, **15.**

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. I, **18.**

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. I, **39;** II, **12.**

audītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**audiō,** hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, **5.**

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, **18.**

Aulercī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aulerci (aw-lẽr′sī), *a Gallic people divided into four branches.* (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ĕb″-ū-rō-vī′sēz), (Bd), III, **17;** (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nŏm′ạ-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brăn″ō-vī′sēz), *location unknown;* (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī″ạ-blĭn′tēz), (Bc), II, **34.**

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aurum,** gold], of gold, gold.

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. **IV, 33.**

auris, -is, *f.*, ear.

Auruncul̄eius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū′shyŭs aw-rŭng″kū-lē′yŭs cŏt′ạ), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* II, **11.**

Auscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw′sī). III, **27.**

ausus, *see* **audeō.**

aut, *conj.*, *used where the difference is important or exclusive,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. I, **1.**

autem, *conj.*, but (*a weak adversative*); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. **I, 2.**

autumnus, -ī, *m.*, autumn.

auxī, *see* **augeō.**

auxiliāris, -e *adj.* [**auxilium,** aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun,* auxiliary troops. **III, 25.**

auxilior, 1, *intr.* [**auxilium,** aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, **29.**

auxilium, -lī, *n.* [**augeō,** increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. **I, 11.**

Avaricēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -ī, *n.* (Ce), Avaricum (ạ-văr′ĭ-kŭm), *the stronghold of the Bituriges, now* Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, *f.* [**avārus,** greedy], greed, covetousness. I, **40.**

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], carry away, take away.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], turn away from *or* away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. **I, 16.**

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. IV, **10.**

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. I, **12.**

Axona, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona (ăk′sō-nạ), *a river, now the* Aisne. II, **5.**

B.

Bacēnis, -is, *f.* (Ahi), Bacenis (bạ-sē′-nĭs), the forest Bacenis, *between the Cherusci and the Suebi.*

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs seks′tĭ-ŭs băk′ū-lŭs). II, **25.**

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (băl″ē-ā′-rĭk), (i.e., *coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca*). II, **7.**

balteus, -ī, *m.*, sword belt.

Balventius, -tī, *m.*, Titus Balventius (tī′ tŭs băl-vĕn′ shyŭs), *one of Caesar's centurions.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. **I, 31; II, 35.**

Basilus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū′ shyŭs mĭ-nū′ shyŭs băs′ ĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (ba-tā′ vī). **IV, 10.**

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bĕl′ jē), *or* Belgians. **I, 1.**

Belgium, -gī, *n.* (ABdefg), Belgium (bĕl′ jyŭm), the country of the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* full of war, warlike. **I, 10.**

bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* in war, military.

bellō, 1, *intr.* [**bellum,** war], make *or* carry on war, wage war. **I, 2.**

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bĕ-lŏv′ a-sī). **II, 4.**

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. **I, 1.**

bene, *adv.* [**bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, **melius;** *sup.*, **optimē. I, 45; III, 18.**

beneficium, -cī, *n.* [**bene,** well+**faciō,** do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. **I, 9.**

benevolentia, -ae, *f.* [**bene,** well+**volō,** wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brăk′ tē), *the chief town of the Haedui.* **I, 23.**

Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī′ brăks), *a town of the Remi.* **II, 6.**

Bibrocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Bibroci (bĭb′ rō-sī).

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [**bis,** twice+**diēs,** day], space *or* period of two days, two days. **I, 23.**

biennium, -nī, *n.* [**bis,** twice+**annus,** year], two years. **I, 3.**

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jĕr″ ĭ-ō′ nēz *or* bĭ″ jĕ-rĭ-ō′ nēz). **III, 27.**

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. **III, 15.**

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**bis,** twice+**pēs,** foot], of two feet, two feet thick. **IV, 17.**

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis,** twice+**partior,** divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways. **I, 25.**

bis, *num. adv.* [*for* **duis,** *from* **duo,** two], twice. **III, 12.**

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bĭt″ ū-rī′ jēz). **I, 18.**

Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bŏd″ ū-ŏg-nā′ tŭs). **II, 23.**

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō′ yī), *a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.* **I, 5.**

bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [**bonus,** good], goodness; fertility. **I, 28.**

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with* **animō**) friendly; *as noun*, **bonum, -ī,** profit, advantage; **bona, -ōrum,** goods, property, estate; **bonī, -ōrum,** the good, good men *or* citizens. *Comp.*, **melior;** *sup.*, **optimus** (App. 42). **I, 6.**

bōs, bovis, *m., f.*, ox; cow; *pl.*, cattle.

bracchium, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. **I, 25.**

Brannovīcēs, *see* **Aulercī.**

Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brăt″ ŭs-păn′ shyŭm). **II, 13.**

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; **brevī,** in a short time. **I, 40; III, 4.**

brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [**brevis,** short], shortness; brevity. **II, 20.**

breviter, *adv.* [**brevis,** short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brĭ-tăn′ ĭ-a), *better* Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), *never Brittany.* **II, 4.**

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Britannia,** Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brĭ-tăn′ ī), *better*, the Britons. **IV, 21.**

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dĕs′ ĭ-mŭs jū′ nĭ-ŭs bru′ tŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony.* **III, 11.**

C.

C., *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā′yŭs). I, **40**; III, **5**.

C, *sign for* **centum**, a hundred.

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā′yŭs va-lē′rĭ-ŭs ka-bū′rŭs), *a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus.* I, **47**.

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [**cadō**, fall], a fallen *or* dead body, corpse. II, **27**.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, **15**.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *pl. as noun*, the Cadurci (ka-dĕr′sī),

caedēs, -is, *f.* [**caedō**, cut], a cutting; (*of persons*) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, **29**.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [**caelum**, heaven], heavenly; *pl. as noun*, the gods.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā′-nī). II, **4**.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō′sī). II, **4**.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, (1), Gaius Julius Caesar (gā′yŭs jū′lĭ-ŭs sē′zar), *conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries.* I, **7**. (2), Lucius Julius Caesar (lū′-shyŭs jū′lĭ-ŭs sē′zar), *a kinsman and lieutenant of the former.*

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, **25**.

caesus, *see* **caedō**.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. I, **12**.

Caletī, -ōrum (*or* **-ēs, -um**), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kăl′ē-tī). II, **4**.

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, **18**.

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. II, **24**.

campester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**campus**, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; **loca**, level country.

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space *or* country. III, **26**.

Camulogenus, -ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (kăm″ū-lŏj′ē-nŭs), *a chief of the Aulerci.*

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebilus (gā′yŭs ka-nĭn′ĭ-ŭs rĕb′ĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, *intr.*, sing; sound.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn′ta-brī). III, **26**.

Cantium, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kăn′-shyŭm), *or* Kent.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose, select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*); reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a beginning*); **collem capere**, take position on a hill; **fugam capere**, take to flight. I, **1**.

capra, -ae, *f.*, goat.

captīvus, -ī, *m.* [**capiō**, take], captive, prisoner. I, **22**.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [**capiō**, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, **3**.

captus, *see* **capiō**.

caput, capitis, *n.*, the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; mouth (*of a river*); **capitis poena**, capital punishment. I, **29**.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär′-ka-sō). III, **20**.

careō, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, **13**.

Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär′nū-tēz). II, **35**.

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. III, **17**.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. I, **3**.

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -lī, *m.*, Carvilius (kär-vĭl′ĭ-ŭs), *a British king.*

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Cassi (kăs′ī).

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, *see* **Cassius**. I, **13**.

cassis, -idis, *f.*, *a metal* helmet.

Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū′shyŭs kăsh′yŭs lŏn-gī′nŭs),

consul 107 B. C., *slain in battle by the Tigurini.* I, 7.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Cassivellaunus (kăs″ĭ-vĕ-law′nŭs), *the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.*

castellum, -ī, *n.* [**castrum,** fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kăs′tĭ-kŭs). I, 3.

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra, castrōrum,** fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** *or* **pōnere,** pitch camp; **castra movēre,** break up camp. I, 12.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cadō,** fall], *what befalls;* accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū,** by chance. I, 12.

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kăt″a-măn″ta-lē′dĭs). I, 3.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. I, 47; III, 13.

Caturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kăt″ū-rī′jēz). I, 10.

Catuvolcus, -ī, *m.*, Catuvolcus (kăt″ū-vŏl′kŭs), *a chief of the Eburones.*

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; **causam dīcere,** to plead a case; **causā,** *following a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, *adv.* [**cautus,** *from* **caveō,** be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. III, 13.

Cavarillus, -ī, *m.*, Cavarillus (kăv″a-rĭl′ŭs), *a Haeduan noble.*

Cavarīnus, -ī, *m.*, Cavarinus (kăv″a-rī′nŭs), *a king of the Senones.*

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; **obsidibus cavēre,** exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillōnum, -ī, *n.* (Cf), Cavillonum (kăv″ĭ-lō′nŭm).

Cebenna, -ae, *f.* (De), the Cebenna (sē-bĕn′a), *or* the Cevennes *mountains.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, 23.

celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**celer,** swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer,** swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, **celerius;** *sup.*, **celerrimē** (App. 40). I, 18.

cēlō, 1, *tr.*, keep covered *or* hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (sĕl′tē), *better* the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -ī, *m.*, Celtillus (sĕl-tĭl′ŭs), *an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.*

Cēnabēnsis, -e, *adj.* [**Cēnabum**], of Cenabum; *pl. as noun*, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -ī, *n.* (Cd), Cenabum (sĕn′a-bŭm), *now* Orleans.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ad), the Cenimagni (sĕn″ĭ-măg′nī).

Cēnomanī, *see* **Aulercī.**

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (**ut** *and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). I, 35.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. I, 29.

centum, (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centum,** a hundred], centurion, *the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* I, 39; II, 17.

cēpī, *see* **capiō.**

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [**certō,** strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certē, *adv.* [**certus,** certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **crētus,** *pf. part. of* **cernō**], decided; certain, sure, fixed; **certiōrem facere,** to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (**ut** *or* **nē** *and subj.*); **certior fierī,** be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, the Ceutrones (sū′trō-nēz), (1), (Dg), I, 10. (2), (Af).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ahi), the Cherusci (kē-rŭs′ī), *a German tribe.*

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cibus,** food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun,* provisions; **molita cibāria,** meal, flour. I, 5.

cibus, -ī, *m.,* food. IV, 1.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.,* Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwĭn′tŭs tŭl′ĭ-ŭs sĭs′ē-rō), *brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.*

Cimberius, -rī, *m.,* Cimberius (sĭm-bē′-rĭ-ŭs). I, 37.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Cimbri (sĭm′-brī). I, 33; II, 4.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, *m.,* Cingetorix (sĭn-jĕt′ō-rĭks), (1) *a chief of the Treveri;* (2) *a British king.*

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.,* encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (*a wall*). I, 38.

cippus, -ī, *m.,* palisade, stockade.

circinus, -ī, *m.* [**circus,** circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.

circiter, *adv.* [**circus,** circle], about, near. I, 15.

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [**circumeō,** go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.

circum, *prep. with acc.* [**circus,** a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut around *or* off, cut; isolate.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], encircle.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw around. I, 38; III, 26.

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* march around, traverse, visit. III, 25.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**fundō,** pour], surround; *pass.,* gather round.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw, set *or* place around. II, 6.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send around.

circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [**mūniō,** fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 30.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [**plectō,** fold], enfold, enclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *tr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand, flock *or* rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look (*around*) for *or* at, consider, examine.

circumvāllō, 1, *tr.* [**vāllum,** rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], carry around; *pass.,* ride around.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō,** come], come *or* get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

cis, *prep. with acc.,* on this side of. II, 3.

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alpēs**], Cisalpine, *lying on the south side of the Alps.*

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Rhēnus**], on this (*the western*) side of the Rhine.

Cita, -ae, *m.,* Gaius Fufius Cita (gā′yŭs fū′fĭ-ŭs sī′ta), *a Roman knight.*

citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **citō,** put in motion], swift. IV, 10.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** (= **Cisalpīna**), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer* (*Italian*) *side of the Alps.* I, 10.

citō, *adv.,* quickly, speedily. *Comp.,* **citius;** *sup.,* **citissimē.** IV, 33.

citrā, *prep. with acc.,* on this side of. I, 12.

citrō, *adv.,* hither; **ultrō citrōque,** back and forth. I, 42.

cīvis, -is, *m., f.,* citizen.

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**cīvis,** citizen], citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city. I, 2.

clam, *adv.,* secretly. III, 18.

clāmitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **clāmō,** cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō,** cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.

clandestīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**clam,** secretly], hidden, secret.
clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.
classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, **11.**
Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (ăp′ĭ-ŭs klaw′dĭ-ŭs pŭl′kẽr), *consul* 54 B.C.
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere,** close the line, bring up the rear. I, **25.**
clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. III, **13.**
clēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**clēmēns,** gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, **14.**
cliēns, -entis, *m., f.* [**clueō,** hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, **4.**
clientēla, -ae, *f.* [**cliēns,** a client], *the relation of client and patron;* patronage, vassalage; clients.
clīvus, -ī, *m.*, slope, ascent.
Clōdius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs klō′dĭ-ŭs pŭl′kẽr), *murdered by Milo in* 52 B. C.
Cn., *abbr.* for **Gnaeus** (nē′ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* IV, **1.**
co-, *see* **con-.**
coacervō, 1, *tr.* [**acervō,** heap up; **acervus,** heap], heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. II, **27.**
coāctus, *see* **cōgō.**
coāctus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōgō,** compel], compulsion.
coagmentō, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.
coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.
Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kŏk″ō-sā′tēz). III, **27.**
coēgī, *see* **cōgō.**
coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** buy], buy, buy up. I, **3.**
coëō, -īre, -iī, ——, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], assemble.
coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and *a*), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coeptus,** *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. **I, 15.**
coërceō, 2, *tr.* [**arceō,** shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. **I, 17.**
cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co+agitō,** consider], consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. **I, 33;** III, **24.**
cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**co+(g)nātus,** born], blood relationship; family, clan.
cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**co+(g)nōscō,** learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf., I have learned,* I know (App. 193, I, *a*). **I, 19.**
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**co+agō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, **4.**
cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. I, **40;** II, **5.**
cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cohortor,** encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, **25.**
cohortor, 1, *tr.* [**co+hortor,** encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. **I, 25.**
collātus, *see* **cōnferō.**
collaudō, 1, *tr.* [**con+laudō,** praise], praise highly.
colligō, 1, *tr.* [**con+ligō,** bind], bind *or* fasten together. **I, 25.**
colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**con+legō,** gather], gather together, collect; acquire; **sē colligere,** *collect one's self,* rally. III, **6.**
collis, -is, *m.*, hill. I, **22.**
collocō, 1, *tr.* [**con+locō,** place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre,** to give in marriage. I, **18.**
colloquium, -quī, *n.* [**colloquor,** talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, **34.**
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [**con+loquor,** speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, **19.**
colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, **1.**
colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement.
color, -ōris, *m.*, color.
com-, *see* **con-.**
combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**com(b)+ūrō,** burn], burn up. **I, 5.**
comes, -itis, *m., f.*, companion.
comitium, -tī, *n.* [**com+eō,** go], place of assembly *or* meeting; *pl.*, an election.
comitor, 1, *tr.* [**comes,** companion], accompany, follow.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [**commeō,** go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.
commemorō, 1, *tr.* [**memorō,** call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.
commendō, 1, *tr.* [**mandō,** entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.
commeō, 1, *intr.* [**meō,** go], go back and forth; *with* **ad,** resort to, visit. I, 1.
commīlitō, -ōnis, *m.* [**mīles,** soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.
comminus, *adv.* [**manus,** hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.
commissūra, -ae, *f.* [**committō,** join], uniting, joint, juncture.
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle. I, 13.
Commius, -mī, *m.,* Commius (kŏm′ĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Atrebates.* IV, 21.
commodē, *adv.* [**commodus,** convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; **satis commodē,** to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.
commodum, -ī, *n.* [**commodus,** convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.
commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**modus,** measure], *in full measure;* convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.
commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**moneō,** remind+**faciō,** make], remind forcibly. I, 19.
commoror, 1, *intr.* [**moror,** tarry], wait, stop.
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.
commūnicō, 1, *tr.* [**commūnis,** common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.
commūniō, 4, *tr.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.
commūnis, -e, *adj.,* common, general; **rēs commūnis,** the common interest. I,30; II, 4.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**commūtō,** change], a changing, change. I, 14.
commūtō, 1, *tr.* [**mūtō,** change], change *or* alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.
comparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō,** prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. I, 3.
comparō, 1, *tr.* [**pār,** equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.
compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.
compendium, -dī, *n.,* gain, profit.
comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [**pariō,** procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.
complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [**plectō,** fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.
compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [*obsolete,* **pleō,** fill], fill up *or* completely; complete; cover. I, 24.
complexus, *see* **complector.**
complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [**plūs,** more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.
comportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.
comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō,** (=**prēndō**), seize], grasp *or* lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). III, 14.
comprobō, 1, *tr.* [**probō,** approve], approve, sanction, justify.
compulsus, *see* **compellō.**
con-, com-, co- [*the forms taken by* **cum** *in composition*], together; completely; *or mere emphasis.*
cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnor,** try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnor,** try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.
cōnātus, *see* **cōnor.**
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.
concessus, -ūs, *m.* [**concēdō,** permit], concession, permission.
concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall down, fall. III, **14.**

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [**concilium,** assembly], bring together; gain *or* win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, **3.**

concilium, -lī, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. I, **18.**

concīsus, *see* **concīdō.**

concitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō,** put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.

conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [**clāmō,** cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. I, **47;** III, **18.**

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** close], shut up; **conclūsum mare,** an inland sea. III, **9.**

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, *m.*, Conconnetodumnus (kŏn-kŏn″ē-tō-dŭm′nŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, *intr.*, clash.

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, **48;** II, **20.**

concursō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **concurrō,** run], run about.

concursus, -ūs, *m.* [**concurrō,** run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, **8.**

concursus, *see* **concurrō.**

condemnō, 1, *tr.* [**damnō,** condemn], convict.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, **28.**

condōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnō,** give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, **20.**

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kŏn-drụ′sī). II, **4.**

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, **4.**

cōnfectus, *see* **cōnficiō.**

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bring. App. 81], bring *or* get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake one's self, take refuge. I, **16.**

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **cōnferciō,** crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, **24.**

cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. IV, **32.**

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (*leather*). I, **3.**

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [**fīdō,** trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfīsus,** *pf. part. with present meaning,* relying on. I, **23.**

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], fasten. III, **13.**

cōnfīnis, -e, *adj.* [**fīnis,** boundary], adjoining, contiguous.

cōnfīnium, -nī, *n.* [**fīnis,** boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnfirmō,** assert], assurance. III, **18.**

cōnfirmō, 1, *tr.* [**firmō,** strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, **3.**

cōnfīsus, *see* **cōnfīdō.**

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**fateor,** confess], acknowledge, confess.

cōnfīxus, *see* **cōnfīgō.**

cōnflagrō, 1, *intr.* [**flagrō,** burn], burn, be on fire.

cōnflīctō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **cōnflīgō**], strike together; *pass.*, be distressed.

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *intr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, **5.**

cōnfluēns, -entis, *f.* [**cōnfluō,** flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, **15.**

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow together.

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, take refuge.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**fundō,** pour], pour together, bring together.

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). I, **36;** II, **23.**

congressus, -ūs, *m.* [**congredior,** meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, **13.**

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast;

put; put together *logically*, conjecture; **in fugam conicere,** put to flight. I, **26.**

coniectūra, -ae, *f.* [**coniciō,** conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, *see* **coniciō.**

coniūnctim, *adv.* [**coniungō,** join], jointly.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], join with *or* together, connect, unite, bind. I, **37;** II, **3.**

coniūnx, -iugis, *f.* [**coniungō,** join], wife.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**coniūrō,** swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, **2.**

coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [**iūrō,** swear], swear *or* take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, **1.**

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, **3.**

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, *intr.* [**quiēscō,** to rest, **quiēs,** rest], lie down to rest.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, **27.**

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *as noun*, kinsman, relative. I, **11.**

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, **23.**

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.* [**cōnscius,** conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**scīscō,** resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. I, **4.**

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō,** know], conscious; aware. I, **14.**

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], *write together in a list;* levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, **10.**

cōnsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacrō,** dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, **15.**

cōnsecūtus, *see* **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], agreement.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, **30;** II, **28.**

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō,** feel], *think together;* agree, combine. II, **3.**

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, **13.**

cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō,** save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, **12.**

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs kŏn-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's officers.* I, **21.**

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sīdō,** sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, **21.**

cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; **commūnī cōnsiliō,** by, *or* in accordance with, general action; **pūblicō cōnsiliō,** by action of the state; **cōnsilium capere** *or* **inīre,** form *or* adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habēre,** think, consider. I, **5.**

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis,** like], very like, similar. II, **11.**

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], take a stand *or* position, keep one's position, stand, form (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend *or* rest on. I, **13.**

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, *m.*, cousin.

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.* [**sōlor,** comfort], cheer, comfort. I, **20.**

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnspiciō,** look at], sight, view; presence. I, **11.**

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, **47;** II, **21.**

cōnspicor, 1, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.

cōnspīrō, 1, *intr.* [**spīrō,** breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

cōnstanter, *adv.* [**cōnstō,** stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [**cōnstō,** stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [**sternō,** strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

cōnsternō, 1, *tr.* [**cōnsternō, -ere,** strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

cōnstīpō, 1, *tr.*, press *or* crowd closely.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). I, 3.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal,* it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* **cōnsternō.**

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [**suēscō,** become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, *a*), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**cōnsuēscō,** become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

cōnsuētus, *see* **cōnsuēscō.**

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* I, 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsul,** consul], consulship. I, 35.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.; tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

cōnsultō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **cōnsulō,** take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.* [**cōnsulō,** take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnsulō,** take counsel], *result of deliberation;* decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.* [**sūmō,** take], *take together or all at once;* devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.* [**surgō,** rise], arise together *or* in a body; arise.

contabulō, 1, *tr.* [**tabula,** board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contingō,** touch], contact.

contāminō, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [**tegō,** cover], cover up.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *tr.* [**temnō,** scorn], despise, disdain.

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contemnō,** despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [**contemnō,** despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [**tendō,** stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contendō,** strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, 44.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **contineō,** restrain], satisfied, contented.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō,** weave], weave *or* bind together, connect. IV, 17.

contigī, *see* **contingō.**

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **contineō,** hold together], *holding together;* continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun,* mainland, continent. III, 28.

continenter, *adv.* [**continēns,** continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.

continentia, -ae, *f.* [**contineō,** hold], self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; **sē continēre,** *with abl.*, remain in, on *or* within. I, **1.**

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [**tangō,** touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, **38.**

continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**continuus,** continuous], continuance, succession. III, **29.**

continuō, *adv.* [**continuus,** continuous], immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**contineō,** hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, **48;** IV, **34.**

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*for* **conventiō; conveniō,** come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (*before such a meeting*).

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, against him *or* them; on the other hand; **contrā atque,** contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing, I, **18.**

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, **34;** IV, **22.**

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**contrā,** against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō,** on the contrary. II, **18.**

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [**contrā,** against +**versus,** turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contulī, *see* **cōnferō.**

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, **14.**

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, ——, *intr.* [**valēscō,** *incept. of* **valeō,** be well], gain health *or* strength, recover.

convallis, -is, *f.* [**vallis,** valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, **20.**

convehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], carry *or* bring together, collect.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [**veniō,** come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, **6.**

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [**conveniō,** come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, **18.**

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [**vertō,** turn], turn completely, turn *or* wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere,** face about. I, **23.**

Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kŏn-vĭk″tō-lĭ-tā′vĭs), *a Haeduan chief.*

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [**vincō,** conquer], *conquer completely;* prove. I, **40.**

convocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call together, summon, assemble. I, **16.**

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.* [**co**+**orior,** rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, **7.**

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, **2.**

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cōpia,** plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, **23.**

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, **13.**

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart; **cordī esse,** be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, **32.**

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō″rĭ-ō-sŏl′ĭ-tēz). II, **34.**

corium, -rī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. I, **52;** II, **23.**

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēndere,** sell at auction. III, **16.**

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. I, **25.**

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**con**+**rumpō,** break], destroy, ruin.

cortex, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. II, **33.**

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cotīdiē,**

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.
cotīdiē, *adv.* [**quot**, how many+**diēs**, day], daily, every day. I, 16.
Cotta, *see* **Aurunculēius.**
Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus (kŏt″ū-ā′tŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*
Cotus, -ī, *m.*, Cotus (kō′tŭs), *a Haeduan noble.*
crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**crassus**, thick], thickness. III, 13.
Crassus, -ī, *m.* (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mär′kŭs lĭ-sĭn′ĭ-ŭs krăs′ŭs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey,* I, 21; (2) *his son,* Marcus Licinius Crassus, *one of Caesar's quaestors;* (3) *a second son,* Publius Licinius Crassus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* I, 52; II, 34.
crātēs, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*) IV, 17.
crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp.* **crēbrior;** *sup.*, **crēberrimus** (App. 40). II, 1.
crēbrō, *adv.* [**crēber**, repeated], repeatedly, often.
crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.
cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, 4.
creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), swell. I, 20.
Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē′tēz), *better,* Cretans, *natives of the island of Crete.* II, 7.
Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, Critognatus (krĭt″ŏg-nā′tŭs), *a chief of the Arverni.*
cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō**, torture; **crux**, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.
crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.
crūdēliter, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.
crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.
cubīle, -is, *n.* [**cubō**, lie down], bed, resting-place.
culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.
cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.
cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum,** not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum prīmum,** as soon as. *See* App. 238-242. I, 1.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1.
cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūnctor**, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.
cūnctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.
cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **coniūnctus**, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.
cuneātim, *adv.* [**cuneus**, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.
cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge, wedge-shaped mass.
cunīculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.
cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus**, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.
cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus**, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.
cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *tr. and intr.*, long *or* be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.
cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.
cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, 33.
cūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūra**, care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, *b*), have, order. I, 13.
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, 33.
cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.
custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**, guard], custody, guard (*state of being guarded*); *pl.*, guards, keepers. II, 29.
custōdiō, 4, *tr.* [**custōs**, guard], guard.
custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.

D.

D., *abbr. for praenomen* **Decimus** (dĕs′-ĭ-mŭs). **III, 11.**

D, *sign for* **quīngentī**, five hundred. III, 22.

d.=diem. I, 6.

Dācī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā′sī) *or* Dacians, *the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.*

damnō, 1, *tr.* [**damnum,** damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, **4.**

damnum, -ī, *n.*, loss.

Dānuvius, -vī, *m.* (Bhi), the Danuvius (da-nū′vĭ-ŭs), *better*, the Danube.

dē, *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from;* (1) *of place*, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) *of time*, just after, about; (3) *variously translated in other relations*, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, **1.**

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [**dē+habeō,** have], *have, or keep from some one;* owe; *with inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, **11.**

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go from *or* away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. **I, 31.**

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. **I, 4.**

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [**cernō,** separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, **35.**

dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. **I, 44; II, 10.**

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēcēdō,** depart], departure; ebb, fall (*of the tide*). **III, 13.**

Decetia, -ae, *f.*, (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē′-shya), *a town of the Haedui, now* Decize.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall from *or* off. **I, 48.**

decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], tenth. **I, 40; II, 21.**

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], entrap; deceive. **I, 14.**

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [**clārus,** clear], make plain, declare. **I, 50.**

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**clīvus,** a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. **II, 18.**

dēclīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dēclīvis,** sloping downward], descent.

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.* [**dēcernō,** decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcrētus, *see* **dēcernō.**

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decimus,** tenth], of *or* belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate (*of the camp*). **II, 24.**

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**decem,** ten], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten.* **I, 23.**

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run down hurry down. **II, 19.**

dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [**decus,** honor], dishonor, disgrace. **IV, 25.**

dedī, *see* **dō.**

dēdidī, *see* **dēdō.**

dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. **I, 27.**

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrender, capitulation. **I, 27.**

dēditus, *see* **dēdō.**

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give up *or* over, yield, surrender; devote; **sē dēdere,** submit, surrender. **II, 15.**

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead down *or* away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. **I, 44; II, 2.**

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfatīgō,** weary], fatigue, weariness. **III, 19.**

dēfatīgō, 1, *tr.* [**fatīgō,** weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. **I, 40.**

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēficiō,** fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. **III, 10.**

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**fendō,** strike], keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect. **I, 11.**

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfendō,** defend], a defending, defence. **II, 7.**

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēfendō,** defend], defender, protector; (*means of*) defense. **II, 6.**

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring from *or* down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-

fore, refer; bestow, confer; **dēlātus** (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **dēfetīscor,** grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, 10.

dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], fix *or* fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17.

dēfīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīniō,** limit], mark off; define, determine.

dēfīxus, *see* **dēfīgō.**

dēfore, *fut. inf. of* **dēsum.**

dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [**fōrma,** form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *tr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee from, shun.

dēfuī, *see* **dēsum.**

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl *or* cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8.

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēiciō,** cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II, 8.

deinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29.

deinde, *adv.* [**dē+inde,** thence], thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

dēlātus, *see* **dēferō.**

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

dēlēctus, *see* **dēligō.**

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

dēlīberō, 1, *tr.* [**lībra,** balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

dēlibrō, 1, *tr.* [**liber,** bark], peel.

dēlictum, -ī, *n.*, fault, offence.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō,** bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53; IV, 29.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, ——, *intr.* [**latēscō,** *incept. of* **lateō,** lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV, 32.

dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum *tr.* [**metō,** reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** move, migrate], move from *or* away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [**minuō,** lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send, thrust *or* let down; sink; bow; **sē dēmittere,** come *or* get down, descend; **sē animō dēmittere,** lose courage; **dēmissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, 32.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *tr.* [**dē+emō,** take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [**mōnstrō,** show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

dēmoror, 1, *tr.* [**moror,** delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [**negō,** deny], refuse. I, 42.

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. I, 22.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set *or* packed, thick, dense. II, 22.

dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give *or* send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive from *or* away, ward off. III, 25.

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [**perdō,** destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**pereō,** perish; **eō,** App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost *or* undone.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], lay down *or* aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [**populor,** lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

dēportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry off *or* away. III, 12.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, ——, *tr.* [**poscō**, demand], demand; call for.
dēpositus, *see* **dēpōnō.**
dēprecātor, *m.* [**dēprecor,** plead for], mediator, intercessor. **I, 9.**
dēprecor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**precor,** pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. **II, 31.**
dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (=**prēndō**), seize], seize, capture, catch.
dēpugnō, 1, *intr.* [**pugnō,** fight], fight decisively; contend.
dēpulsus, *see* **dēpellō.**
dērēctē, *adv.* [**dērēctus,** straight], straight. IV, **17.**
dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dērigō,** put in line], straight. IV, **17.**
dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō**, direct], *put in line;* arrange, draw up, put in order.
dērīvō, 1, *tr.* [**rīvus**, stream], draw off.
dērogō, 1, *tr.* [**rogō,** ask], take away, withdraw.
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *intr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb *or* go down, descend; have recourse (*to*), resort.
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectum, *tr.* [**secō**, cut], cut away *or* off.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [**serō,** entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. **I, 45;** II, **25.**
dēsertor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēserō,** desert], deserter.
dēsīderō, 1, *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, **2.**
dēsidia, -ae, *f.*, inactivity, idleness.
dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō**, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, **18.**
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, *intr.* [**saliō,** leap], leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. IV, **2.**
dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, **8.**
dēspectus, *see* **dēspiciō.**
dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēspiciō,** look down upon], *a looking down,* view. III, **14.**
dēspērātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēspērō,** despair], despair, hopelessness.
dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [**spērō,** hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus,** *as part., from transitive meaning*, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. I, **18.**
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, **13.**
dēspoliō, 1, *tr.* [**spoliō,** strip], deprive. II, **31.**
dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, **14.**
dēstitī, *see* **dēsistō.**
dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. I, **16.**
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō,** bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). I, **25.**
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, ——, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, **40;** II, **21.**
dēsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], from above. I, **52.**
dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. I, **36.**
dēterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten away *or* off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, **17.**
dētestor, 1, *tr.*, execrate, curse.
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. III, **12.**
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw off *or* away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, **42;** II, **21.**
dētrectō, 1, *tr.*, refuse, avoid.
dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, [**dētrīmentum,** harm], hurtful, harmful.
dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**dē**+**terō**, rub *or* wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, **44.**
dētulī, *see* **dēferō.**
dēturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], drive off, dislodge.
deūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**ūrō,** burn], burn up, destroy.

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, **diī**; *dat. pl.*, **dīs**), *m.*, god, deity. I, 12.
deustus, *see* **deūrō.**
dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō**, carry], carry away, bring.
dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.
dēvexus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēvehō**, carry away *or* down], sloping; *neut. pl. as noun*, slopes, hill-sides.
dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [**vincō**, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.
dēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call off *or* away; bring.
dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [**voveō**, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus,** *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. III, 22.
dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, 52; II, 23.
dextra, -ae, *f.* [**dexter**, right; *sc.* **manus**], the right hand. I, 20.
dī-, *see* **dis-.**
Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī″a̤-blĭn′tēz). III, 9.
diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.
dicō, 1, *tr.* [**dīcō**, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dīcere**, plead a case; **iūs dīcere**, administer justice. I, 1.
dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dīcō**, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.
dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **dīcō**, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. I, 39.
dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead *or* draw apart; separate, divide. III, 23.
diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*, day; time; **in diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex diē**, day after day. I, 4.
dif-, *see* **dis.**
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.* [**ferō**, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.
difficilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis**, easy]. not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.
difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [**difficilis**, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarassment. II, 20.
difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.*, **difficilius.**
diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [**fīdō**, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.
diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.
diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**fundō**, pour], pour *or* spread out.
digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, a finger's breadth, *the 16th part of a Roman foot;* **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, 13.
dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dignus**, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.
dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.
diī, *see* **deus.**
dīiūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdicō**, judge], decide.
dīlēctus, *see* **dīligō.**
dīlēctus, -ūs, *m.* [**dīligō**, choose], choice; levy.
dīligenter, *adv.* [**dīligēns**, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains *or* care. II, 5.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**dīligēns**, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.
dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō**, choose], single *or* choose out, esteem highly, love.
dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [**mētior**, measure], measure out *or* off. II, 19.
dīmicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dīmicō**, fight], fight, contest.
dīmicō, 1, *intr.* [**micō**, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.
dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**medius**, middle], *divided in the middle*, half; *neut. as noun*, a half.
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send in different directions, send away *or* off, dismiss;

break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.

dir-, *see* **dis-**.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō,** seize], rend *or* tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Dis (dĭs), Pluto (plū′tō), *the god of the lower world.*

dīs, *see* **deus.**

dis- (**dī-, dif-, dir-**), *insep. prefix,* apart, asunder, in different directions; *negative,* =*Eng.* un-, not.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with* **ab** *or* **ex**). I, 14.

disceptātor, -ōris, *m.*, judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [**cernō,** separate], separate, keep apart.

discessus, -ūs, *m.* [**discēdō,** depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [**discō,** learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

discō, discere, didicī, ——, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. I, 13.

discrīmen, -minis, *n.*, danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.*, clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.

dispār, -paris, *adj.* [**pār,** equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō,** prepare], separate.

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**spargō,** scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place apart *or* about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

disputātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**disputō,** discuss], argument, discussion.

disputō, 1, *intr.* [**putō,** reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dissentiō,** think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō,** feel], differ, disagree.

disserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, *tr.* [**serō,** sow], sow *or* set at intervals.

dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [**simulō,** make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

dissipō, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], advise against.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

distō, -stāre, ——, ——, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand apart; be apart, removed *or* separated. IV, 17.

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** drag], pull asunder, remove.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribuō,** assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

distulī, *see* **differō.**

dītissimus, *sup. of* **dīves.**

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; **quam diū,** as long as; *comp.*, **diūtius,** longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, **diūtissimē,** for the longest time. I, 14.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diēs,** day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.

diūtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], of long duration, long.

diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**diūturnus,** long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], long. I, 14.

dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **dīvertō,** turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

dīves, dīvitis, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **dītissimus.** I, 2.

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus (dĭv″ĭ-shĭ-ā′kŭs), (1); *a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans.* I, 3. (2) *a chief of the Suessiones.* II, 4.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (dĭv′ĭ-kō), *an Helvetian chieftain.* I, 13.
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *tr.*, divide, separate; **dīvīsus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. I, 1.
dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dīvus,** divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.
dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **dare manūs,** yield; **dare negōtium,** *with dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of* **dō** *are derived from an obsolete verb*, **dō,** put.) I, 3.
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.
documentum, -ī, *n.* [**doceō,** teach], example; warning.
doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. I, 14.
dolor, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō,** grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.
dolus, -ī, *m.*, craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.
domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus,** house], belonging to the home, domestic; in *or* of one's own land. II, 10.
domicilium, -lī, *n.* [**domus,** house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.
dominor, 1, *intr.* [**dominus,** master], be master, rule. II, 31.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.
Domitius, -tī, *m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū′shyŭs dō-mĭsh′yŭs ā-hĕn″ō-bär′bŭs), *consul* 54 B.C.
Domnotaurus, *see* **Valerius.**
domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, 5.
dōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnum,** gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.
dōnum, -ī, *n.* [**dō,** give], present, gift.
dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.
dōs, dōtis, *f.* [**dō,** give], a marriage portion, dowry.
Druidēs, -um, *m.*, *the* Druids, *an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.*
Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cfg), the (*river*) Dubis (dū′bĭs), *now* the Doubs. I, 38.
dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dubitō,** doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.
dubitō, 1, *intr.* [**dubius,** doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.
dubius, -a, -um, *adj.* uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.
ducentī, -ae, -a, (CC), *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two+**centum,** hundred], two hundred. I, 2.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.
ductus, -ūs, *m.* [**dūcō,** lead], leading, command.
dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.
Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix (dŭm′-nō-rĭks), *a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* I, 3.
duo, duae, duo, (App. 49), *card. num. adj.*, two. I, 6.
duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two+**decem,** ten], twelve. I, 5.
duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelfth. II, 23.
duodēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.
duodēvīgintī, *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two +**dē,** from+**vīgintī,** twenty], eighteen. I, 23.
duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [**duo,** two+**plicō,** fold], twofold, double. II, 29.
duplicō, 1, *tr.* [**duplex,** double], double, increase. IV, 36.
dūritia, -ae, *f.* [**dūrus,** hard], hardness, hardship.
dūrō, 1, *tr.* [**dūrus,** hard], make hardy, harden.
Dūrocortorum, -ī, *n.* (Bf), Durocortorum (dū″rō-côr′tō-rŭm), *the capital of the Remi, now* Rheims.
dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.
Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwĭn′tus la-bē′rĭ-ŭs dū′rŭs), *a tribune.*
dux, ducis, *m.* [**dūcō,** lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.

E

ē (*only before consonants*) **ex** (*before vowels and some consonants*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of*; (1) *of place*, out of, from, away from; *denoting position, in some phrases*, on; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side; (2) *of time*, from, after, since; **ex itinere,** immediately after the march; (3) *variously translated in other relations*, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ē regiōne,** opposite. I, **2.**

eā, *adv.* [=**eā viā**], by that way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ĕb″ū-rō′nēz). II, **4.**

Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lĕr′sī ĕb″ū-rō-vī′sēz). III, **17.**

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, ——, *tr.* [**discō,** learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **ēdō,** give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, **8.**

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give out; inflict. I, **31.**

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum, *tr.* [**doceō,** teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, **18.**

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth; draw (*a sword*). I, **10.**

effēminō, 1, *tr.* [**ex**+**fēmina,** woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, **1.**

efferciō, -fercīre, ——, -fertum, *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [**ex**+**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away; raise; spread *or* publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, **5.**

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ex**+**faciō,** make], make *or* do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, **38;** II, **5.**

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**ex**+**fodiō,** dig], dig out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [**ex**+**fugiō,** flee], flee from *or* away, escape. IV, **35.**

egēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **egeō,** want], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, eguī, ——, *intr*., need, want, lack, be without *or* destitute.

egestās, -tātis, *f* [**egeō,** want], poverty.

ēgī, *pf. of* **agō.**

ego, meī (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.*, **nōs,** we, us, etc. I, **40;** II, **9.**

egomet, *emphatic for* **ego,** I myself, I for my part.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. I, **27.**

ēgregiē, *adv.* [**ēgregius,** excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, **29.**

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ē**+**grex,** herd], *out of the common herd;* excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, **19.**

ēgressus, *see* **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēgredior,** step out], a landing, landing place.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], cast *or* drive out, expel; cast up; **sē ēicere,** rush out, sally. IV, **7.**

eius modī, of such a sort *or* kind, such. III, **3.**

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [**lābor,** slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, *see* **efferō.**

Elaver, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the *river* Elaver (ĕl′a-vĕr), *now* the Allier.

ēlēctus, *see* **ēligō.**

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē-lū′tē-tī).

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, draw *or* entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], choose *or* pick out, select; **ēlēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). II, **4.**

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ĕl″ū-sā′tēz). III, **27.**

ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** migrate], depart, migrate. I, **31.**

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, project.

ēminus, *adv.* [**manus**, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor**, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; **sed enim**, but in fact, however. I, 14.

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō**, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

eō, *adv.* [*old dative of* **is**], thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

eō, *abl. of* **is**.

eōdem, *adv.* [*old dative of* **idem**], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 4.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ephippium**, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Eporedorix (ĕp″-ō-rĕd′ō-rĭks), *the name of two Haeduan leaders.*

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, *m.* [**equus**, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. *Then* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). *Also*, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). I, 15.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**eques**, horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō**, ride; **equus**, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. I, 22.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ĕr″a-tŏs′thē-nēz), *a Greek geographer, born 276* B.C.

ērēctus, *see* **ērigō**.

ēreptus, *see* **ēripiō**.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō**, direct], lift *or* raise; **ērēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō**, seize], wrest *or* take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

errō, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.* [**rumpō**, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ērumpō**, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

essedārius, -rī, *m.* [**essedum**, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

essedum, -ī, *n.*, *a two-wheeled war* chariot *of the Britons.* IV, 32.

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū′vĭ-ī). II, 34.

et, *conj.*, and; also, too, even; **et . . . et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

etiam, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etsī, *conj.* [**et**+**sī**, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [**vādō**, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō**, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēveniō**, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call forth *or* out, summon; **ēvocātus**, *pf. part. as noun*, reënlisted veteran. III, 20.

ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō**, fly], fly *or* rush forth. III, 28.

ex, *see* **ē**.

exāctus, *see* **exigō**.

exagitō, 1, *tr.* [**agitō**, *freq. of* **agō**, drive], drive out *or* away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, 1, weigh.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [**anima**, breath], deprive

of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *intr.* [ārdēscō, *incept. of* ārdeō, blaze], take fire; be inflamed *or* enraged.

exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [audiō, hear], hear (*from a distance*). II, 11.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.

excellō, -cellere, ——, ——, *intr.*, excel, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [excellō, surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* excipiō, catch], take hold of, catch.

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], hew away *or* down.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capiō, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, 52; III, 5.

excitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, 10.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excōgitō, 1, *tr.* [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

excruciō, 1, *tr.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubitor, -ōris, *m.* [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

exculcō, 1, *tr.*, trample, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excurrō, run forth], a running out *or* forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent. I, 8.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go from *or* out, depart from, leave. I, 2.

exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq. of* exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* exercitō, train *or* practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], *a trained or disciplined body of men*, an army. I, 3.

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustum, *tr.* [hauriō, draw], draw out, empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.

exiguē, *adv.* [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitās, -tātis, *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

eximius, -a, -um, *adj.* [eximō, take out], *taken from the mass; hence* choice, eminent. II, 8.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exīstimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

exīstimō, 1, *tr.* [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

expediō, 4, *tr.* [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

expedītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.

expedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of* expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive out *or* forth, expel. II, 4.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

expiō, 1, *tr.*, atone for, expiate; avenge.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill out *or* up; finish, complete.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō,** search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, **12.**
explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of* **explōrō,** search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, **18.**
explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search *or* find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, **4.**
expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, **23.**
exportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry out *or* away. IV, **18.**
exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, ——, *tr.* [**poscō,** demand], entreat, demand.
exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**premō,** press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, **32.**
expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**expugnō,** take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.
expugnō, 1, *tr.* [**pugnō,** fight], take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, **11.**
exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. I, **41;** III, **3.**
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow out, enforce. I, **4.**
exserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr.*, thrust *or* put out; uncover.
exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand *or* come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, **15.**
exspectō, 1, *tr.* [**spectō,** look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, **11.**
exspoliō, 1, *tr.* [**spoliō,** strip], rob.
exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.
exstō, -stāre, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand out, extend above.
exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [**struō,** build], build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. II, **30.**
exsul, -sulis, *m. and f.*, an exile.
exterior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outer, exterior.
exterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten outright, strike with terror scare.
extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, ——, *tr.* [**timēscō,** *incept. of* **timeō,** fear], dread. III, **13.**
extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, *tr.* [**torqueō,** twist], wrest *or* force from, extort.
extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, **10.**
extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw out; waste.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī** (*as noun*), the rear; **ad extrēmum,** at last, at the end; as a last resort. I, **1.**
extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [**trūdō,** thrust], thrust *or* shut out. III, **12.**
extulī, *see* **efferō.**
exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out *or* off, put *or* strip off, divest, despoil. III, **6.**
exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**ūrō,** burn], burn up. I, **5.**

F.

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.
Fabius, -bī, *m.* (1), Gaius Fabius (gā'yŭs fā'bĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyŭs fā'bĭ-ŭs), *a centurion of the 8th legion.* (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwĭn'tŭs fā'bĭ-ŭs măk'sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls* 121 B.C. I, **45.**
facile, *adv.* [**facilis,** easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius;** *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). I, **2.**
facilis, -e, *adj.* [**faciō,** do], easy. I, **6.**
facinus -noris, *n.* [**faciō,** do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, **40;** III, **9.**
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr. and intr.; tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with* **ut,** bring about, cause: *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally,* result, happen, come to pass. I, **2.**

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**faciō,** make], party, faction. I, **31.**

factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **faciō**, *half noun, half participle*], act, exploit, deed. III, **14.**

factus, *see* **faciō.**

facultās, -tātis, *f.* [*old adj.*, **facul=facilis,** easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, **7.**

fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech tree *or* timber.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, **10.**

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **fallō,** deceive], false.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (*for pulling down walls*). III, **14.**

fāma, -ae, *f.* [**fārī,** to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. I, **28.**

familia, -ae, *f.*, household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. I, **4.**

familiāris, -e, *adj.* [**familia,** household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; **rēs,** personal property, estate. I, **18.**

familiāritās, -tātis, *f.* [**familiāris,** intimate], intimacy.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, **50.**

fastīgātē, *adv.* [**fastīgātus,** sloping], sloping. IV, **17.**

fastīgātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. II, **8.**

fastīgium, -gī, *n.*, *the top of a gable;* elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [**fārī,** to speak], fate, lot. I, **39.**

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. I, **18.**

fax, facis, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, **40.**

fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happily, fortunately. IV, **25.**

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, female, woman.

femur, -inis, *n.*, the thigh.

fera, -ae, *f.* [*fem. of* **ferus,** wild], wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], productive, fertile. II, **4.**

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, **1.**

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (App. 81), *tr. and intr.; tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** *or* **molestē ferre,** be annoyed *or* angry at; *pass.* (*sometimes*) rush: *intr. almost= verb* to be. I, **13.**

ferrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ferrum,** iron], an iron tool *or* implement.

ferrāria, -ae, *f.* [**ferrum, iron**], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum,** iron], of iron, iron. III, **13.**

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. I, **25.**

fertilis, -e, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fertilis,** productive], productiveness. II, **4.**

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. I, **31;** II, **4.**

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**ferveō,** be red hot+**faciō,** make], heat, melt.

fervēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **ferveō,** be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.

fībula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; brace, fastening. IV, **17.**

fictus, *see* **fingō.**

fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs,** faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, **21.**

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere,** convince *or* give a pledge; **fidem sequī,** surrender. I, **3.**

fīdūcia, -ae, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, *f.* [**fingō, form**], **form, shape,** figure. IV, **25.**

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. I, **3.**

fīlius, -lī, *m.*, son. I, **3.**

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. I, **39;** IV, **5.**

fīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīnis,** limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, **16.**

fīnis, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border

end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fīnis,** limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. I, 2.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *see* **faciō.**
firmiter, *adv.* [**firmus,** strong], firmly. IV, 26.
firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**firmus,** strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.
firmō, 1, *tr.* [**firmus,** strong], strengthen, fortify.
firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.
fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, 17.
Flaccus, *see* **Valerius.**
flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, 16.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.
flētus, -ūs, *m.* [**fleō,** weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.
flō, 1, *intr.*, blow.
flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.
flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.
flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**fluō,** flow], flood, billow, wave. III, 13.
flūmen, -inis, *n.* [**fluō,** flow], river, stream. I, 1.
fluō, fluere, flūxī, ——, *intr.*, flow, run. I, 6.
fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, dig.
foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.
forem = essem; see **sum.**
fore = futūrus esse; see **sum.**
forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, without.
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14.
fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, 21.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.
fortiter, *adv.* [**fortis,** brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.
fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**fortis,** brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.
fortuitō, *adv.* [**fors,** chance], by chance.
fortūna, -ae, *f.* [**fors,** chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.
fortūnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fortūna,** fortune], prosperous, fortunate.
forum, -ī, *n.*, public square, market place.
fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* **fodiō,** dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.
fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3.
frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter,** brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.
fraus, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.
fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.
frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.
frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, 21.
frīgidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, 1.
frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frīgora,** cold seasons. I, 16.
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. II, 8.
frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūctus,** fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.
frūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūmentum,** grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; *of places*, fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria,** supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.
frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**frūmentor,** get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.
frūmentor, 1, *intr.* [**frūmentum,** grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. I, 3.
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. III, 22.
frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.
frūx, -gis, *f.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, 28.

Fūfius, *see* **Cita.**
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam conicere** *or* **dare**, put to flight. I, 11.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *tr. and intr.* [fuga, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.
fugitīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō, flee], fleeing; *as noun*, runaway slave. I, 23.
fugō, 1, *tr.* [fuga, flight], put to flight, rout.
fūmō, 1, *intr.* [fūmus, smoke], smoke.
fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. II, 7.
funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25.
funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. II, 7.
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.
fūnebris, -e, *adj.* [fūnus, funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl. as noun*, funeral rites.
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.
fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13.
fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.
furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.
fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, theft.
fūsilis, -e, *adj.* [fundō, pour], liquid, molten.
futūrus, *see* **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (găb′a-lī).
Gabīnius, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (aw′-lŭs ga-bĭn′ĭ-ŭs), *consul with Lucius Piso*, 58 B.C. I, 6.
gaesum, -ī, *n.*, *a heavy iron* javelin (*of the Gauls*). III, 4.
Galba, -ae, *m.*, (1) Galba (găl′ba), *a king of the Suessiones.* II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sẽr′vĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh′yŭs găl′ba), *one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins.* III, 1.
galea, -ae, *f.*, *a leather* helmet. II, 21.
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (găl′ĭ-a), *better*, Gaul, *including either* (1) *Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or* (2) *only Celtica. See map.* I, 1.
Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.
gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen.
Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, *inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc.* I, 1.
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär′kŭs trē′bĭ-ŭs găl′ŭs), *an officer in Caesar's army.* III, 7.
Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rŭm′na), *or* Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* I, 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (ga-rŭm′nī). III, 27.
Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā′-tēz). III, 27.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, 13.
Geidumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geidumni (jē′′ĭ-dŭm′nī or jē-dŭm′nī).
Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn′a-va), *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva. I, 6.
gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.
generātim, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.
gēns, gentis, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.
genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.
Gergovia, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (jẽr-gō′vĭ-a), *the chief town of the Arverni.*
Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jẽr-mā′nī), *better* Germans. I, 1.
Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jẽr-mā′-nĭ-a), *better*, Germany, *the country east of the Rhine.* IV, 4.
Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.
gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. I, 25.
glāns, glandis, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug *of lead.*
glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [**glōria,** glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitio (gŏb″a-nĭsh′yō), *an Arvernian chief.*

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gôr-gŏb′ĭ-na), *a city of the Boii after they had settled in the territory of the Haedui.*

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun,* the Greeks. I, 29.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yŏs′ē-lī). I, 10.

grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, 43.

grātia, -ae, *f.* [**grātus,** pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; **grātiās agere,** thank; **grātiam habēre,** to feel grateful; **grātiam referre,** to return a favor; **hanc grātiam referre,** to return a favor in this way; **grātiam inīre,** to gain favor; **grātiā** *following a gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**grātulor,** express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53.

grātulor, 1, *intr.* [**grātus,** pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 30.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). I, 20.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [**gravis,** heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 3.

graviter, *adv.* [**gravis,** heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; **graviter ferre,** take to heart, be annoyed *or* vexed (*at*); **graviter premere,** press hard. I, 14.

gravor, 1, *intr.* [**gravis, heavy**], be unwilling. I, 35.

Grudiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (grụ′dĭ-ī).

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, pilot. III, 9.

gustō, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H.

habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (*with* **ōrātiōnem**); **in animō habēre,** intend; **ratiōnem habēre,** have regard for; take care *or* see that (*followed by an* **ut** *clause*); **cōnsilium habēre,** form a plan; **in numerō hostium habēre,** consider as enemies; **aliter sē habēre,** be otherwise *or* different; *for* **habēre** *with pf. pass. part., e.g.* **vectīgālia redēmpta habēre,** *see* App. 286, *b.* I, 2.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hĕd′ū-ī), Haeduan; *as noun,* a Haeduan; *pl.* the Haedui, *possibly* Haeduans, *one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes.* I, 3.

haesitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **haereō, stick**], stick *or* cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook, barb.

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (ha-rụ′dēz), *a German tribe.* I, 31.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Helvētius**], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hĕl-vē′shyī), Helvetian; *as noun,* one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, *possibly* Helvetians. I, 1.

Helviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hĕl′vĭ-ī).

Hercynia, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hĕr-sĭn′ĭ-a), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, *f.* [**hērēs,** heir], inheritance.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc.* **castra,** camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bĕr′nĭ-a), *better,* Ireland.

hīc, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), *used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than* **is;** this, this man, woman *or* thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* **hōc,** on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); **hīc . . . ille,** the latter . . . the former. *See* App. 170, *a.* I, 1.

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*), there, in that place;

(*of an incident just mentioned*), then, at this time. IV, 19.

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [**hiems**, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

hiems, -mis, *f.*, winter time, winter. III, 7.

hinc, *adv.*, from that point *or* place, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hĭs-pā′nĭ-a), *better*, Spain. I, 1.

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish.

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, *as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs**, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs**, honor+**faciō**, make], conferring honor. I, 43.

honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* I, 26.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, 32.

horribilis, -e, *adj.* [**horreō**, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

hortor, 1, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.

hospes, -itis, *m.*, *f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

hospitium, -tī, *n.* [**hospes**, host *or* guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

hostis, -is, *m.*, *f.*, (*public*) enemy *or* foe *in distinction from* **inimīcus**, *a personal enemy; pl.*, the enemy. I, 11.

hūc, *adv.* [*old form for* **hōc** *from* **hīc**], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**hūmānus**, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**homō**, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.

humilis, -e, *adj.* [**humus**, the ground], *on the ground;* low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 3.

humilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**humilis**, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

I, *sign for* **ūnus**, one.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, ——, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. II, 27.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (*of an* **agger**), throw up, construct. II, 6.

iactō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **iaciō**, throw], throw *or* hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

iactūra, -ae, *f.* [**iaciō**, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, -ī, *n.* [**iaciō**, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; **neque iam** *or* **iam nōn**, no longer; **ubi iam**, as soon as. I, 5.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, 10.

Iccius, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ĭk′shyŭs), *a chief of the Remi.* II, 3.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, 25.

Īd., *abbr. for* **Īdūs**.

idcircō, *adv.*, therefore.

īdem, eadem, idem (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [**is**, this, that], the same; this very; **īdem atque**, the same as. I, 3.

identidem, *adv.* [**īdem**, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, *pl.*, the Ides: *the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months.* I, 7.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. I, 4.

ignōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+(**g**)**nōbilis**, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ignārus**, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [**in-**+(**g**)**nōscēns**, knowing; **nōscō**], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+(**g**)**nōtus**, known; **nōscō**, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.

illātus, *see* **īnferō**.
ille, illa, illud, *gen.* **illīus,** *dat.* **illī** (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf.* **hīc**), that, that man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it; **hīc. . . ille,** the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, *a.* I, 3.
illīc, *adv.* [**ille,** that], in that place, there. I, **18.**
illigō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō,** bind], attach, hold *or* bind together. IV, **17.**
illō, *adv.* [*old dat. of* **ille**], thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, **11.**
illūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.
Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ĭ-lĭr′ĭ-kŭm), Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* II, 35.
imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.
imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, **29.**
imitor, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.
immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, **1.**
immineō, -minēre, ——, ——, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.
immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**in+mittō,** send], send *or* let into, insert; send against, direct towards *or* against; **trabibus immissīs,** beams being placed between. IV, **17.**
immolō, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.
immortālis, -e, *adj.* [**in-+mortālis,** mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, **12.**
immūnis, -e, *adj.* [**in-+mūnus,** burden], unburdened, *by taxes, requirements of service, etc.*
imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+parātus,** prepared; **parō,** prepare], unprepared, not ready.
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**impediō,** hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*). I, **24.**
impediō, 4, *tr.* [**in+pēs,** foot], *entangle the feet*, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.
impedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **impediō,** hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered *or* burdened by baggage; occupied *or* engaged in; at a disadvantage; *of places*, difficult of passage. I, **12.**
impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in+pellō,** drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, **40**; II, **14.**
impendeō, -pendēre, ——, ——, *intr.* [**in+pendeō,** hang], overhang, impend. I, **6.**
impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; *with* **pretium,** great. IV, **2.**
imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō,** command], commander-in-chief, general. I, **40**; II, **25.**
imperātum, -ī, *n.* [**imperō,** command], command, order. II, **3.**
imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+perītus,** experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, **40**; IV, **22.**
imperium, -rī, *n.* [**imperō,** command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, **2.**
imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**in+parō,** procure], demand from, enjoin *or* levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, **7.**
impetrō, 1, *tr.* [**in+patrō,** accomplish], obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); **impetrāre ā (ab),** gain permission from, persuade. I, **9.**
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, **22.**
impius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+pius,** pious], wicked.
implicō, 1, *tr.* [**in+plicō,** fold], interlace, interweave.
implōrō, 1, *tr.* [**in+plōrō,** call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, **31.**
impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**in+pōnō,** place], place upon, set on, put *or* impose on; mount. I, **42.**
importō, 1, *tr.* [**in+portō,** carry], carry *or* bring in, import. I, **1.**
improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+probus,** good], unprincipled. I, **17.**
imprōvīsō, *adv.* [**imprōvīsus,** unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, **13.**
imprōvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+prōvi-**

sus, foreseen; **prōvideō**], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvīsō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 3.

imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in-+prūdēns**, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.

imprūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**imprūdēns**, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight *or* forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.

impūbēs, -eris, *adj.* [**in-+pūbēs**, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.

impugnō, 1, *tr.* [**in+pugnō**, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.

impulsus, *see* **impellō.**

impulsus, -ūs, *m.* [**impellō**, impel], impulse, instigation.

impūne, *adv.* [**in-+poena**, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.

impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**in-+poena**, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.

īmus, *sup. of* **īnferus.**

in-, *negative prefix.*

in, *prep. with acc. and abl. With acc.* (1) *of motion, from one place into or towards another place,* into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) *of time,* till, into; for; on, at; (3) *other uses,* in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam conicere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar; **summum in cruciātum venīre**, be severely punished. *With abl.* (1) *of rest or motion within a place,* in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) *of time,* in, during, in the course of; on; (3) *other uses,* in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancorīs**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged in the work. I, 1.

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle.

incautē, *adv.* [**incautus**, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.

incautus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+cautus**, cautious; **caveō**, be cautious], incautious, unwary.

incendium, -dī, *n.* [**incendō**, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candeō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+certus**, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō**, fall], fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 53; II, 14.

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō**, cut], cut into. II, 17.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō**, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.

incitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō**, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **cursū incitātō**, at full speed. I, 4.

incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+cognitus**, known; **cognōscō**, learn], unknown. IV, 20.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [**colō**, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.

incommodē, *adv.* [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incommodum, -ī, *n.* [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.

incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-+crēdibilis**, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.

increpitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **increpō**, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [*cf.* **cubō**, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.

incursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**incurrō**, rush into *or* upon], invasion; onset, attack.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [**incurrō**, rush into *or* upon], attack. II, 20.

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa**, cause *or* case], bring a case *or* charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.
indicium, -cī, *n.* [**indicō**, disclose], disclosure, information: **per indicium**, through informers. ☛ 4.
indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.* [**dīcō**, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.
indictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**dictus**, *pf. part. of* **dīcō**, say], unsaid; **causā indictā**, without a trial.
indignē, *adv.* [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.
indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.
indignor, 1, *intr.* [**indignus**, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.
indignus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**dignus**, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.
indīligēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in-**+**dīligēns**, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.
indīligenter, *adv.* [**indīligēns**, careless], carelessly. II, 33.
indīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**indīligēns**, careless], negligence.
indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead *or* draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.
indulgentia, -ae, *f.* [**indulgeō**, indulge], forbearance, clemency.
indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, ——, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.
induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; **sē induere**, be impaled *or* pierced. II, 21.
industriē, *adv.* [**industrius**, diligent], diligently.
indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, 12.
Indutiomārus, -ī, *m.*, Indutiomarus (ĭn-dū″shyō-mā′rŭs), *a chief of the Treveri.*
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; **inīre cōnsilium**, form; **inīre ratiōnem**, make an estimate, decide; **inīre grātiam**, gain; **inīre numerum**, enumerate. II, 2.
inermis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**arma**, arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.
iners, -ertis, *adj.* [**in-**+**ars**, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.
īnfāmia, -ae, *f.* [**in-**+**fāma**, renown], dishonor, ill repute.
īnfāns, -antis, *adj.* [**in-**+**fāns**, speaking], not speaking; *as noun*, infant.
īnfectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**factus**, done; **faciō**, do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.
īnferior, -ius, *comp. of* **īnferus**.
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *tr.* [**ferō**, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **in equum īnferre**, mount on a horse; **causā illātā**, making an excuse; **signa īnferre**, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.
īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, **īnferior**, lower; inferior; **ab īnferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **īnfimus** *or* **īmus**, lowest, last *with* **collis**, the base of; **ad īnfimum, ab īnfimō**, at the bottom. I, 1.
īnfestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; **īnfestīs signīs**, with standards in battle array.
īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō**, make], stain.
īnfidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**fidēlis**, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.
īnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum [**fīgō**, fix], *tr.*, fasten in.
īnfimus, *sup. of* **īnferus**.
īnfīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**fīnītus**, ended; **fīniō**, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.
īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [**īnfirmus**, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. IV, 5.
īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**firmus**, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.
īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [**flectō**, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. I, 25.
īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.
īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**fodiō**, dig], dig *or* drive into.
īnfrā, *adv.* [**īnferus**, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. IV, 36.

ingēns, **-entis**, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

ingrātus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**in-**+**grātus**, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

ingredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum**, *intr.* [**gradior**, go], go *or* come into, enter. II, 4.

iniciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, *tr.* [**iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], throw into *or* upon; put *or* place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.

inimīcitia, **-ae**, *f.* [**inimīcus**, unfriendly], enmity.

inimīcus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**in-**+**amīcus**, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, *to be distinguished from* **hostis**, a public enemy. I, 7.

inīquitās, **-tātis**, *f.* [**inīquus**, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

inīquus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**in-**+**aequus**, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

initium, **-tī**, *n.* [**ineō**, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, *of a country*, borders. I, 1.

iniungō, **-iungere**, **-iūnxī**, **-iūnctum**, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join to; impose.

iniūria, **-ae**, *f.* [**in-**+**iūs**, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

iniussū, *abl. of* **iniussus**, **-ūs**, *m.* [**iubeō**, order], without command *or* order. I, 19.

innāscor, **-nāscī**, **-nātus sum**, *intr.* [**nāscor**, be born], be born in, be engendered; **innātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, inborn, natural.

innītor, **-nītī**, **-nīxus sum**, *intr.* [**nītor**, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

innocēns, **-entis**, *adj.* [**in-**+**nocēns**, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

innocentia, **-ae**, *f.* [**innocēns**, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

inopia, **-ae**, *f.* [**inops**, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

inopīnāns, **-antis**, *adj.* [**in-**+**opīnāns**, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

inquam, **-is**, **-it**, *def. verb, tr.*, *used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation*, say. IV, 25.

īnsciēns, **-entis**, *adj.* [**in-**+**sciēns**, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

īnscientia, **-ae**, *f.* [**īnsciēns**, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

īnscius, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**sciō**, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

īnsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus sum**, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow up *or* after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

īnserō, **-serere**, **-seruī**, **-sertum**, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. III, 14.

īnsidiae, **-ārum**, *f. pl.* [**sedeō**, sit], a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

īnsidior, 1, *intr.* [**īnsidiae**, ambush], lie in ambush.

īnsignis, **-e**, *adj.* [**signō**, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. I, 12.

īnsiliō, **-silīre**, **-siluī**, **-sultum**, *tr.* [**saliō**, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

īnsimulō, 1, *tr.*, charge, blame, accuse.

īnsinuō, 1, *tr.* [**sinuō**, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

īnsistō, **-sistere**, **-stitī**, ——, *tr. and intr.* [**sistō**, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* **ratiōnem**, adopt, use. II, 27.

īnsolenter, *adv.* [**īnsolēns**, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

īnspectō, 1, *tr.* [**spectō**, look], look at, view.

īnstabilis, **-e**, *adj.* [**in-**+**stabilis**, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

īnstar, *n.*, *indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*, like. II, 17.

īnstīgō, 1, *tr.*, urge on, incite.

īnstituō, **-stituere**, **-stituī**, **-stitūtum**, *tr. and intr.* [**statuō**, set up], set up *or* put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **īnstitūtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*,

usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above.* I, **14.**

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* [**īnstituō,** set up, establish], a fixed course *or* principle; habit, institution, custom. **I, 1.**

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand upon *or* near, be at hand, press on; threaten. **I, 16.**

īnstrūmentum, -ī, *n.* [**īnstruō,** build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [**struō,** build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up *in battle array;* equip, furnish. **I, 22.**

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**suēscō,** become accustomed, **faciō,** make], accustomed, trained. IV, **24.**

īnsuētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+suētus,** accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. III, **9.**

īnsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], above, on the top, from above. IV, **17.**

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rē integrā,** before anything was done. III, **4.**

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [**tegō,** cover], cover over; protect.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**inter+legō,** choose, select], select *or* distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, **10.**

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [**tendō,** stretch], stretch out *or* to; **intentus,** *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, **22.**

inter, *prep. with acc.* (*sometimes following its noun*), (1) *of place*, among, between: (2) *of time*, during, within, for: (3) *in other relations*, among, between, in; in among *or* between; to; over; along with: (4) *with reflex. pron.*, *of reciprocal action*, (App. 166), with, to, *or* from each other *or* one another, *as*, **inter sē differunt,** differ from one another; each other, one another, *as*, **cohortātī inter sē,** encouraging one another. **I, 1.**

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go *or* come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. **I, 7.**

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, **27.**

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut *or* cut off, separate, hinder; *with* **itinera,** block. **I, 23.**

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *intr.* [**dīcō,** say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque ignī interdīcere,** *forbid the use of fire and water*, banish. **I, 46.**

interdiū, *adv.* [**diēs,** day], during the day, by day. I, **8.**

interdum, *adv.* [**dum,** while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. **I, 14.**

intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. **I, 8.**

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go, App. 84], perish, die.

interesse, *see* **intersum.**

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make away with, kill, destroy. **I, 12.**

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw *or* hurl between; put *or* place between; **interiectus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed; **mediocrī interiectō spatiō,** not far away. II, **17.**

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the mean time. **I, 16.**

interior, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; *as noun,* **interiōrēs,** inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

interitus, -ūs, *m.* [**intereō,** die], destruction, death.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [**mittō,** send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. **I, 26.**

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**necō,** destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. **I, 13.**

interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. **I, 44.**

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere,** pledge. I, **42;** IV, **9.**

interpres, -etis, *m., f.,* interpreter; mediator. I, **19.**

interpretor, 1, *tr.* [**interpres,** interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, 1, *tr.* [**rogō** ask], ask, question.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**rumpō,** break], break off *or* through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**scindō,** cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, **9.**

intersum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be *or* lie between, intervene; be present *at,* take part *in; impers.,* **interest,** it concerns, it is important; there is a difference *or* an interval; **magnī interest,** it is of great importance. I, **15.**

intervāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus,** palisade], *the space between two palisades;* interval (*of space or time*); distance. I, **22.**

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come between, come up; arrive.

interventus, -ūs, *m.* [**interveniō,** come between], coming; aid. III, **15.**

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō,** weave], weave in *or* together. II, **33.**

intoleranter, *adv.,* intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [**inter,** between], within, inside; into. I, **32;** II, **4.**

intrītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**trītus,** worn], unwearied. III, **26.**

intrō, 1, *tr.,* go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. II, **17.**

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**intrō,** within+**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring into. II, **5.**

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**intrō,** within+**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* come in, enter.

introitus, -ūs, *m.* [**introeō,** go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**intrō,** within+**mittō,** send], send *or* let in. II, **33.**

intrōrsus, *adv.* [**intrō,** within+**versus,** *pf. part. of* **vertō,** turn], within, on the inside. II, **18.**

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**intrō,** within+**rumpō,** break], break in *or* through.

intueor, 2, *tr.* [**tueor,** look], look at. I, **32.**

intus, *adv.,* within, on the inside.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**ūsitātus,** usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, **31.**

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**ūtilis,** useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, **16.**

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō,** come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, **53;** II, **16.**

inventor, -ōris, *m.* [**inveniō,** find], inventor, author.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, *intr.,* grow old; become established. II, **1.**

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**victus,** conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, **36.**

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *intr.* [**videō,** see], look askance at; envy. II, **31.**

invidia, -ae, *f.* [**invideō,** envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**violātus,** injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, **9.**

invītō, 1, *tr.,* invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, **35;** IV, **6.**

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.,* against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invītō,** against his will. I, **8.**

Iovis, *see* **Iuppiter.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.* **ipsīus** (App. 59) *intensive pron.,* self (*as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive* **sē,** self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; *as adj.,* very; *in gen.,* his, her, its, *or* their own. I, **1.**

īrācundia, -ae, *f.* [**īrācundus,** irritable], irritability, anger.

īrācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**īra,** anger], irritable. I, 31.
irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [**in+rīdeō,** laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.
irrīdiculē, *adv.* [**in-+rīdiculus,** witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**in+rumpō,** break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.
irruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**irrumpō,** break into], a breaking into, attack.
is, ea, id, *gen.* **eius** (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context,* this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō,** a, *or* the, place where; **ea quae,** (the) things which; **eō,** *with comp.,* the; **eō magis,** all the more; **eō . . . quō,** *with comparatives,* the . . . the. I, 1.
iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* **istīus** (App. 55), *dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed,* that, this.
ita, *adv.,* so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita,** in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita,** not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut,** just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.,* Italy, *sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula.* I, 10.
itaque, *conj.* [**ita,** so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.
item, *adv.,* in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.
iter, itineris, *n.* [**eō,** go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter,** march, travel; **magnīs itineribus,** by forced marches. I, 3.
iterum, *adv.,* again, a second time; **semel atque iterum,** again and again. I, 31.
Itius, -tī, *m.* (Ad), Itius (ĭsh′yŭs), *a harbor.*
itūrus, *see* **eō.**
iuba, -ae, *f.,* mane. I, 48.
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.,* order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5.
iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [**iūdex,** judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iūdicium facere,** express an opinion; **iūdiciō,** by design, purposely. I, 4.
iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdex,** a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.
iugum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō,** join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.
iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō,** join, yoke], yoke *or* draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.
iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [**iungō,** join], joining. IV, 17.
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *tr.,* join *or* unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.
iūnior, *see* **iuvenis.**
Iūnius, -nī, *m.,* (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see* **Brūtus;** (2) Quintus Junius (kwĭn′tŭs jū′nĭ-ŭs), *a Spaniard in Caesar's service.*
Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), *m.,* Jupiter (jū′pĭ-tēr), *or* Jove, *god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.*
Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū′ra) *mountains.* I, 2.
iūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**iūs,** right], take oath; swear. I, 31.
iūs, iūris, *n.,* right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.* [**iūs,** right+**iūrō,** swear], an oath. I, 3.
iussū, *m., abl. of* **iussus, -ūs,** [**iubeō,** order], by command, by order.
iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [**iūstus,** just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.
iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with* **fūnera,** appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.
iuvenis, -e, *adj.,* young; *comp.,* **iūnior,** *in plur. as noun,* men of military age.
iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**iuvenis,** young], period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years;* the youth, the young men. III, 16.
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.,* aid, assist, help. I, 26.
iūxtā, *adv.* [**iungō,** join], next, near. II, 26.

K.

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae, -ārum,** *f.*, the Calends, *the first day of the Roman month.* I, 6.

L.

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius**, Lucius (lū′shyŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

L, *sign for* **quīnquāgintā**, fifty.

Laberius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwĭn′tŭs la-bē′rĭ-ŭs dū′rŭs), *a tribune.*

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī′tŭs ā′shyŭs lā″bĭ-ē′nŭs), *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda,* 45 B.C. I, 10.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, *intr.*, slip; go wrong; **hāc spē lāpsus**, disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

labōrō, 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip; edge.

lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. IV, 1.

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. I, 20.

lacrimō, 1, *intr.* [**lacrima,** tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. I, 2.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, hurt, damage; **laedere fidem,** to break faith.

laetitia, -ae, *f.* [**laetus,** joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. III, 18.

languidē, *adv.* [**languidus,** faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

languor, -ōris, *m.*, weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. I, 46; II, 6.

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose, snare.

largior, 4, *tr.* [**largus,** large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. I, 18.

largiter, *adv.* [**largus,** large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse,** to have great influence. I, 18.

largītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**largior,** bribe], bribery. I, 9.

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** wide], widely, extensively; **longē lātēque,** far and wide. I, 2.

latebra, -ae, *f.* [**lateō,** lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed *or* hidden. II, 19.

lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lātus,** wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Latobrigi (lăt″ō-brī′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* I, 5.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.

latrōcinium, -nī, *n.* [**latrō,** robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.* broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.

lātus, *see* **ferō.**

latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* I, 25.

laudō, 1, *tr.* [**laus,** praise], praise.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, *tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. IV, 1.

laxō, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lēgō,** delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [**lēgō,** delegate], *one with delegated powers;* ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**legō,** choose], a legion. I, 7.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**legiō,** legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without* **lacus**), *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-măn′ŭs), *better* Lake Leman, *or* the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.

Lemovīcēs, -um, *m.* (CDd), the Lemovices (lĕm″ō-vī′sēz).

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild, smooth. IV, **28.**

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**lēnis,** smooth], smoothness, gentleness. I, **12.**

lēniter, *adv.* [**lēnis,** smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, **8.**

Lepontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pŏn′shyī). IV, **10.**

lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare.

Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū′sī). I, **40.**

Levācī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Levaci (lē-vā′sī).

levis, -e, *adj.*, light *(in weight)*, slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, **10.**

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [**levis,** light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. II, **1.**

levō, 1, *tr.* [**levis,** light], lighten, ease, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute, enactment. I, **1.**

Lexoviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lĕk-sō′vĭ-ī). III, **9.**

libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, **44;** III, **18.**

līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unrestrained, free; undisputed. I, **44.**

līberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], *freedom in giving, etc.;* generosity. I, **18.**

līberāliter, *adv.* [**līber,** free], graciously, generously, kindly. II, **5.**

līberē, *adv.* [**līber,** free], freely, without restraint, boldly. I, **18.**

līberī, -ōrum, *m.* [**līber,** free], *the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves)*; children. I, **11.**

līberō, 1, *tr.* [**līber,** free], make or set free, release, deliver. IV, **19.**

lībertās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], freedom, liberty, independence. I, **17.**

lībrīlis, -e, *adj.* [**lībra,** a pound], of a pound weight; **funda lībrīlis,** a sling for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, *see* **liceor.**

licentia, -ae, *f.* [**licet,** it is permitted], lawlessness, presumption.

liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid *(at an auction)*. I, **18.**

licet, licēre, licuit *and* **licitum est,** *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; **licet mihi,** I may; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. I, **7.**

Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the *river* Liger, (lī′jĕr), *better* the Loire. III, **9.**

lignātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lignum,** wood], the procuring of wood.

lignātor, -ōris, *m.* [**lignum,** wood], one sent to get wood, wood-forager.

līlium, -lī, *n.*, lily; *a kind of pitfall, named from its resemblance to a lily.*

līnea, -ae, *f.* [**līnum,** flax], linen thread; line.

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (lĭng′gō-nēz). I, **26.**

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language. I, **1.**

lingula, -ae, *f.* [**lingua,** tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. III, **12.**

linter, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. I, **12.**

līnum, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. III, **13.**

līs, lītis, *f.*, strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus (lĭs′kŭs), *a chief magistrate of the Haedui.* I, **16.**

Litaviccus, -ī, *m.* Litaviccus (lĭt″a-vĭk′ŭs), a Haeduan nobleman.

littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *in pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. I, **26.**

lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. IV, **23.**

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō,** as hostages. I, **2.**

locūtus, *see* **loquor.**

longē, *adv.* [**longus,** long], far, far away, distant; **longē lātēque,** far and wide. I, **1.**

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus,** long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. I, **47;** IV, **27.**

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**longus,** long], length, extent; long duration. I, **2.**

longurius, -rī, *m.* [**longus,** long], a long pole. III, **14.**

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, **40**; II, **21**.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. I, **20**.

lōrīca, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lūcānius, -nī, *m.* Quintus Lucanius (kwĭn′tŭs lū-kā′nĭ-ŭs) *a centurion.*

Lucterius, -rī, *m.*, Lucterius (lŭk-tē′rĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Cadurci.*

Lugotorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Lugotorix (lū-gŏt′-ō-rĭks), *a British chief.*

lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. I, **50**; IV, **29**.

Lutetia, -ae, *f.* (Be), Lutetia (lū-tē′-shya), *the capital of the Parisii, now* Paris.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak. I, **22**.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. II, **15**.

M.

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mär′kŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **2**.

M, *sign for* **mīlle,** thousand.

māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**māchinor,** contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, **30**.

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**maereō,** be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj″ē-tŏb′rĭ-ga), *a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.* I, **31**.

magis, *adv., comp.* [**magnus,** great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, **maximē,** especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, **3**.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [**magister,** master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, **4**.

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus,** great + **faciō,** make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus,** great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (**corporum**); violence (**ventī**); severity (**poenae**); **magnitūdō animī,** courage. I, **39**; II, **12**.

magnopere, *adv.* [**magnus,** great + **opus,** work], *with great labor;* especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, **13**.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); **magnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **magnīs itineribus,** by forced marches. *Comp.*, **maior;** *sup.*, **maximus.** I, **2**.

maiestās, -tātis, *f.* [**maior,** greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

maior, māius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **magnus,** great], greater (*in degree, size, time, etc.*); older, elder; *as noun,* **maiōrēs nātū,** elders, old men; **maiōrēs,** ancestors. I, **13**.

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm *at sea.* III, **15**.

male, *adv.* [**malus,** bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, **peius;** *sup.*, **pessimē.** I, **40**.

maleficium, -cī, *n.* [**malum,** evil + **faciō,** do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, **7**.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**magis,** more + **volō,** wish], wish more *or* rather, prefer. III, **8**.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*upright*). III, **14**.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, **peior, peius;** *n. as noun,* a worse thing; *sup.*, **pessimus.** I, **31**.

mandātum, -ī, *n.* [**mandō,** command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, **35**; II, **5**.

mandō, 1, *tr.* [**manus,** hand + **dō,** give], *give into one's hands;* entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, **12**.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Mandubii (măn-dū′bĭ-ī).

Mandubracius, -cī, *m.*, Mandubracius (măn″dū-brā′shyŭs), *a British chief.*

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. IV, **13**.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, **36**; IV, **1**.

manipulāris, -e, *adj.* [**manipulus,** maniple], of a maniple; *as noun,* common soldier; **suus manipulāris,** a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -ī, *m.* [**manus,** hand + **pleō,** fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a*

pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort)*, maniple. II, 25.

Manlius, -lī, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū′-shyŭs măn′lĭ-ŭs), *proconsul in* 78 B.C. III, 20.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, **mānsuēfīō**), *tr.* [**mānsuētus,** tame+**faciō,** make], tame.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**mānsuētus,** tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 14.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; **in manibus,** near at hand; **manū,** by hand, by art; **ferrea manus,** a grappling-hook; **dare manūs,** yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mär″kō-măn′ī). I, 51.

mare, -is, *n.*, sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean. III, 7.

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare,** sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; **ōra,** the sea shore. II, 34.

Marius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā′yŭs mā′rĭ-ŭs), *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni.* I, 40.

Mārs, -tis, *m.*, Mars (märz), *god of war;* war; **aequō Mārte,** with equal advantage.

mās, maris, *adj.*, male; *as noun*, a male.

matara, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic* javelin. I, 26.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae,** matrons. I, 18.

māteria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, 29.

māterior, 1, *intr.* [**māteria,** material, wood], procure wood.

Matiscō, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Matisco (ma-tĭs′kō), *a city of the Haedui, now* Macon.

mātrimōnium, -nī, *n.* [**māter,** mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; **in mātrimōnium dare,** to give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to marry (*said of the man*). I, 3.

Matrona, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the *river* Matrona (măt′rō-na), *now* the Marne. I, 1.

mātūrē, *adv.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, ——, *intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], become ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. I, 16.

maximē, *see* **magis.**

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **magnus,** great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.

Maximus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quĭn′tŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs măk′sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls.*, 121 B.C. I, 45.

medeor, mederī, ——, *intr.*, remedy, cure.

mediocris, -cre, *adj.* [**medius,** the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.

mediocriter, *adv.* [**mediocris,** moderate], moderately; **nōn mediocriter,** in no small degree. I, 39.

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē″dĭ-ō-măt′rĭ-sī). IV, 10.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**medius,** middle+**terra,** land], midland, inland.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utrīusque,** a place midway between the two. I, 34.

Meldī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Meldi (mĕl′-dī).

melior, *comp. of* **bonus.**

membrum, -ī, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, 24.

meminī, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. III, 6.

memoria, -ae, *f.* [**memor,** mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; **memoriā tenēre,** remember; **patrum memoriā,** in the time of our fathers. I, 7.

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā′pĭ-ī). II, 4.

mendācium, -cī, *n.*, lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque,** minds and hearts; **aliēnātā mente,** bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. I, 5.

mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [**mētior,** measure], measure.

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.* naming, mention.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [**mercor,** trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.
mercātūra, -ae, *f.* [**mercor,** trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.
mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. I, 31.
Mercurius, -rī, *m.*, Mercurius (mēr-kū′-rĭ-ŭs), *the god* Mercury.
mereō, *and* **mereor,** 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (**odium**); serve *as a soldier* (*i.e., earn pay*). I, 11.
merīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**merīdiēs,** midday], of midday *or* noon.
merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.* [*for* **medīdiēs,** *from* **medius,** middle+**diēs,** day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.
meritō, *adv.* [**meritum,** desert], justly, deservedly.
meritum, -ī, *n.* [**mereor,** deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 14.
Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mär′kŭs va-lē′rĭ-ŭs mĕ-sā′la), *consul,* 61 B.C. I, 2.
mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. I, 16.
Metiosēdum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Metiosedum (mē′′shyō-sē′dŭm), *a town of the Senones, now* Melun.
Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mär′-kŭs mē′shyŭs). I, 47.
metō, metere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. IV, 32.
metus, -ūs, *m.* [**metuō,** fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; **metū territāre,** terrify; **hōc metū = metū huius reī,** from fear of this. IV, 4.
meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [*cf. oblique cases of* **ego**], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to* **equitēs**); **mīlitēs imperāre,** levy soldiers *upon.* I, 7.
mīlia, *see* **mīlle.**
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* [**mīles,** soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; **rēs mīlitāris,** military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.
mīlitia, -ae, *f.* [**mīles,** soldier], military service, warfare.
mīlle, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thousand; *pl. as noun,* **mīlia, -ium,** *n.*, thousands, (*usually followed by part. gen.*); **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.
Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mĭ-nēr′va), *goddess of wisdom and the arts.*
minimē, *adv.* [**minimus,** least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.
minimus, -a, -um, *sup. of* **parvus.**
minor, *comp. of* **parvus.**
Minucius, -cī, *m.* Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū′shyŭs mĭ-nū′shyŭs băs′ĭ-lŭs), *a commander of cavalry.*
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [**minus,** less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (**contrōversiās**); **minuente aestū,** the tide ebbing. I, 20.
minus, *adv. comp.* [**parvus,** little], less; not at all, too little; **quō minus,** *see* **quōminus.** I, 2.
mīror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder *or* marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.
mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mīror,** wonder at], strange, astonishing; **mīrum in modum,** surprisingly. I, 34.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 28.
misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misereō,** pity+**cor,** the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.
miseror, 1, *tr.* [**miser,** wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.
mīsī, *see* **mittō.**
missus, -ūs, *m.* [**mittō,** send], a sending, dispatching; **missū Caesaris,** sent by Caesar.
missus, *see* **mittō.**
mītissimē, *superl. adv.* [**mītis,** mild], very mildly *or* gently.
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7.
mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**moveō,** move], changeable. IV, 5.
mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**mōbilis,** movable], movableness, activity, speed;

changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mōbiliter, *adv.* [**mōbilis,** movable], readily, easily. III, **10.**

moderor, 1, *tr.* [**modus,** limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, **33.**

modestia, -ae, *f.* [**modus,** limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *with measure* or *limit;* only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time,* just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only, . . . but also. I, **16.**

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modī,** of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō,** *with gen.*, in the character of, like. I, **41;** II, **31.**

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, **6.**

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, **12.**

molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre,** be annoyed. II, **1.**

mōlīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mōlior,** exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, **34.**

molitus, -a, -um, *see* **molō.**

molliō, 4, *tr.* [**mollis,** soft], soften, make easy.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. III, **19.**

mollitia, -ae, *f.* [**mollis,** soft], weakness.

mollitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**mollis,** soft], weakness.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. I, **5.**

mōmentum, -ī, *n.*, weight, influence, importance.

Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona (mō′na), *an island off the coast of Britain, probably the* Isle of Man.

moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. I, **20.**

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, **1.**

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, **15.**

morbus, -ī, *m.*, illness, sickness, disease.

Morinī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mŏr′ī-nī). II, **4.**

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [**mors,** death], die. I, **4.**

Moritasgus, -ī, *m.*, Moritasgus (mŏr″ī-tăs′gŭs), *a chief of the Senones.*

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mora,** a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, **26.**

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. I, **4.**

mortuus, *see* **morior.**

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. I, **4.**

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the *river* Mosa (mō′sa), *now* the Meuse *or* Maas. IV, **9.**

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [**moveō,** move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, **23.**

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; *with* **castra,** move camp *from one place to another, or* break camp. I, **15.**

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. I, **29.**

mūliō, -ōnis, *m.* [**mūlus,** mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**multus,** much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, **2.**

multō, 1, *tr.*, fine, deprive *one of something as a fine.*

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **multus,** much], by far, much.

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **multus,** much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs,** more; **plūs posse,** be more able *or* powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrimum,** most, very; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful; be very powerful *or* influential. I, **3.**

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.* many; *with abl. denoting time when,* late; *as noun,* many *persons or things; comp.* **plūs, plūris,** more; *as noun,* more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um,** most; *pl.*, very many. I, **3.**

mūlus, -ī, *m.*, a mule.

Munātius, -tī, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū′shyŭs mū-nā′shyŭs plăng′kŭs), *a lieutenant of Caesar.*

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world.

mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mūniō,** fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.
mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnītus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.
mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 8.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. I, 43.
mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**mūrus,** wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum,** mural javelin, *a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall.* III, 14.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall. I, 8.
musculus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **mus,** mouse], shed, mantlet.
mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see* **nancīscor.**
nam, *conj.*, for. I, 12.
Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammeius (nă-mē′-yŭs). I, 7.
Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (năm′nē-tēz). III, 9.
namque, *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. I, 38; III, 13.
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.
Nantuātes, -ium, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (năn″tū-ā′tēz). III, 1.
Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (när′bō), *now* Narbonne. III, 20.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born *or* produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II, 18.
Nasua, -ae, *m.* Nasua (năsh′ū-ạ), *a leader of the Suebi.* I, 37.
nātālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], pertaining to birth; **diēs,** birthday.
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.
nātīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], native; natural.
nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.
nātus, -ūs, *m.* [**nāscor,** be born], birth; **maiōrēs nātū,** *greater by birth,* elders. II, 13.
nātus, -a, -um, *see* **nāscor.**
nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* **nāvita; nāvis,** ship], sailor. III, 9.
nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nauta,** sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.
nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāvis,** ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.
nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **nāvis,** ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāvigō,** sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.
nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [**nāvigō,** sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.
nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [**nāvis,** ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria,** transport. I, 8.
nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously *or* well. II, 25.
nē (App. 188, *b*), (1), *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that, lest. (2), *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem** (*enclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, 4.
ne-, nec-, neg-, *inseparable negative prefixes.*
-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213, *a*); *in indirect questions*, whether; **-ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,** whether . . . or. I, 50; IV, 14.
nec, *see* **neque.**
necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **necessārius,** necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.
necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; *with* **tempus,** critical; *as noun,* kinsman, friend. I, 11.
necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.
necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.
necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**necesse;** *cf.* **necessārius,** friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.

necne, *conj.* **[nec,** nor+**-ne]**, or not. I, 50.

necō, 1, *tr.* **[nex,** death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.

nēcubi, *conj.+adv.* [**nē,** not+**(c)ubi,** where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nefās,** sin], wicked, impious.

nefās, *n., indecl.* [**ne-**+**fās,** divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

neg-, *see* **ne-.**

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**neg-**+**legō,** choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. I, 8.

negōtior, 1, *intr.* [**negōtium,** business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

negōtium, -tī, *n.* [**neg-**+**ōtium,** leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare,** employ, direct; **quid negōtī,** what business; **nihil negōtī,** no difficulty. I, 34; II, 2.

Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nĕm′ē-tēz). I, 51.

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem,** *m. and f.* [**ne-**+**homō,** man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.

nēquāquam, *adv.* [**nē**+**quāquam,** in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.

neque (nec) (App. 188, *a*), *conj.* [**ne-**+**que**], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. I, 4.

nēquīquam, *adv.* [**nē**+**qui(d)quam,** anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Nervius**], of the Nervii. III, 5.

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nĕr′vĭ-ī). II, 4.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, 20.

neu, *see* **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-trīus,** *dat.* **-trī**), *adj. used as noun*, [**ne-**+**uter,** which *of two*], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9.

nēve (neu) (App. 188, *b*), *conj.* [**nē**+**ve,** or], and not, nor. I, 26.

nex, necis, *f.*, violent death, death, execution. I, 16.

nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil,** somewhat. I, 11.

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nimis,** too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.* [**ne-**+**si,** if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.

Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dd), the Nitiobroges (nĭsh″ĭ-ŏb′rō-jēz).

nītor, nītī, nīxus sum, *intr.*, rest *or* rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 13.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō,** know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. I, 2.

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**nōbilis,** well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns,** *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. III, 13.

noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** night], by night. I, 8.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nox,** night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 38.

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**ne-**+**volō,** wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* **nōlī** *or* **nōlīte,** *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. I, 16.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** *with gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine,** on his *or* their own account, personally. I, 13.

nōminātim, *adv.* [**nōminō,** name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.

nōminō, 1, *tr.* [**nōmen,** name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.

nōn (App. 188, *a*), *adv.*, not; no. **I, 3.**

nōnāgintā, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, ninety. **I, 29.**

nōndum, *adv.* [**nōn,** not+**dum**], not yet. **I, 6.**

nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. **II, 23.**

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē′ya), *a town in Noricum, now* Neumarkt. **I, 5.**

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (*a country between the Danube and the Alps*), Norican. **I, 5.**

nōs, *see* **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted *or* familiar with; **nōvī,** *pf.*, have learned, *hence*, know; **nōtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. **III, 9.**

nōsmet, *see* **egomet.**

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [**nōs,** we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. **I, 1.**

nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [**nōscō,** know], knowledge, acquaintance.

nōtus, -a, -um, *see* **nōscō.**

novem, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō″-vī-ō-dū′nŭm) (1), *the capital of the Suessiones, the modern* Soissons (Be); (2), *a city of the Bituriges* (Ce); (3), *a city of the Haedui* (Ce). **II, 12.**

novitās, -tātis, *f.* [**novus,** new], newness; strangeness, novelty. **IV, 34.**

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae,** a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus, -a, -um,** latest, last; *as noun or with* **agmen,** those in the rear, the rear. **I, 9.**

nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **media nox,** middle of the night, midnight; **multā nocte,** late at night. **I, 26.**

noxia, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil one's self *for the marriage ceremony*, marry. **I, 18.**

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [**nūdus,** bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. **II, 6.**

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. **I, 25.**

nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllīus,** *adj.* [**ne-+ūllus,** any], not any, no; *as noun*, no one, none; **nōn nūllus,** some; *as noun*, some, some persons. **I, 7.**

num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* **I, 14.**

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; **in numerō,** *with gen.*, among, as. **I, 3.**

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū′mĭ-dē), *better* the Numidians, *a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.* **II, 7.**

nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin.

numquam, *adv.* [**ne-+umquam,** ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam,** sometimes. **I, 8.**

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. **I, 31**; II, **4.**

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntius,** messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. **I, 7.**

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. **I, 26.**

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. **I, 6.**

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō,** nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum,** at one's nod *or* command. **I, 31; IV, 23.**

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; **quam ob rem,** wherefore, why. **I, 4.**

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes,** money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. **I, 4.**

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead towards; extend, dig. **II, 8.**

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go to *or* towards; perform, attend to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw against *or* in the way; place in front *or* opposite, present; expose; **obiectus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, lying in the way *or* opposite, in the way. **I, 26.**

obitus, -ūs, *m.* [**obeō,** go to *death*], destruction. **II, 29.**

oblātus, *see* **offerō.**

oblīquē, *adv.* [**oblīquus**, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.
oblīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, running obliquely, slanting.
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *intr.* [**oblīviō**, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.
obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacer**, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.
obsequentia, -ae, *f.* [**obsequor**, comply], complaisance, compliance.
observō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.
obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, [**obsideō**, blockade], *one that is guarded*, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.
obsessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō**, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.
obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.
obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō**, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.
obsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō**, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.
obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.
obstinātē, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.
obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō**, tie], bind, hold *under obligations*, pledge. I, 9.
obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [**struō**, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.
obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [**temperō**, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.
obtestor, 1, *tr.* [**testor**, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō**, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.
obtulī, *see* **offerō**.
obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. II, 23.
obviam, *adv.* [**via**, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occidō**, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**occidō**, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with* **sōlis**, sunset; the west. I, 1.
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, *intr.* [**ob+cadō**, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; **occidēns sōl**, the west.
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ob+caedō**, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.
occultātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occultō**, hide], concealment.
occultē, *adv.* [**occultus**, secret], secretly.
occultō, 1, *tr.* [**occultus**, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.
occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.
occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occupō**, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.
occupō, 1, *tr.* [**ob+capiō**, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.
occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob+currō**, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.
Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, *with* **mare**, the ocean. I, 1.
Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ŏs′ē-lŭm). I, 10.
octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eighth. II, 23.
octingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.
octō (VIII), *card. num. adj. indecl.*, eight. I, 21.
Octodūrus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ŏk″tō-dū′rŭs). III, 1.
octōgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eighty each, eighty.
octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj. indecl.* [**octō**, eight], eighty. I, 2.
octōnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eight at a time, eight.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. I, 12.
ōdī, ōdisse, (App. 86), *tr., pf. with meaning of pres.*, hate, detest. I, 18.
odium, -dī, *n.*, hatred.
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**ob+fendō,** strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animum offendere,** hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.
offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**offendō,** hurt], offence. I, 19.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [**ob+ferō,** bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; *with* **sē,** expose one's self *to*, charge *upon*, encounter. II, 21.
officium, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre,** *or* **permanēre in officiō,** to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.
Ollovicō,-ōnis, *m.*, Ollovico (ŏ-lŏv′ĭ-kō), *a king of the Nitiobroges.*
omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**ob+mittō,** send], let go *or* fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.
omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis,** all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl. as noun*, all possessions *or* goods. I, 1.
onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**onus,** burden], fitted for burdens; *with* **nāvis,** transport, freight ship. IV, 22.
onerō, 1, *tr.* [**onus,** load], load.
onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.
opera, -ae, *f.* [**opus,** work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; **dare operam,** give attention, take pains. II, 25.
opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [**opīnor,** think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris,** impression of cowardice. II, 3.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, ——, *intr. impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; *when translated as personal verb*, must, ought. I, 4.
oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**oppidum,** town], of *or* pertaining to a town; *in pl. as noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.
oppidum, -ī, *n.* fortified town, town, stronghold. I, 5.
oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**ob+pōnō,** place], place against *or* opposite, oppose; **oppositus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, in front, opposite.
opportūnē, *adv.* [**opportūnus,** fit], opportunely, seasonably. IV, 22.
opportūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**opportūnus,** fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; *with* **locī,** favorable situation *or* position; *with* **temporis,** favorable opportunity. III, 12.
opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.
oppositus, *see* **oppōnō.**
opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob+premō,** press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.
oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**oppugnō,** storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan *or* method of storming. II, 6.
oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [**ob+pugnō,** fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.
ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, 20.
optātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**optō,** wish], wished for, desired, welcome.
optimē, *sup. of* **bene.**
optimus, *sup. of* **bonus.**
opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor; military work *or* works, fortifications, defenses; a work *of engineering or architecture;* **nātūrā et opere,** by nature and art; **opera,** crafts. I, 8.
opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [*cf.* **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est,** it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl.* (App. 146). I, 34; II, 8.
ōra, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ōrō,** speak], a speak-

ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**ōrō**, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, **27.**

orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world. IV, **37.**

Orcynia, -ae, *f.* Orcynia (ôr-sĭn'ĭ-a), *same as* **Hercynia.**

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line *of soldiers;* arrangement, order; degree, rank; **prīmī ōrdinēs,** centurions of the first rank. I, **40;** II, **11.**

Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ôr-jĕt'-ō-rĭks), *a chief of the Helvetii.* I, **2.**

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl,** the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, **1.**

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ōrnō**, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, **44.**

ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, **14.**

ōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ōs**, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, **20.**

ortus, -ūs, *m.* [**orior**, rise], rising.

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth; face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sĭs'mī), *a Gallic people in modern Brittany.* II, **34.**

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [**obs**+**tendō**, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, **8.**

ostentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ostentō**, show], show, display; pretence; pride.

ostentō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **ostendō**, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, *n.*, leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. IV, **10.**

P.

P., *abbr. for* **Pūblius,** *a Roman praenomen.* I, **21.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pābulor**, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, **15.**

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [**pābulor**, forage], forager.

pābulor, 1, *intr.* [**pābulum**, fodder], forage.

pābulum, -ī, *n.* [*cf.* **pāscō**, feed], fodder, provender. I, **16.**

pācō, 1, *tr.* [**pāx**, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, **6.**

pactum, -ī, *n.* [**pacīscor**, agree to], agreement; manner.

Padus, -ī, *m.* (Dh), the Padus (pā'dŭs), *better,* the Po, *the largest river of northern Italy.*

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, **11.**

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, ——, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb,* repent (App. 109). IV, **5.**

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. I, **12.**

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palma, -ae, *f.*, palm *of the hand.*

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, **40;** II, **9.**

palūster, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**palūs**, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend; **passīs capillīs,** with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. I, **51;** II, **13.**

pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity,* the same; **pār atque,** the same as. I, **28.**

parcē, *adv.* [**parcus**, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum, *intr.* [**parcus**, frugal], be frugal *or* economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, *m., f.* [**pariō**, bring forth], parent.

parentō, 1, *intr.* [**parēns**, parent], make funeral offerings *especially for parents;* avenge.

pāreō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* **pariō**, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, **27.**

pariō, parere, peperī, partum, *tr.*, bring forth; gain, acquire, win.

Parīsiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Parisii (pa-rĭzh'yī), *a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.*

parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;

parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, *adv.* [*acc. of* **pars**, part], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. II, 1.

partior, 4, *tr.* [**pars**, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

partus, *see* **pariō**.

parum, *adv.* [**parvus**, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **parvus**, little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvulī**, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, **minor, minus**, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, **minimus, -a, -um**, least, very small. I, 8.

passim, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ūs, *m.* [**pandō**, extend], a pace, *the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet)*; **mīlle passūs** *or* **passuum**, a *Roman* mile, *4851 feet.* I, 2.

passus, *see* **pandō** *and* **patior**.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō**, be open+**faciō**, make], make *or* throw open, open. II, 32.

patefīō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of* **patefaciō**.

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [**pateō**, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father *or* head of a family. I, 3.

patienter, *adv.* [**patiēns**; **patior**, endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [**patiēns**; **patior**, endure], endurance, patience.

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pater, father**], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patrōnus, -ī, *m.* [**pater**, father], protector, patron.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [**pater**, father], a father's brother, uncle.

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* (*used rarely in sing.*), few; *as noun*, few *persons or things*. I, 15.

paucitās, -tātis, *f.* [**paucus**, few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.

paulisper, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, *adv.* [**paulus**, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little; **paulum**, *as noun*, a little; **post paulum**, soon after.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectus, -oris, *n.*, the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; *usually* small cattle, sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, *adj.* [**pēs**, foot], of a foot *in thickness or diameter*. III, 13.

pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs**, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**pēs**, foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [**pedes**, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwĭn′tŭs pē′dĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*. II, 2.

peius, *comp. of* **malus**.

pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent *made of hides*. II, 33.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*,

beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; weigh out *money*, pay, pay out; *with* **poenās,** suffer. I, 36.

penitus, *adv.*, deeply; far within.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts *or* influence of; **per sē,** of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** lead], lead through; complete, finish.

perangustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angustus,** narrow], very narrow.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.

percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiring, inquiry. I, 39.

percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run along *or* over. IV, 33.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.*, strike *or* thrust through, slay.

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, ——, *tr.* [**discō,** learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give over, ruin; **perditus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, 17.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead through *or* along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

perendinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, after to-morrow.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], be destroyed *or* killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.

perequitō, 1, *intr.* [**equitō,** ride], ride about, ride through *or* around. IV, 33.

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**exiguus,** little], very little.

perfacilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis,** easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, *see* **perficiō.**

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear], bear *or* carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make, do], make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [**perfidus,** faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**frangō,** break], break *or* burst through. I, 25.

perfuga, -ae, *m.* [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

perfugium, -gī, *n.* [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [**per**+**regō,** keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

perīclitor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**perīculum,** trial, danger], try, test; be in danger *or* peril. II, 8.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**perīculum,** danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.

perītus, -a, -um *adj.* [*cf.* **experior,** try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

perlātus, *see* **perferō.**

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** read], read through, read.

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtum, *tr.* [**luō,** wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass. as middle voice*, bathe one's self.

permagnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus,** large], very large, very great.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**maneō,** remain], stay through *or* to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, *tr.* [**misceō,** mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], give up *or* over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, *see* **permisceō.**

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.* [**mulceō,** soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* [*cf.* **nex,** death], ruin, destruction. I, 20.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* [**paucī,** few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun,* very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum,-ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, *tr.* [**patior,** suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, *adv.* [**perpetuus,** continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase* **in perpetuum,** forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō,-rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [**rumpō,** break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

perseverō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.* [**solvō,** pay], pay in full; suffer (*punishment*). I, 12.

perspiciō, -spicere,-spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**speciō,** look], look *or* see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand firm, persist.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], *advise prevailingly;* convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; **sibi persuādērī,** be convinced. I, 2.

perterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, *f.* [**pertineō,** hold through *or* fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, ——, *intr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; **eōdem pertinēre,** tend to the same purpose *or* result, amount to the same thing. I, 1.

pertulī, *see* **perferō.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**perturbō,** disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagor,** wander], wander about, scatter.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property,* fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, *11.65 inches in length;* **pedibus,** on foot; **pedem referre,** retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -īvī *or* **-iī, -ītum,** *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to *or* toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dcd), the Petrocorii (pĕt′′rō-kō′rĭ-ī).

Petrōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Petronius (mär′kŭs pē-trō′nĭ-ŭs), *a centurion of the 8th legion.*

Petrosidius, -dī, *m.*, Lucius Petrosidius (lū′shyŭs pĕt′′rō-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *a standard bearer.*

phalanx, **-ngis**, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.
Pictonēs, **-um**, *m.* (Ccd), the Pictones (pĭk′tō-nēz). III, 11.
pietās, **-tātis**, *f.* [**pius**, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.
pīlum, **-ī**, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25.
pīlus, **-ī**, *m.*, century *of soldiers;* **prīmus pīlus**, first century *of a legion;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō**, *or* **prīmīpīlus**, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.
pinna, **-ae**, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.
Pīrūstae, **-ārum**, *m.*, the Pirustae (pī-rŭs′tē), *a tribe of Illyricum.*
piscis, **-is**, *m.*, fish. IV, 10.
Pīsō, **-ōnis**, *m.* (1), Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mär′kŭs pū′pĭ-us pī′sō kăl-pẽr″nĭ-ā′nŭs), *consul with Messala,* 61 B.C. I, 2. (2), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū′shyŭs kăl-pẽr′nĭ-ŭs pī′sō), *killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by the Tigurini,* 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, *Caesar's father-in-law; consul* 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, *an Aquitanian.* IV, 12.
pix, **picis**, *f.*, pitch.
placeō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* **plācō**, appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good *to one, hence,* decide, resolve, determine. I, 34; III, 3.
placidē, *adv.* [**placidus**, calm], calmly.
plācō, 1, *tr.*, appease.
Plancus, *see* **Munātius**.
plānē, *adv.* [**plānus**, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, 26.
plānitiēs, **-ēī**, *f.* [**plānus**, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.
plānus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, even, level, flat, plain. III, 13.
plēbs, **plēbis**, *or* **plēbēs**, **-ēī**, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3.
plēnē, *adv.* [**plēnus**, full], fully. III, 3.
plēnus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**pleō**, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.
plērīque, **-aeque**, **-aque**, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; *as noun,* a great many, very many. II, 4.
plērumque, *adv.* [**plērusque**, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. I, 40; II, 30.
Pleumoxiī, **-ōrum**, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mŏk′sĭ-ī).
plumbum, **-ī**, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album**, tin.
plūrimum, *see* **multum**.
plūrimus, *see* **multus**.
plūs, *see* **multus** *and* **multum**.
pluteus, **-ī**, *m.*, parapet; a mantelet *or* screen *of movable shields.*
pōculum, **-ī**, *n.*, cup.
poena, **-ae**, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4.
pollex, **-icis**, *m.*, the thumb, *with or without* **digitus**. III, 13.
polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [**prō**+**liceor**, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.
pollicitātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.* [**polliceor**, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.
pollicitus, *see* **polliceor**.
Pompeius, **-ī**, *m.* (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nē′ŭs pŏm-pē′yŭs), *better,* Pompey, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in* 60 B.C., *defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy,* 48 B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, *an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.*
pondus, **-eris**, *n.* [*cf.* **pendō**, weigh], weight. II, 29.
pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with* **castra**, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, *in addition to above meanings.* I, 16.
pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge. I, 6.
poposcī, *see* **poscō**.
populātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.* [**populor**, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.
populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.
populus, **-ī**, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, *as opposed to individuals;* a people *or* nation. I, 3.
porrigō, **-rigere**, **-rēxī**, **-rēctum**, *tr.* [**prō**+**regō**, keep straight], extend; **porrēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. II, 19.
porrō, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 24.
portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.
portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, tariff *on imports or exports.* I, 18.
portus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* **porta,** gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.
poscō, poscere, poposcī, ——, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.
positus, *see* **pōnō.**
possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō,** possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō,** sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 34; II, 4.
possīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. IV, 7.
possum, posse, potuī, ——, (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis,** able+**sum,** be], be able, can; to have power *or* influence, have strength, be strong; *with* **quam** *and sup.*, as possible, *e.g.*, **quam plūrimās possunt,** as many as possible; **multum posse, plūs posse** *and* **plūrimum posse,** *see* **multum.** I, 2.
post, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (1) *As adv.*, later, afterwards. (2) *As prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** *or* **post sē,** in the rear. I, 5.
posteā, *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards. I, 21.
posteāquam, *adv.* [**posteā,** afterwards +**quam,** than], after. I, 31; IV, 19.
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post,** after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** *or* **postumus,** last. I, 15.
postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**post,** after+**pōnō,** place], place after, postpone; disregard.
postquam, *conj.* [**post,** afterwards+ **quam,** than], after, as soon as. I, 24.
postrēmō, *adv.* [**postrēmus,** last], finally, at last.
postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterus,** following+ **diēs,** day], on the day following, the next day; **postrīdiē eius diēī,** on the next *or* following day. I, 23.
postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō,** demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.
postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.
potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum,** be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.
potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns,** powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.
potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.
potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere,** grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.
potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis,** powerful], become master of, get control *or* possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.
potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis,** able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.
potītus, *see* **potior.**
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.
praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō,** sharpen at the end], sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.
praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae+habeō,** hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.
praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō,** guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.
praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**caput,** head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.
praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [**praecipiō,** instruct], instruction, injunction, command.
praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.
praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [**praeceps,** headlong], throw *or* hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.
praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**prae+claudō,** shut], close *or* shut in front, block up, close.

praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.

Praecōnīnus, *see* **Valerius.**

praecurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, **34.**

praedicō, 1, *tr.* [**dicō,** proclaim], proclaim publicly *or* before others; declare, report, tell of. I, **39;** IV, **34.**

praedor, 1, *tr.* [**praeda,** booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, **17.**

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead before, construct before or in front.

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [**praeficiō,** place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, **39;** III, **7.**

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* **quam; praeferre sē alicui,** surpass. II, **27.**

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, **10.**

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], fix *or* set in front.

praefuī, *see* **praesum.**

praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, ——, *intr.* [**metuō,** fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send before *or* in advance. I, **15.**

praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. I, **43;** III, **18.**

praeoccupō, 1, *tr.* [**occupō,** seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [**optō,** wish], wish before; prefer. I, **25.**

praeparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō,** prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, **14.**

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before *or* over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, **54.**

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**rumpō,** break], break off, tear away; **praeruptus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. III, **14.**

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *tr.* [**saepiō,** hedge], hedge *or* block up.

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, **36;** II, **20.**

praescrīptum, -ī, *n.* [**praescrībō,** order], order, dictation, command. I, **36.**

praesēns, -entis, *pres. part. of* **praesum.**

praesentia, -ae, *f.* [**praesēns; praesum,** be present], presence; the present moment; **in praesentiā,** for the present; then. I, **15.**

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *tr.* [**sentiō,** feel], feel beforehand, foresee.

praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. I, **16.**

praesidium, -dī, *n.* [**praesideō,** guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, **8.**

praestō, *adv.*, at hand, ready; *with* **sum,** meet.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand *or* place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, **praestat,** it is better *or* more advisable. I, **2.**

praesum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; **praesēns,** *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. I, **16.**

praeter, *prep. with acc.* [**prae,** before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, **11.**

praetereā, *adv.* [**praeter,** beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, **34;** III, **17.**

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; **praeteritus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun,* the past. I, 20.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, **13.**

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. I, **21.**

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**praetor,** commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, **40.**

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**ūrō,** burn], burn in front *or* at the end.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], forestall, anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, perverse, wrong.

premō, -premere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, **52;** II, **24.**

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. I, **20.**

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. I, **18.**

prex, precis, *f.* (*in sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.*) [**precor,** pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, **16.**

prīdiē, *adv.* [**diēs,** day], on the day before. I, **23.**

prīmipīlus, -ī, *m.* [**prīmus,** first+**pīlus,** a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, **25.**

prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], at first, in the first place. I, **31;** II, **8.**

prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum prīmum,** *or* **ubi prīmum,** as soon as; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible, very soon. I, **25.**

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun,* the first, the front rank *or* ranks; leaders, chiefs; **in prīmīs,** especially. I, **10.**

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj.* [**prīmus,** first+**capiō,** take], *taking the first place;* chief, most prominent, first; *as noun,* chief *or* principal person, leader, chief. I, **7.**

prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.* [**prīnceps,** chief], chief place *or* position; chief authority, leadership. I, **3.**

prior, prius, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun,* those in front. II, **11.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **priustinus** *from* **prior,** former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, **13.**

prius, *adv.* [**prior,** former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam,** *see* **priusquam.**

priusquam *or* **prius . . . quam,** *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. I, **19.**

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, **17.**

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *as noun,* person, individual. I, **5.**

prō, *prep. with abl.* [*cf.* **prae,** before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; *in compounds* (*written* **prō, pro,** *and* **prōd**), for, before, forward, forth. I, **2.**

probō, 1, *tr.* [**probus,** good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, **3.**

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. I, **38;** II, **20.**

Procillus, *see* **Valerius.**

prōclīnō, 1, *tr.* [**clīnō,** incline], bend forward, incline; **prōclīnātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, tottering, critical.

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, *one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province.* III, **20.**

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, **30.**

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [**cubō,** lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, **27.**

prōcūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūrō,** care], care for, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush forward, rush out, charge. I, **52.**

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō+eō,**

go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

prōdesse, *see* **prōsum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**prōdō,** betray], betrayal, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, *m.* [**prōdō,** betray], betrayer, traitor.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down: **memoriā prōditum,** told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with* **cōpiās,** arrange, draw up. I, 48; III, 17.

proelior, 1, *intr.* [**proelium,** battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

proelium,-lī, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficīscor,** set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

prōfectus, *see* **prōficiō.**

profectus, *see* **proficīscor.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bring. App. 81], bring forth *or* out, produce.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.* [*cf.* **prōficiō,** advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**fateor,** confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

prōflīgō, 1, *tr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

prōfuī, *see* **prōsum.**

prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.

prōgredior,-gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II, 10.

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. I, 1.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up, **sē prōicere,** cast one's self; jump. I, 27.

proinde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.

prōlātus, *see* **prōferō.**

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, ——, *intr.*, project, lean out.

prōmiscuē, *adv.*, promiscuously, in common.

prōmittō,-mittere,-mīsī,-missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send forward; let grow.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, 48; II, 31.

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. III, 19.

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [**prōmineō,** project], promontory, headland. III, 12.

prōnē, *adv.* [**prōnus,** inclined], sloping downwards. IV, 17.

prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with* **sententia,** pronounce. IV, 5.

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.

prōpellō, -pellere,-pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.

properō, 1, *intr.* [**properus,** quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.

propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**propinquus,** neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, 4.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**prope,** near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. I, 16.

propius, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope,** near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 9.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō**, place], place *or* put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I, **17.**

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own, characteristic, indicative.

propter, *prep. with acc.* [**prope,** near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I, **9.**

propterea, *adv.* [**propter,** because of], on this account; **propterea quod,** because. I, **1.**

prōpugnātor, -ōris, *m.* [**prōpugnō,** fight for], defender.

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II, **7.**

prōpulī, *see* **prōpellō.**

prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. I, **49.**

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. III, **13.**

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], overthrow. III, **26.**

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow, accompany; pursue; *with* **ōrātiōne,** address. II, **5.**

prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**prōspiciō,** look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, **22.**

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [**speciō,** look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, **23.**

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [**sternō,** stretch out], prostrate, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [**tegō,** cover], cover, protect.

prōterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], terrify, frighten off.

prōtinus, *adv.* [**tenus,** as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, **9.**

prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, **19.**

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, **28.**

prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

prōventus, -ūs, *m.* [**prōveniō,** come forth], a coming forth, result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *tr.* [**videō,** see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, **22.**

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office *of governor of a province;* province, *a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially* the Province, *the southern part of France.* I, **1.**

prōvinciālis, -e, *adj.* [**prōvincia,** province], of a province; of the Province.

prōvīsus, *see* **prōvideō.**

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly *or* rush forth. II, **19.**

proximē, *adv.* [**proximus,** last], last; lately. I, **24.**

proximus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; *with acc.* (App. 122, *b*), next to. I, **1.**

prūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**prūdēns,** foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, **4.**

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā′nĭ-ī). III, **27.**

pūbēs, -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *pl. as noun,* grown men, adults.

pūblicē, *adv.* [**pūblicus,** public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, **16.**

pūblicō, 1, *tr.* [**pūblicus,** public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**populus,** people], of the state *or* people, common, public; *n. as noun,* public, public view; **rēs pūblica,** common weal, state. I, **12.**

pudet, -ēre, -uit, -itum, *tr., imper.*, it shames; *translated as personal,* be ashamed, feel shame.

pudor, -ōris, *m.* [**pudet,** it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, **39.**

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā puerīs,** from childhood. I, **29.**

puerīlis, -e, *adj.* [**puer,** child], childish.

pugna, -ae, *f.* [**pugnō,** fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae,** method of fighting. I, **25.**

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers., as* **pugnātur,** it is fought, *i.e.*, they fight. I, **25.**

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.
Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tī′tŭs pŭl′ō), *a centurion of Cicero's legion.*
pulsus, *see* **pellō.**
pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [**pellō,** strike], stroke. III, 13.
pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.
puppis, -is, *f.*, stern *of a ship.* III, 13.
pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [**pūrus,** clean+**agō,** do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.
putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.
Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pȳrēnaeī montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pĭr″ē-nē′ī), *better,* Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus,** Quintus (kwĭn′tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, 45; II, 2.
quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* **quī**], by which way *or* road; in which place, where. I, 6.
quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [**quadrāgintā,** forty], forty each. IV, 17.
quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, forty. I, 2.
quadringentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, 5.
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *tr. and intr.*, seek *or* look for; inquire, ask, ask *or* inquire about. I, 18.
quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**quaerō,** inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.
quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [**quaerō,** seek], a quaestor (kwĕs′tôr), *one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army.* I, 52; IV, 13.
quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [**quaerō,** seek], gain, acquisition.
quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind *or* nature? I, 21.
quam, (1) *adv.*, (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; *with sup. and with or without* **posse,** as . . . as possible, very; **quam diū,** as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*, than; **prius . . . quam,** before; **post . . . quam, posteā . . . quam,** after. I, 3.
quamvīs, *adv.* [**quam,** as+**vīs,** you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.
quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, 12.
quantopere, *adv.* [**quantus,** how much +**opus,** work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, 5.
quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **quam,** how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum,** *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum,** *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō . . . tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. I, 17.
quantusvīs, -avīs, -umvīs, *adj.* [**quantus,** as great as+**vīs,** you wish], as great as you wish, however great.
quārē, *adv.* [**quī,** which+**rēs,** thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.
quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quattuor,** four], fourth. I, 12.
quasi, *conj.* [**qua(m),** as+**sī,** if], as if, just as if.
quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. I, 12.
quattuordecim (XIV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fourteen. I, 29.
-que, *conj.* (*always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects*), and; **que . . . que,** *or* **que . . . et,** both . . . and. I, 1.
queror, querī, questus sum, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.* (*and see* **quis**), who, which, what; *often implying an antecedent,* he who, those who; *with force of dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem,** wherefore; **quem ad modum,** in what manner, how, as; **quō,** *with comparatives,* the; **quō . . . eō,** the . . . the. I, 1.
quicquam, *see* **quisquam.**
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-

soever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, **31**; III, **4**.
quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse**, how? *e. g.*, **quid Germānī possent**, how strong were the Germans. I, **36**; II, **4**.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *and* **quī-dam, quaedam, quoddam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, **30**; II, **17**.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; **nē . . . quidem**, not even. I, **16**.
quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, repose.
quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.
quīn, *conj.* [**quī**, who *or* how+**ne**, *negative*], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but that, that, from, to; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, **3**.
quīnam, *see* **quisnam**.
quīncūnx, -uncis, *m.*, quincunx, *an arrangement like the five spots on a die.*
quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**quīnque**, five+**decem**, ten], fifteen. I, **15**.
quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five+**centum**, hundred], five hundred. **I, 15**.
quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five], five each, five at a time, five. **I, 15**.
quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. I, **41**; II, **4**.
quīnque (V), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, five. **I, 10**.
quīntus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five], fifth. I, **6**.
quis, quid, *and* **quī, quae, quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, *especially after* **sī, nisi, nē, num**, anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. **I, 7**.
quisnam, quidnam, *and* **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam**, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 *and a*), who? which? what? who then? what pray? II, **30**.
quispiam, quidpiam, *and* **quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any one, any.
quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person *or* thing. I, **19**.
quisque, quidque, *and* **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. I, **5**.
quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, *a*), whoever, whatever. II, **17**.
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, *and* **quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [**quī**, who+**vīs**, you wish], whom *or* what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, **31**.
quō, *adv.* [*old dat. case form of* **quī**, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. **I, 48**; II, **8**.
quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of* **quī**, who, which], in order that, so that, that. I, **8**.
quoad, *adv.* [**quō**, whither+**ad**, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, **11**.
quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of* **quī**, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod sī**, but if; **propterea quod**, because. I, **1**.
quōminus, *conj.* [**quō**, so that+**minus**, not], so that not, that not; from. I, **31**; IV, **22**.
quoniam, *conj.* [**quom = cum**, since+**iam**, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. I, **35**.
quoque, *conj.*, *following the word emphasized*, also, too, likewise. I, **1**.
quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. III, **23**.
quot, *adj.*, *indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, **29**.
quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot**, as many as+**annus**, year], every year, yearly. I, **36**; IV, **1**.
quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot**, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. **I, 43**.

R

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; *in pl. with* **montis** *or* **collis,** foot, base. I, **38.**

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, *tr.*, scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon *with four wheels.* I, **26.**

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, **17.**

rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**rapidus,** swift], swiftness. IV, **17.**

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [**rapiō,** seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, **15.**

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, **12.**

rāsus, *see* **rādō.**

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**reor,** reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. I, **28.**

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. I, **8.**

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw′ra-sī). I, **5.**

re- *and* **red-,** *inseparable prefixes*, again, back, un-, re-.

rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.* [**rebellō,** renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, **10.**

Rebilus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Canīnius.**

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**re-**+**cēdō,** go], go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, **14.**

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, inspect, review.

receptāculum, -ī, *n.* [**recipiō,** receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, *see* **recipiō.**

receptus, -ūs, *m.* [**recipiō,** receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, **33.**

recessus, -ūs, *m.* [**recēdō,** go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**re-**+**capiō,** take], take *or* get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender *or* submission; admit of, allow; *with* **sē,** withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, **5.**

recitō, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.

reclīnō, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**clīnō,** incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rēctē, *adv.* [**rēctus,** straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**regō,** keep straight], straight.

recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, **8.**

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; *with* **perīculum,** shrink from. I, **31;** III, **22.**

redāctus, *see* **redigō.**

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**red-**+**dō,** give], give back, return, restore; give *something due;* make *or* cause to be, render. I, **35;** II, **5.**

redēmptus, *see* **redimō.**

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**red-**+**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, **29.**

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**red-**+**agō,** put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, **45;** II, **14.**

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**red-**+**emō,** buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, **18.**

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [**red-**+**integrō,** make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, **25.**

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**redeō,** return], return. I, **5.**

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [**redeō,** return], returning, return. IV, **30.**

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rĕd′ō-nēz). II, **34.**

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**re-**+**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, **28.**

refectus, *see* **reficiō.**

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [**re-**+**ferō,** bear. App. 81], bear, carry *or* bring back, report; **pedem referre,** go back, retreat; **grātiam referre,** show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, **25.**

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**re-+faciō,** make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with* **sē,** refresh one's self, rest. III, 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**re-+frangō,** break], break in *or* open; break, diminish. II, 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**re-+fugiō**], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēgīnus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Antistius.**

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō,** keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; **ē regione,** *with gen.*, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**rēx,** king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, *intr.* [**rēgnum,** royal power], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx,** king], kingly *or* royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, 2.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**re-+iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* drive back, repel; cast down *or* off; drive off *or* out. I, 24.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, ——, *intr.* [**re-+languēscō,** become weak], become weak *or* enfeebled. II, 15.

relātus, *see* **referō.**

relēgō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+lēgō,** depute], send away; remove.

relictus, -a, -um, *see* **relinquō.**

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion; *in pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *tr.* [**re-+linquō,** leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, 9.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**relinquō,** leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. I, 1.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**re-+maneō,** remain], stay *or* remain behind, remain. I, 39; IV, 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [*cf.* **rēmus,** oar], oarsman, rower. III, 9.

rēmigō, 1, *intr.* [**rēmex,** rower], row.

remigrō, 1, *intr.* [**re-+migrō,** move], move back, return. IV, 4.

reminīscor, -ī, *intr.* [**mēns,** mind], call to mind, remember. I, 13.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**re-+mittō,** send], send *or* despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; **remissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. I, 43; II, 15.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, ——, ——, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**re-+moveō,** move], move back *or* away, remove, withdraw; **remōtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. I, 19.

remūneror, 1, *tr.* [**re-+mūneror,** present], repay, reward. I, 44.

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. III, 13.

Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to *or* one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, **Rēmī,** *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rē′mī). II, 3.

rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, deerskin.

renovō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+novus,** new], renew. III, 2.

renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+nūntius,** message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [**re-+pellō,** beat, drive], beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8.

repente, *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52; II, 33.

repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *tr.* [**re-+pariō,** procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, 18.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *tr.* **re-+petō,** seek], seek *or* ask again, demand back; *with* **poenās,** exact, inflict. I, 30.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* **re-+pleō,** fill], fill again, replenish, supply.

reportō, 1, *tr.* [**re-+portō,** carry], carry *or* bring back, convey. IV, 29.

reposcō, -poscere, ——, ——, *tr.* [**re-+**

poscō, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.
reppulī, *see* **repellō**.
repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**praesēns**, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.
reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**re-**+**prehendō** (=**prēndō**), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. I, 20.
reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**re-**+**premō**, press], press *or* keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.
repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, 40.
repugnō, 1, *intr.* [**re-**+**pugnō**, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.
repulsus, *see* **repellō**.
requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**re-**+**quaerō**, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.
rēs, reī, *f.*, *of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context;* thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies; **rēs mīlitāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pūblica**, state; **rēs āctae**, deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem**, *see* **quī** *and* **quis**. I, 2.
rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**re-**+**scindō**, cleave], cut away *or* down, break down, destroy. I, 7.
rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**re-**+**scīscō**, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.
rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**re-**+**scrībō**, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.
reservō, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**servō**, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.
resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, ——, *intr.* [**re-**+**sedeō**, sit], sit back; remain.
resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, ——, *intr.* [**re-**+**sīdō** sit down], settle, become calm.
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**re-**+**sistō**, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.
respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**re-**+**speciō**, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**spondeō**, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.
respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [**respondeō**, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.
respuō, -spuere, -spuī, ——, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, 42.
restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, extinguish.
restitī, *see* **resistō**.
restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**re-**+**statuō**, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.
retineō, 2, *tr.* [**re-**+**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.
retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**re-**+**trahō**, drag], drag back; bring back.
rettulī, *see* **referō**.
revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**re-**+**vellō**, pluck], pluck *or* tear away, pull out. I, 52.
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr.*, *used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum**, *intr.*, *used in the tenses formed on the present stem* [**re-**+**vertō**, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.
revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, *tr.* [**re-**+**vinciō**, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.
revocō, 1, *tr.* [**re-**+**vocō**, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. I, 31; II, 4.
Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCfgh), the *river* Rhenus (rē′nŭs), *better* the Rhine. I, 1.
Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the *river* Rhodanus (rŏd′a-nŭs), *better* the Rhone. I, 1.
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a stream*). I, 6.
rīvus, -ī, *m.*, small stream, brook.
rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, 13.
rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, 7.
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, 31.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Rōma,** Rome], Roman; *as noun*, a Roman. I, **3.**

Rōscius, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū′-shyŭs rŏsh′yŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [**rōdō,** gnaw, consume], beak *of a bird;* beak or prow *of a ship.* III, **13.**

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, **33.**

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. II, **17.**

Rūfus, -ī, *m.* *See* **Sulpicius.**

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, **1.**

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, **29.**

rūrsus, *adv.* [*for* **reversus,** *from* **revertō,** turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, **25.**

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni, (ru̥-tē′nī). I, **45.**

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius Rutilus (mär′kŭs sĕm-prō′nĭ-ŭs ru̥′tĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

S.

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwĭn′tŭs tĭ-tū′rĭ-ŭs sa̤-bī′nŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* II, **5.**

Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the *river* Sabis (sā′-bĭs). II, **16.**

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* [**sacer,** sacred], priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**sacrō, sacer,** sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -cī, *n.* [**sacer,** sacred+**faciō,** make], sacrifice.

saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō,** often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius,** oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, **1.**

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, **17.**

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum, *intr.* [**saevus,** raging], rage; be fierce. III, **13.**

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, **25.**

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [**sagitta,** an arrow], bowman, archer. II, **7.**

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine, glade.

salūs, salūtis, *f.* [**salvus,** safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). I, **27.**

Samarobrīva, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samarobriva (săm″a̤-rō-brī′va̤).

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.* [*cf.* **sacer,** sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. I, **30;** III, **9.**

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**sānus,** sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, **42.**

sānō, 1, *tr.* [**sānus,** sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santonī, -ōrum, *or* **Santonēs, -um,** *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni (săn′tō-nī), *or* Santones (săn′tō-nēz). I, **10.**

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible, sane.

sānxī, *see* **sanciō.**

sapiō, -ere, -īvī, ——, *intr.*, taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*of individual soldiers, which they carried*). I, **24.**

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum, *tr.*, make good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. III, **18.**

satis, *adv., and indecl. adj. and noun,* (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, **3.**

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [**satis,** enough+**faciō,** make], make *or* do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, **14.**

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**satisfaciō,** give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, **41.**

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. III, **4.**

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. II, **29.**

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [**scandō,** climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, *m.* (Aef), the *river* Scaldis (skăl′dĭs) *or* Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, **26.**

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**scelerō,** pollute], accursed, infamous; *as noun,* criminal.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. I, 14.

scienter, *adv.* [**sciō**, know], knowingly, skillfully.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciō**, know], knowledge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. I, 20.

scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion, *a military engine for hurling missiles.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *tr.*, write, record *or* make mention *in writing.* II, 29.

scrobis, -is, *m. and f.*, pit.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* (2½×4 *ft.*), *made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim.* I, 25.

sē- *and* **sēd-,** *inseparable prefix*, apart, away.

sē, *see* **suī.**

sēbum, -ī, *n.*, tallow.

secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *tr.*, cut, reap.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [**sēcernō**, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I, 18.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**secō**, cut], cutting; dividing *of captured goods;* booty. II, 33.

sector, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **sequor**, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [**secō**, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor**, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I, 33; II, 18.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor**, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; **secundō flūmine,** down the river. I, 14.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe; Roman authority, *because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.*

secūtus, *see* **sequor.**

sēd-, *see* **sē-.**

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet (*a stronger adversative than* **autem** *or* **at**). I, 12.

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, sixteen. I, 8.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō**, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; IV, 4.

sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**sēd-+eō**, go], insurrection, sedition.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sēditiō**, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, 17.

Sedulius, -lī, *m.*, Sedulius (sē-dū′lĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Lemovices.*

Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū′nī). III, 1.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū′shyī). I, 51.

seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, field *of grain.*

Segnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Segni (sĕg′nī).

Segontiācī, -ōrum, *m.* (Acd), the Segontiaci (sē-gŏn″shĭ-ā′sī or sĕg″ŏn-shĭ-ā′sī).

Segovax, -actis, *m.*, Segovax (sĕg′ō-văks), *a king of Kent.*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sĕg″ū-shĭ-ā′vī). I, 10.

semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum,** repeatedly; **ut semel,** as soon as. I, 31.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [**sēmen**, seed], sowing. I, 3.

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, narrow path, by-way, foot-path.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. I, 18.

Semprōnius, -nī, *m.*, *see* **Rutilus.**

senātor, -ōris, *m.* [**senex**, old], elder; senator. II, 28.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [**senex**, old], *a body of old men;* senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* I, 3.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *as noun,* old man. I, 29.

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. I, 15.

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sĕn′ō-nēz). II, 2.

sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō**, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 45; II, 10.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; expe-

rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, **18**.

sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. II, **17**.

sēparātim, *adv.* [**sēparō**, separate], separately, privately. I, **19**.

sēparō, 1, *tr.* [**sē-**+**parō**, prepare], prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. IV, **1**.

septem (VII), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, seven. II, **4**.

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [**septem**, seven +**triōnēs**, plough oxen], *the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the North. I, **1**.

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**septem**, seven], seventh. I, **10**.

septingentī, -ae, -a (DCC), *card. num. adj.* [**septem**, seven], seven hundred.

septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**septem**, seven], seventy. IV, **12**.

sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, **26**.

Sēquana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the *river* Sequana (sĕk′wa-na), *better*, Seine. I, **1**.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, **Sēquanī** (Cfg), the Sequani (sĕk′wa-nī). I, **1**.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow *in point of time; with* **poena,** be inflicted; **fidem sequī,** seek the protection. I, **4**.

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.

Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwĭn′tŭs sẽr-tō′rĭ-ŭs), *a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in* 72 *B.C.* III, **23**.

servīlis, -e, *adj.* [**servus**, a slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. I, **40**.

serviō, 4, *intr.* [**servus**, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, **5**.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus**, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, **11**.

Servius, -vī, *m.*, Servius (sẽr′vĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* III, **1**.

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, **33**.

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. I, **27**.

sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.*, [**sex**, six], six hundred. I, **38**; II, **15**.

sēsē, *see* **suī**.

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**sēsqui**, one and a half+**pēs**, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, **17**.

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, **49**; IV, **17**.

seu, *see* **sīve**.

sevēritās,-tātis, *f.*, sternness, severity.

sēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**sē-**+**vocō**, call], call aside *or* apart.

sex (VI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, six. I, **27**.

sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**sex**, six], sixty. II, **4**.

Sextius, -tī, *m.* (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs sĕks′tĭ-ŭs băk′ū-lŭs), *a centurion in Caesar's army.* II, **25**. (2) Titus Sextius (tī′tŭs sĕks′tĭ-us), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether *or* if; whether; **quod sī,** but if, now if. I, **7**.

sibi, *see* **suī**.

Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sĭb″ū-sā′tēz). III, **27**.

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; **sīc . . . ut,** so . . . that; so . . . as. I, **38**; II, **4**.

siccitās, -tātis, *f.* [**siccus**, dry], drought, dryness. IV, **38**.

sīcut *or* **sīcutī,** *adv.* [**sīc**, so+**ut(ī)**, as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, **44**.

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation.

signifer, -erī, *m.* [**signum**, standard+**ferō**, bear], standard-bearer. II, **25**.

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō**, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, **33**.

significō, 1, *tr.* [**signum**, sign+**faciō**, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, **7**.

signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; **ab signīs discēdere,**

withdraw from the ranks; **signa īnferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa īnferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance *on the march;* direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face *or* wheel about; **ad signa convenīre**, join the army. I, **25**.
Sīlānus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mär′-kŭs sī-lā′nŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence, stillness.
Sīlius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī′tŭs sĭl′ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7**.
silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. I, **12**.
silvestris, -e, *adj.* [**silva**, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood *or* forest. II, **18**.
similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, **13**.
similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**similis**, like], likeness, resemblance.
simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, **19**.
simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [**simulō**, make like], image, statue.
simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō**, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, **40**; IV, **13**.
simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis**, like], make like; pretend. I, **44**; IV, **4**.
simultās, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.
sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, **13**.
sincērē, *adv.* [**sincērus**, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, **7**.
singillātim, *adv.* [**singulī**, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, **2**.
singulāris, -e, *adj.* [**singulī**, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, **24**.
singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; **in annōs singulōs**, annually. I, **6**.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand; **sub sinistrā**, on the left. I, **25**.
sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [**sinister**, left+**versus**, *from* **vertō**, turn], to the left.
situs, -ūs, *m.* [**sinō**, put down], situation, site, position. III, **12**.
sīve *and* **seu**, *conj.* [**sī**, if+**ve**, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sīve . . . sīve**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or, I, **12**.
socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, **12**.
societās, -tātis, *f.* [**socius**, ally], alliance.
socius, -cī, *m.* [*cf.* **sequor**, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, **5**.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun *or* west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun *or* east. I, **1**.
sōlācium, -cī, *n.* [**sōlor**, console], comfort, solace.
soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. III, **22**.
soleō, solēre, solitus sum (App. **74**), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.
sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**sōlus**, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, **18**.
sollertia, -ae, *f.* [**sollers**, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.
sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, **1**.
sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**sollicitus**, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.
solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, **11**.
sōlum, *adv.* [**sōlus**, alone], only, merely. I, **12**.
sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus** (App. **32**), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, **18**.
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, **23**.
sonitus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* **sonō**, sound], sound, din.
sonus, -ī, *m.* [*cf.* **sonō**, sound], sound.
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, **18**.
sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting *or* drawing of lots. I, **50**.
Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō″shĭ-ā′tēz). III, **20**.
spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length *of space;* period *or* length *of time, hence* time, opportunity. I, **7**.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**speciō,** see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretence. I, **51;** II, **31.**

spectō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **speciō,** see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, **1.**

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [**speculor,** spy], spy, scout. II, **11.**

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**speculātor,** spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, **26.**

speculor, 1, *intr.* [*cf.* **speciō,** look], spy. I, **47.**

spērō, 1, *tr.* [**spēs,** hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, **3.**

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. I, **5.**

spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, **33;** II, **4.**

spoliō, 1, *tr.*, strip, despoil.

spontis, *gen.* and **sponte,** *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, **spōns**), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. I, **9.**

stabiliō, 4, *tr.* [**stabilis,** firm], make firm, fix.

stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**stabilis,** firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, **33.**

statim, *adv.* [**stō,** stand], *as one stands, hence,* forthwith, immediately, at once. I, **53;** II, **11.**

statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**stō,** stand], standing *or* stationing; a military post *or* station; sentries, pickets, outposts; **in statiōne esse,** be on guard. II, **18.**

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [**status,** position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, **11.**

statūra, -ae, *f.* [**status; stō,** stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, **30.**

status, -ūs, *m.* [**stō,** stand], standing, condition, status; position.

stimulus, -ī, *m.*, goad; *stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**stīpendium,** tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *pl. as noun,* tributaries. I, **30.**

stīpendium, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. I, **36.**

stīpes, -itis, *m.*, log, trunk; stake.

stirps, -pis, *m.*, stem, stock; race.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *intr.*, stand; abide by.

strāmentum, -ī, *n.*, covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.

strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [**strepō,** make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, **11.**

studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, be eager *or* zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. I, **9.**

studiōsē, *adv.* [**studiōsus,** eager], eagerly, zealously.

studium, -dī, *n.* [**studeō,** be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, **19.**

stultitia, -ae, *f.* [**stultus,** foolish], foolishness, folly.

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion,* under, beneath; up to: (b) *of time,* just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position,* under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot *or* base of: (b) *of time,* during, within: *in compounds,* **sub** *or* **subs,** under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, **7.**

subāctus, *see* **subigō.**

subdolus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dolus,** deceit], subtle, crafty.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw; *with* **nāvēs,** haul up, beach. I, **22.**

subductiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**subdūcō,** beach], beaching.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, **5.**

subesse, *see* **subsum.**

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, **26.**

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** lead, drive], subdue, reduce.

subitō, *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, **39;** II, **19.**

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**subeō,** come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, **7.**

sublātus, *see* **tollō.**

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [**levō,** lift], lift from beneath, lift *or* raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. **I, 16.**

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. IV, **17.**

subluō, -luere, ——, **-lūtum,** wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [**ministrō,** wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, **40;** III, **25.**

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, **6.**

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, **25.**

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], cause to fall *from beneath,* overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, **6.**

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow closely, follow up *or* on, follow. II, **11.**

subsidium,-dī, *n.* [**subsideō,** sit near *or* in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, **52;** II, **6.**

subsīdo, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō,** sit], sit down, remain.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, **15.**

subsum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. I, **25.**

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* carry off *from beneath;* take away, withdraw. I, **44.**

subvectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**subvehō,** convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], bring *or* carry up; convey. **I, 16.**

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come *or* go to help, aid, succor.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub+cēdō,** go], go *or* come under; come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, **24.**

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candeō,** shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**sub+caedō,** cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, **19.**

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [*cf.* **cubō,** lie], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *in.* [**sub+currō,** run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun,* **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē′bī), *a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. I, **37;** IV, **1.**

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swĕs′′ĭ-ō′nēz). II, **3.**

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.* [**sub+faciō,** make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* **sub+fodiō,** dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, **12.**

suffrāgium, -gī, *n.*, vote, ballot.

Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-găm′brī). IV, **16.**

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

suī, sibi, sē, *or* **sēsē,** *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; **inter sē,** *see* **inter** *and* App. 166. **I, 1.**

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū′shyŭs sŭl′a), *the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from* 138 B.C. *to* 78 B.C. I, **21.**

Sulpicius, -cī, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh′yŭs ru′fŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* IV, **22.**

sum, esse, fuī, (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate,* be the mark *or* sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor,* have. **I, 1.**

summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus,** highest], the

main thing *or* point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperī**, the chief command. I, 29.
summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **superus**, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, 16.
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.*, [**sub+emō**, take], take away, take; assume; *with* **supplicium**, inflict; *with* **labor**, spend. I, 7.
sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sūmptus**, expense], expensive.
sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō**, spend], expense. I, 18.
sūmptus, *see* **sūmō.**
super, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.
superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. I, 31.
superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus**, high. App. 44], (1) *of place*, upper, higher, superior; (2) *of time*, previous, earlier, former. I, 10.
superō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super**, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre**, survive. I, 17.
supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, 8.
supersum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 77], be over *or* above; be left, remain, survive. I, 23.
superus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**super**, above], over, above; *comp.*, *see* **superior**; *sup.*, *see* **summus.**
suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *intr.* [**sub+petō**, seek, obtain], be near *or* at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, 3.
supplēmentum, -ī, *n.* [**suppleō**, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.
supplex, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. II, 28.
supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**supplex**, suppliant], public prayer *to the gods in thanksgiving for successes*, *hence* thanksgiving. II, 35.
suppliciter, *adv.* [**supplex**, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, 27.
supplicium, -cī, *n.* [**sub+plicō**, bend], *a bending over to receive punishment;* punishment, death. I, 19.
supportō, 1, *tr.* [**sub+portō**, carry], carry *or* bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, 39, III, 3.
suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. II, 1.
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**su(b)s+capiō**, take], take *or* lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self, begin, engage in. I, 3.
suspectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**suspiciō**, suspect], suspected, distrusted.
suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**suspicor**, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, 4.
suspicor, 1, *tr.* [**suspiciō**, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I, 44; IV, 6.
sustentō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **sustineō**, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, 6.
sustineō, 2, *tr. and intr.* [**su(b)s+teneō**, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, 24.
sustulī, *see* **tollō.**
suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject* (App. 163, 164, 165, 167,a), [**suī**, himself, herself, etc.], of *or* belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua,** *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; **suī,** *m. pl. as noun*, their men (*friends or countrymen*). I, 1.

T.

T. *abbr. for* **Titus** (tī′tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, 10.
tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. I, 39.
tabula, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. I, 29.
tabulātum, -ī, *n.* [*cf.* **tabula**, board], flooring *of boards;* story.
taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep

silent, pass over in silence; **tacitus,** *pf. part. as adj*, silent. I, **17.**

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. I, **14.**

tamen, *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, **7.**

Tamesis, -is, *m.* (Acd), the *river* Tamesis (tăm′ē-sĭs), *better*, the Thames.

tametsī, *conj.* [**tamen,** however+**etsī,** even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, **30.**

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as* **quid tandem,** what, pray? what then? I, **25.**

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, *tr.*, touch, border on.

tantopere, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great+**opus,** work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, **31.**

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **tantus,** so great], so small *or* little, so diminutive; trifling. II, **30.**

tantum, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, **5.**

tantundem, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great], so much *or* so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **tam,** so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; **quantō . . . tantō,** *with comparatives, see* **quantō.** I, **15.**

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tär-bĕl′ī). III, **27.**

tardē, *adv.* [**tardus,** slow], slowly; *comp.* **tardius,** too slowly. IV, **23.**

tardō, 1, *tr.* [**tardus,** slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, **25.**

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, **25.**

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tăr″ū-sā′tēz). III, **23.**

Tasgetius, -tī, *m.*, Tasgetius (tăs-jē′-shyŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, Taximagulus (tăk″-sĭ-măg′ū-lŭs), *a king of Kent.*

taxus, -ī, *f.*, yew-tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.* (Ede), the Tectosages (tĕk-tŏs′a-jēz).

tēctum, -ī, *n.* [**tegō,** cover], covering, roof; house. I, **36.**

tēctus, *see* **tegō.**

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [**tegō,** cover], a covering. II, **21.**

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, *a weapon for fighting at a distance*, missile, dart, javelin. I, **8.**

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**temerē,** rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, **31.**

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, **40;** IV, **20.**

temeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**temerē,** rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon*). IV, **33.**

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [**temperō,** control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, **19.**

temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain *or* control one's self, refrain; **temperātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, **7.**

tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [**tempus,** time], time, season; weather, *usually* bad weather, storm, tempest. III, **12.**

temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, **14.**

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division *or* section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; **omnī tempore,** always; **in reliquum tempus,** for the future; **ūnō tempore,** at the same time, at once. I, **3.**

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tĕngk′tē-rī). IV, **1.**

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum *or* **tēnsum,** *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. II, **13.**

tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre,** remain; **memoriā tenēre,** remember. I, **7.**

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, **17.**

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, *f.* [**tenuis,** thin], thinness, poverty.

tenuiter, *adv.* [**tenuis,** thin], thinly. III, **13.**

ter, *num. adv.* [*cf.* **trēs,** three], three times. I, **53.**

teres, -etis, rounded; tapering.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** to flee; **post tergum** *or* **ab tergō,** in the rear. I, **53;** III, **19.**

ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], three each, three apiece. III, **15.**

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) *and* **orbis terrārum,** the world. I, **32;** III, **15.**

Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī′tŭs tĕr″a-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**terra,** earth], of earth. I, **43.**

terreō, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

territō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **terreō,** frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [**terreō,** frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, **12.**

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], third. I, **1.**

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], will. I, **39.**

testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, **44.**

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. I, **14.**

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a testudo, *a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads.* II, **6.**

Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, Teutomatus (tū-tŏm′a-tŭs), *son of Ollovico, king of the Nitiobroges; later king himself.*

Teutonī, -ōrum *or* **Teutonēs, -um,** *m.*, the Teutoni (tū′tō-nī) *or* Teutones (tū′tō-nēz). I, **33;** II, **4.**

tēxī, *see* **tegō.**

tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, **17.**

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun,* **Tigurīnī** (Cg), the Tigurini (tĭg″u-rī′nī). I, **12.**

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; **nihil timēre,** have no fear. I, **14.**

timidē, *adv.* [**timidus,** fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, **25.**

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō,** fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, **39.**

timor, -ōris, *m.* [**timeō,** fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, **22.**

Titūrius, -rī, *m.*, *see* **Sabīnus.**

tolerō. 1, *tr.* [*cf.* **tollō,** lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with* **famem,** appease, alleviate. I, **28.**

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; **sublātus,** *pf. part as adj.*, elated. I, **5.**

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō′sa), *now* Toulouse. III, **20.**

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tŏl″ō-sā′tēz), *the people of Tolosa.* I, **10.**

tormentum, -ī, *n.* [**torqueō,** twist], means of twisting; an engine *for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista;* windlass, hoist; device for torturing, *hence*, torment, torture. II, **8.**

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, **10.**

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many], just as many, the same number. I, **48;** II, **4.**

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, **2.**

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, **29.**

tractus, *see* **trahō.**

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**trāns** +**dō,** give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, **27.**

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**trāns**+**dūcō,** lead], lead across, lead

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, **11.**

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a javelin *or* dart *used by the Gauls.* I, **26.**

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, **53.**

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**trāns + iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**trāiciō,** hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV, **21.**

trānō, 1, *intr.* [**trāns+nō,** swim], swim across. I, **53.**

tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, **15.**

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over; *in compounds,* **trāns** *or* **trā,** across, over, through. I, **1.**

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alpēs,** the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb over; board. III, **15.**

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go across *or* over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; *of time,* pass by. I, **5.**

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], carry *or* bring over, transfer.

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], thrust *or* pierce through, transfix. I, **25.**

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**fodiō,** dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**gradior,** step], step over, cross. II, **19.**

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.* [**trānseō,** go across], crossing, passage.

trānslātus, *see* **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare,** sea], across the sea, foreign.

trānsmissus, -ūs, *m.* [**trānsmittō,** send across], sending across; passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send across.

trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry across *or* over, bring over, convey transport. I, **37;** IV, **16.**

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond *or* across the Rhine; *pl. as noun,* **Trānsrhēnānī,** the people across the Rhine. IV, **16.**

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam, thwart. III, **13.**

trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**trānsvertō,** turn across], turned across, cross. II, **8.**

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär′kŭs trē′bĭ-ŭs găl′ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

Trebōnius, -nī, *m.* (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā′yŭs trē-bō′nĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* (2) Gaius Trebonius, *a Roman knight.*

trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [**trēs,** three+**centum,** hundred], three hundred. IV, **37.**

trepidō, 1, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; *pass.*, be disturbed *or* in confusion.

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium (III),** *card. num. adj.*, three. I, **1.**

Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv′ē-rī). I, **37;** II, **24.**

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb′ō-sī). I, **51;** IV, **10.**

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs;* **tribūnus mīlitum** *or* **mīlitāris,** a military tribune. I, **39;** II, **26.**

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribus, a** tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, **13.**

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [**tribuō,** render, pay], tribute, tax.

trīduum, -ī, *n.* [**trēs,** three+**diēs,** day], three days. I, **26.**

triennium, -nī, *n.* [**trēs,** three+**annus,** year], three years. IV, **4.**

trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**trēs,** three], thirty. I, **26.**

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, **53.**

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trĭn″ō-văn′tēz).

tripertītō, *adv.* [**trēs**, three+**partior**, divide], in three parts *or* divisions.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [**trēs**, three+**plicō**, fold], three-fold, triple. I, **24**.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, **32**.

trīstitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, **32**.

Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Valerius**.

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk *of trees.* IV, **17**.

tū, tuī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, **20**.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, **8**.

tulī, *see* **ferō**.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lĭn′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* I, **5**.

Tullius, -lī, *m.*, *see* **Cicerō**.

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Volcācius**.

tum, *adv.*, then, at this *or* that time; then, secondly; then, also; **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, **17**.

tumultuor, 1, *intr.* [**tumultus**, disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, *adv.* [**tumultus**, disorder], with confusion *or* noise.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [**tumeō**, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, **40**; II, **11**.

tumulus, -ī, *m.* [**tumeō**, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, **43**; II, **27**.

turma, -ae, *f.*, troop *or* squadron *of about thirty cavalrymen.* IV, **33**.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū′-rō-nī). II, **35**.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, **33**; IV, **2**.

turpiter, *adv.* [**turpis**, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**turpis**, disgraceful], disgrace. II, **27**.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. II, **12**.

tūtō, *adv.* [**tūtus**, safe], safely, securely. III, **13**.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**tueor**, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, **5**.

tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [**tū**, you], your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv.* (1) *of place*, in which place, where; (2) *of time*, when, whenever; as soon as; **ubi prīmum**, as soon as. I, **5**.

Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū′bi-ī). I, **54**; IV, **3**.

ubīque, *adv.* [**ubi**, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, **16**.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, **12**.

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; *as noun*, any one, anybody. I, **7**.

ulterior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* [**ultrā**, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, **7**.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [**ultrā**, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant *or* remote; *as noun*, those in the rear. III, **27**.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, **48**.

ultrō, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, **42**; III, **27**.

ultus, *see* **ulcīscor**.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam**, and never, never. I, **41**; III, **28**.

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus**, one], (1) *of place*, together, along with, in one place. (2) *of time*, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, **5**.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, **28**.

ūndecim (XI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**ūnus**, one+**decem**, ten], eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**ūndecim**, eleven], eleventh. II, **23**.

ūndēvīgintī, *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**ūnus**, one+**dē**, from+**vīgintī**, twenty], nineteen. I, **8**.

undique, *adv.* [**unde**, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, **2**.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūnus**, one+

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all *as a mass*. II, 33.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole *or* only one. I, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**urbs**, city], of *or* in the city.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; *especially*, the city, *Rome*. I, 7.

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, ——, *tr.*, press, press hard. II, 25.

ūrus, -ī, *m.*, wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sĭp′-ē-tēz). IV, 1.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūsitor**, use often], ordinary, familiar.

usque, *adv.* (1) *of place*, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with* **ad**, until. I, 50; III, 15.

ūsus, *see* **ūtor**.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor**, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est**, there is need; **ūsuī esse** *or* **ex ūsū esse**, be of advantage *or* service; **ūsū venīre**, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

ut *and* **utī**, *adv. and conj.*, (1) *as interrog. adv.*, how? (2) *as rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; insomuch as; as if: (3) *as conj.* (a) *with ind.*, when, after; (b) *with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not. I, 2.

uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* **utrīus** (App. 32), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one *or* which *of two;* (2) *as rel.*, the one who, *of two*, whichever. I, 12.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [**uter**, which *of two*], each *of two*, either *of two;* both. I, 34; II, 8.

utī, *see* **ut**.

ūti, *see* **ūtor**.

ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**ūtor**, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**ūtilis**, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus**, *pf. part. often translated* with. I, 5.

utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque**, each *of two*], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

utrum, *conj.* [**uter**, which *of two*], whether; **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. I, 18.

V.

V, *sign for* **quīnque**, five.

Vacalus, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (văk′-a̤-lŭs) *river*, *now* the Waal. IV, 10.

vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vacō**, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. I, 6.

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagus**, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

valeō, 2, *intr.*, be strong *or* vigorous, have weight, influence *or* strength; **plūrimum valēre**, be very powerful. I, 17.

Valerius, -rī, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā′yŭs va̤-lē′rĭ-ŭs tru̥-sĭl′-ŭs), *a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar*. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (*see* (1) flăk′ŭs), *Governor of Gaul* 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (*see* (1) ka̤-bū′rŭs), *a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship*. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus (*see* (1) prō-sĭl′ŭs), *son of No. 3*. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū′shyŭs va̤-lē′rĭ-ŭs prĕk″ō-nī′-nŭs), *a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time*. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (*see* (1) dŏm″nō-taw′-rŭs), *son of No. 3*.

Valetiācus, -ī, *m.*, Valetiacus (văl″ē-shĭ-ā′kŭs), *a nobleman of the Haedui*.

valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**valeō**, be strong], health, poor health.

vallēs, -is, *f.*, vale, valley. III, 1.

vāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus**, palisade], wall

or rampart *of earth set with palisades;* entrenchments, earthworks. I, **26.**

vāllus, -ī, *m.*, stake; palisade.

Vangionēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (văn-jī′ō-nēz). I, **51.**

varietās, -tātis, *f.* [**varius,** diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. II, **22.**

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [**vāstus,** waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, **11.**

vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. III, **8.**

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, **50.**

-ve, *conj.*, *enclitic*=**vel,** or.

vectīgal, -ālis, *n.* [**vectīgālis,** tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, **18.**

vectīgālis, -e, *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], paying revenue *or* tribute; tributary. III, **8.**

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], for carrying; **vectōria nāvis,** a transport.

vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, **37;** III, **22.**

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, carry; bring along. I, **43.**

vel, *conj. and adv.* (1) *as conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or; (2) *as adv.*, even. I, **6.**

Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwĭn′tŭs vē-lā′-nĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē″lĭ-ō-kăs′ēz). II, **4.**

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vĕ-law″nō-dū′nŭm *or* vĕl″aw-nō-dū′nŭm), *a town of the Senones.*

Vellāviī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavii (vĕ-lā′vĭ-ī).

vēlōcitās, -tātis, *f.* [**vēlōx,** swift], swiftness, speed.

vēlōciter, *adv.* [**vēlōx,** swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, **48.**

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, **13.**

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. I, **32.**

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**vēnor,** hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, **1.**

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.* [**vēnor,** hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale+**dō,** give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, **33.**

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nĕl′ī). II, **34.**

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vĕn′ē-tī). II, **34.**

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē′shya), *the country of the Veneti.* III, **9.**

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetian. III, **18.**

venia, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venīre,** have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, *as* **ventum est,** they came, it came, etc. I, **8.**

ventitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, **3.**

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, **13.**

vēr, vēris, *n.*, the spring.

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vĕr′a-grī). III, **1.**

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vĕr-bĭj-ē-nŭs), *a canton of the Helvetii.* I, **27.**

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; **verba facere,** plead. I, **20.**

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vĕr-kăs″ĭ-vē-law′nŭs).

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vĕr″-sĭn-jĕt′ō-rĭks), *an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, **19.**

vergō, -ere, ——, ——, *intr.*, look *or* lie towards, be situated; slope. I, **1.**

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vĕr′-gō-brĕt), *the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.* I, **16.**

veritus, *see* **vereor.**

vērō, *adv.* [**vērus,** true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, **32;** II, **2.**

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as*

deponent, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, **48**; II, **1**.
versus, *adv*. [**vertō**, turn], turned to; toward.
versus, -ūs, *m*. [**vertō**, turn], turning; verse.
Verticō, -ōnis, *m*., Vertico (vĕr′tĭ-kō), *one of the Nervii*.
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr*., turn, turn around; **terga vertere**, flee. I, **53**; III, **19**.
Verucloetius, -tī, *m*., Verucloetius (vĕr″-ū-klē′shyŭs), *an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar*. I, **7**.
vērus, -a, -um, *adj*., true; *n. as noun*, the truth; **vērī similis**, likely, probable. I, **18**.
verūtum, -ī, *n*., dart, javelin.
Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m*. (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sŏn′shyō), *the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern* Besançon. I, **38**.
vesper, -erī, *m*., evening; **sub vesperum**, towards evening. I, **26**.
vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron*. [**vōs**, you], your, yours.
vēstīgium, -gī, *n*. [**vēstīgō**, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, **2**.
vestiō, 4, *tr*., clothe, cover.
vestis, -is, *f*. [*cf*. **vestiō**, clothe], clothing.
vestītus, -ūs, *m*. [**vestiō**, clothe], clothing. IV, **1**.
veterānus, -a, -um, *adj*. [**vetus**, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. I, **24**.
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr*., forbid. II, **20**.
vetus, -eris, *adj*., old, ancient, former; *with* **mīlitēs**, veteran. I, **13**.
vexillum, -ī, *n*., banner, flag, standard. II, **20**.
vexō, 1, *tr*. [*intensive of* **vehō**, carry], carry *or* drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, **14**.
via, -ae, *f*., way, road, route; journey, march. I, **9**.
viātor, -ōris, *m*. [**via**, road], traveler. IV, **5**.
vīcēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj*., [*cf*. **vīgintī**, twenty], twenty each, twenty.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj*. [*cf*. **vīgintī**, twenty], twentieth.
vīciēs, *num. adv*. [*cf*. **vīgintī**, twenty], twenty times.
vīcīnitās, -tātis, *f*. [**vīcīnus**, near], neighborhood; *pl*., neighbors.
vicis, *gen*. (*no nom*.), change; *only in the adv. phrase* **in vicem**, alternately, in turn. IV, **1**.
victima, -ae, *f*., victim; a sacrificial animal.
victor, -ōris, *m*. [**vincō**, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj*., victorious. I, **31**; II, **24**.
victōria, -ae, *f*. [**victor**, victor], victory. I, **14**.
victus, *see* **vincō**.
vīctus, -ūs, *m*. [**vīvō**, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, **31**.
vīcus, -ī, *m*., hamlet, village. I, **5**.
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr*., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass*., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, **6**.
Vienna, -ae, *f*. (Df), Vienna (vĭ-ĕn′a), *modern* Vienne.
vigilia, -ae, *f*. [**vigil**, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, *one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time*. I, **12**.
vīgintī (**XX**), *card. num. adj*., *indecl*., twenty. I, **13**.
vīmen, -inis, *n*., a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, **33**.
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr*., bind. I, **53**.
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *tr*., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way *or* desire. I, **25**.
vīnctus, *see* **vinciō**.
vinculum, -ī, *n*. [**vinciō**, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, **4**.
vindicō, 1, *tr*., assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, **16**.
vīnea, -ae, *f*. [**vīnum**, wine], vine arbor, *hence*, a shed *for the defense of a besieging party*. II, **12**.
vīnum, -ī, *n*., wine. II, **15**.
violō, 1, *tr*., harm, injure; devastate.

vir, virī, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction *or* honor; *cf.* **homō,** a human being *as distinguished from the lower animals.* II, 25.
vīrēs, *see* **vīs.**
virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.
virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. III, 18.
Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, Viridomarus (vĭr″-ĭ-dō-mā′rŭs), *a chief of the Haedui.*
Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vĭ-rĭd′-ō-vĭks, *a chief of the Venelli.* III, 17.
virītim, *adv.* [**vir,** man], man by man, to each one, individually.
Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vĭr″ō-măn′dū-ī). II, 4.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir,** man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.
vīs, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **vīrēs,** strength, force; **vim facere,** use violence. I, 6.
vīsus, *see* **videō.**
vīta, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.
vītō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.
vitrum, -ī, *n.*, woad, *a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.*
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live; subsist on. IV, 1.
vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.
Vocātēs, -ium, *m.* (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā′tēz). III, 23.
Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vŏk′shyō), *a king of Noricum.* 1, 53.
vocō, 1, *tr.* [**vōx,** voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.
Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kŏn′shyī). I, 10.
Volcācius, -cī, *m.*, Gaius Volcacius Tullus (gā′yŭs vŏl-kā′shyŭs tŭl′ŭs), *a young man in Caesar's army.*
Volcae, -ārum, *m.* (1) **Volcae Arecomicī** (Eef), the Volcae Arecomici (vŏl′sē ăr″ē-kŏm′ĭ-sī). (2) **Volcae Tectosagēs** (Ede) (vŏl′sē tĕk-tŏs′ạ-jēz).
volō, velle, voluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet,** what did he intend *or* mean? I, 7.
voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**voluntās,** will], willing; *pl. as noun,* volunteers.
voluntās, -tātis, *f.* [**volō,** wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, 7.
voluptās, -tātis, *f.* [**volō,** wish], *what one wishes;* pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.
Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā′yŭs vŏl″ū-sē′nŭs kwạ-drā′tŭs), *a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry.* III, 5.
Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Vorenus (lū′-shyŭs vō-rē′nŭs], *a centurion in Caesar's army.*
vōs, *see* **tū.**
Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vŏs′-ē-gŭs), *better,* the Vosges Mountains. IV, 10.
voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, vow.
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context, as* entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.
Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcanus (vŭl-kā′-nŭs), *better* Vulcan, *the god of fire.*
vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus,** the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.
vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.
vulnerō, 1, *tr.* [**vulnus,** a wound], wound. I, 26.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. I, 25.
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. I, 39.

X.

X, *sign for* **decem,** ten.

INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

B

C

Q

CAESAR'S
GALLIC WAR
—
WALKER